



THE  
PHYSICIANS  
PRACTICE











E. xv. c.

1093

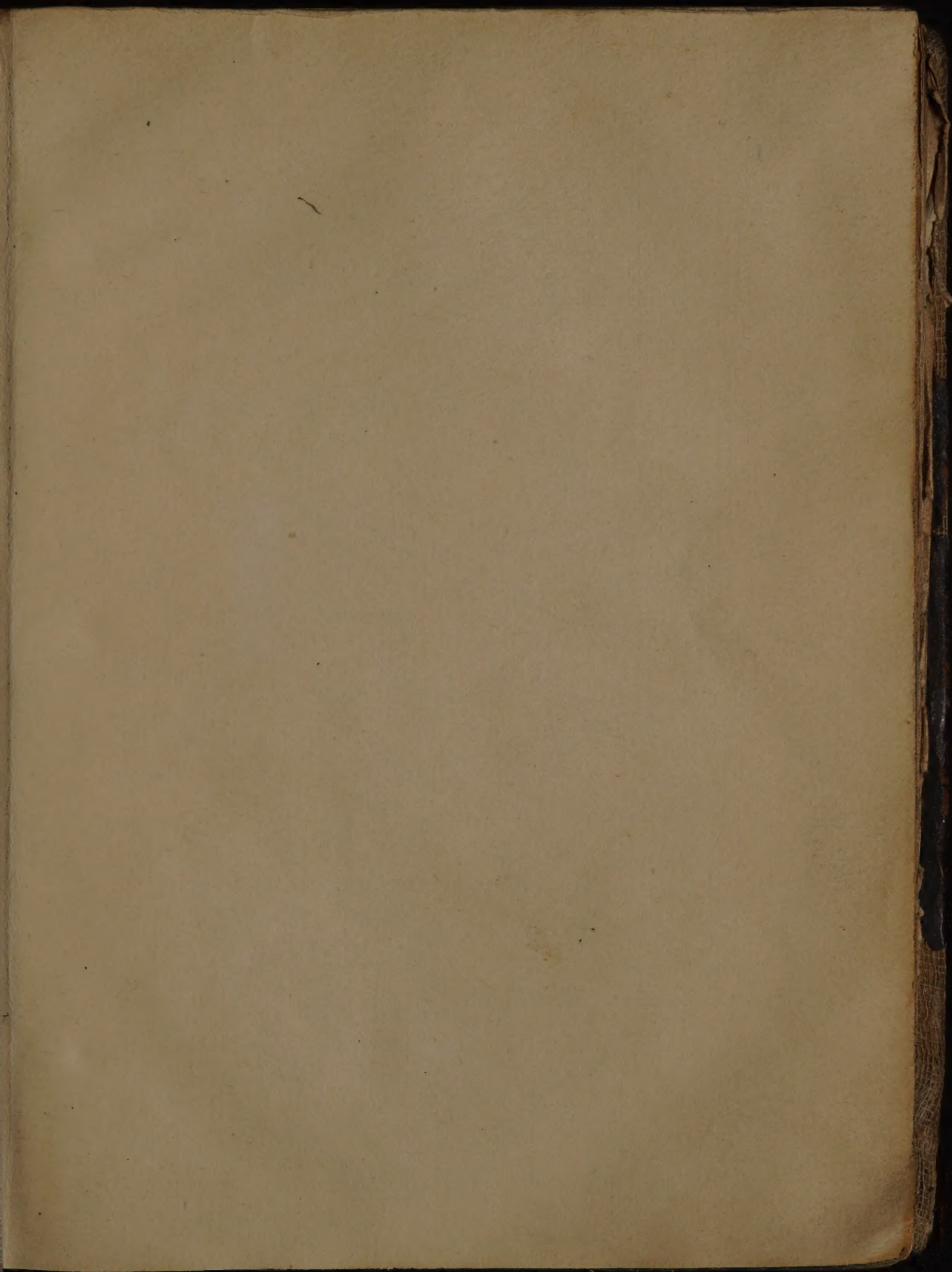
A. xxix Brn

STC 3929

18th.

Brnel : brax's medicine 1632.





109



PH

Am  
led



of the  
head ; to  
the lower  
in of a  
ments are





# THE PHYSICIANS Practice.

A method serving for the know-  
ledge of the *HEAD-ACHE*;  
called in Latine *Cephalagia*.



He Head-ache is a painfull grieve of the head, by reason of some dangerous and sad change thereof. This name is given to it, either in regard of the effect it worketh, or else in regard of the part affected. And so it happens, that the head is more tormented with paine then any other part of the body : which is partly caused by the location of the head ; for sharp vapours and swelling humors ascending from the lower Parts, doe assault the head, partly because the braine is of a cold and moyst temperature, superfluity of excrements are therein generated, which if they increafe, and be



not avoyded by the expulsive facultie in their due season, are wont to disturbe the head with aches. This paine is sometime outward, and then the haire of the head feeles a kind of smarting paine, which is not usuall if the paines bee inward. If this paine hath bene of long time, and often come upon the patient, and continues long, and runnes over the whole head, or the greater part of the head, it is called in Latine *Cephalea*; if onely one side of the head be affected, it is called by the Latines *Hemicrania*; and this hath his beginning from the lower parts, but *Cephalea* is caused by the heads peculiar and principall affect: and as these two kinds, so likewise the Head-ache occasioned by an ague, or by quaffing, or by some other externall cause, is called generally by the Latines *Cephalagia*.

*The part affected.*

The filnes of the braine are very much troubled with this paine, which by reason of their tendernesse, even the least paines are sharp and irkesome to them. But the substance of the braine is somewhat grosser, so that the paine that doth seaze thereon, is farre duller, and more loading. This paine when it doth trouble the braine, hath a double cause, the first from it selfe, and then the paine is of longer continuance, the second proceeds from the lower parts, from which light humours doe ascend, and are easily entertained by the braine. Most commonly the cause proceeds from the stomacke, by reason of the fixe couple of sinews neere adjoyning thereto, and then the paine is not so durable, but doth rather goe away and returne againe, having given over for a time: and even as the stomacke doth abound with ill humours, so the braine doth likewise abound therewith. This paine is somewhat mitigated after the patient hath eaten, and exasperated by too much fasting: for the stomacke being empty, raw and sharpe humours are therein resident, which come from the neighbouring parts, and the braine doth partake of these vapours: oftentimes  
the



the fault is in the womb, and then the paine is chiefly in the hinder part of the head, for then the paine is conveyed thither thorow the marrow of the back-bone. Sometimes it spreads it selfe over the whole head, which is caused by the corruption of the feede, and suppression of the monthly termes. If the paine doe proceed from any other cause, it may be discerned by his proper signes. Usually the braine being corrupted by other parts, at the length the cause of its paine may be said to come from the essence of the braine; and it so happens, that the braine being weakened by the long continuance of paine, that it will with ease admit of the superfluities of the other parts; hence is it, that the spirits are dissolved, the digestive faculty weakened, and the temperature of the whole body changed, which is the cause that so many excrements are generated in the braine.

*The Signes.*

This disease is knowne by the patients complaints and answers. *The Causes.*

Sometime it is caused by a cold and phlegmy matter, and then the paine is duller and more vehement if it surprize them suddenly; withall there is palenesse in the face, moylt and cold meats was his former diet, whereby his temperature is become moist and cold: usually this matter by reason of his grossenesse and sliminesse, doth stop the narrow passages of the head, thereby causing paine: another while it is caused by the plenty of blood, and fulnesse of the whole body, which are manifested by the patients diet, temperature, age, state, and condition of the Heavens, and many other things which doe increase blood. Again, it is caused by the stopping of the monthly termes, or hemeroids, as also of the blood at the nose, which usually doth gush out at its proper seasons, and then the paine is in the forehead for the most part. The urine is of an high colour, and rednesse sitteth upon the face and about the eyes. Another while it is caused by thinne and cholericke blood, whereof a small quantity doth breed great paine, not so dull as the former,

but sharpe and piercing, vehemently beating, and gnawing, chiefly on the right side of the head; bitterness in the mouth: want of sleep, and extreame heate of the head doe accompany the former symptoms: another while it is caused by the superfluity of spirits, or by too much windie matter which will pierce thorough the narrowest passages, and will wind it self by degrees thorow the veins, the filmes, arteries, and sinewes, and sometimes within the films, and bones, that so by dispersing it self through all parts, it may make a seperation betweene those that are most united, and then the paine doth runne over the whole head without any dulnesse, but with a certaine ringing in the eares, which at certaine houres of the day, returns in- to it's caverns. This may be said to come by the consent of the other parts. Otherwise this paine of the head is caused by some great distemper, either hot or cold, and yet they are not so durable that only come by a distemper; only plenty of humors are thereby gathered; and this doth happen, if the paine last long, and the bodie be full, or ill juyced. The paine that comes by a hot distemper, is more vehement then that which comes by a cold distemper. A great burning in the head, and rednesse about the eys, accompany this paine, which is eased by the applying of moyst things. On the contrary, the paine that is caused by a cold distemper, is strong and doth last longer than the former. Paines caused by too much driness that distemper the body, are not so strong, because they come not suddenly, but as they are slow in coming, so they are very slow in leaving them; here heat doth not much trouble the head, but the skinne of the head is somewhat dry. Moyst medicines ease this paine and dry, very much increase it: moistnesse cannot bee properly said to be the cause of paine in the head, because it cannot make a violent and suddaine change in the similar parts, nor breake the closenesse of those parts, unless plenty of humors doe concur.



*The Prognosticks.*

An old paine, caused by a cold matter, is hardly to be cured; especially in old men: but a Head-ache continually waxing, and depriving the patient of rest, is not without danger; for it is the forerunner of madnesse, especially if his vomit appeare somewhat rusty. Likewise a Head-ache if it pinch sore, and by curing doth not mend; but rather is augmented, doth presage Deafenesse, Phrensie, Impostumes, Convulsion; if the head be greatly pained, and withall the sinewes stretched, great danger is at hand: if a Head-ache doe suddenly surprize a man, and he become mute therewith, and snort in his sleepe, he cannot outlive seven dayes, except a Fever in the meane space take hold of him. When the Head akes in any part, or the whole Head be pained, if snor, water, or blood come out of the nose, mouth, or eare of the patient, the danger is then past: the Head-ache also that was not from the beginning, is a sure token of a future *Crisis*, either by vomiting, or bleeding at the nose, and no cure must be attempted for that paine, lest we stop the bleeding which is by natures forecast intended, and it will either quite free them from the disease, or at the least ease them.

*A method serving for the cure of the cold Head-ache.*

It is effected by these kind of remedies following. Let the ayre be hot, and dry, either by art or nature, let his meate be of Hens, Capons, Birds of mountaines, reare eggs, rost flesh better then boyled; with his meate boyle Betony, Majoram, *Serpillum*, amongst fruits, sweet Almonds, *Pistacium*, Raisins are good: after meat let him take a little *Dacidonites*, with the spices. Let him drinke be weake Wine, and a little quantity of strong Wine may bee tolerated. Sometimes he may drinke a draught of Muskatell, with a little Nutmeg and Pepper. Let not his motion and exercise be too violent. Let his sleepe be moderate: let him lye with his head raised up, and somewhat covered. He must avoid



vomiting, unlesse the head doe ake by the consent of the stomacke. Let evill affections of the minde bee avoided; but slight thoughts are not here so hurtfull as in the cholericke *Cephelea*. \* Sirupe of hysope, of *Acorus*, of Betony, of *Mel rosatum*, of *Stachas*; the sirupe of *Acerosus Simplex*, *Oxymel Simplex*, *Squilliticum*, and *Compositum*, the Water of Hysope, Betony, Majoram, Sage, Parsely, the decoction of Wood *Guaiacum* with capitall things, the decoction of Betony, Sage, Hysope, Fenill, Smallage, Majoram, Parsely, Pennyroyall, the decoction of the flowers of *Stachas*, with hony. The cause of the disease will be many daies digested, before it be cleane rooted out; for grosse, viscous and stymy humors doe nourish a more grievous and rebellious disease. Yet if the patient be unreasonably afflicted, then shall evacuation bee attempted, not expecting a perfect concoction.

\*Preparers.

\*Emptiers.

\* A veine shall be opened, if the body be full, but in grosse, viscous and cold humors, a veine shall not be opened: for it is to be feared, that the disease being of its owne nature cold, should by that meanes increase. But if any veine be opened, that of the right arme shall be opened; and if the disease continue after that, we will open a veine in the forehead, especially if the paine bee in the hinder part of the head: and because the humors are grosse, a large wound shall be made. *Electuarium Indum*, *Diacatholicum*, *Diaphenicum*, the powder of prepared Sena is of great force. *Hiera Simplex*, *Diacolocynthis*, *Logodoli* of Agaricke, made into a trochiske, Pills of Agaricke, *Alephangine Cochia*, *Arabica Fatida Mastichina*, *Affageret*, *Agaricum*, *Turbish*. A potion of *Acorus* roots, Betony, Hysope, Rosemary *Stachas*: Anni-seed, Fennell-seeds, Raisins, Liquorice, the flowers of Violets, of Buglosse, Polipody, Sena, Nutmegge, Cynamon, *Diaphenicum*, a decoction of *Guaiacum* Wood with capitall things, Sena, Polipody, a clyster of the decoction of Betony, Majoram, *Stachas*, leaves of Mellilote, Mallowes, Colewort: to these adde some *Mel rosatum*, *Diaphenicum*, Oyle of Roses, salt, *Hiera*, *Diacolocynthis*: it is requisite for

for such that are sicke of this disease, to purge not once, but twice or thrice: for by such purging, the humors by degrees are mastered by the medicines; for grosse and tough humours will not be expelled by a sudden purgation. Pills are more prevalent then electuaries in this disease, because they have a more attractive power, and can draw ill humours, even from the most remote parts of the body.

*Averters.*

We will use that which was prescribed in the former Clister instead of a purging medicine, for therewith shall wee draw backe the matter downward, and shall assuage the paine which is stirred up by the vapours carried to the head, by reason of costivenesse. Let a veine be opened, the legs washed in hot water, Horse-leeches shall be applyed to those veines which swell about the part affected, or to the end of the nose; strong suppositories, painefull ligatures of the opposite parts, as also strong frictions of those parts, fomentations likewise, with the decoction of Sage, Hysope, Majoram, and other capitall herbes: a sneeze of bastard Pellitory, Pepper, Oyles of Bevers stones, of Pepper-wort, Ling-wort, the juyce of Majoram, Betony, Hogs-bread, a nasall or errhine of Staves-acre, Pepper-wort, *Hiera picra*, the juyce of Flower-deluce, Pepper, *aurea Alexandrina*, Lingwort, *Euphorbium*, Bastard Pellitory, Oyle of Beaver stones, Hogs-bread, Mustard-seed, water of Majoram. An Apophlegmatisme, by chewing of Hysope, of conserved Pellitory, Pepper, Staves-acre, Liquorice, Mastique, Raisins, Majoram, with a little Honey. A Gargarisme of red Wine, wherein boyle the roots of Pellitory, of Liquorice, leaves of Hysope, of Betony, mustard, and a little *Melrosatum*; all turnings aside are very convenient, by what cause soever the malady is cherished. Gargarismes and apophlegmatismes are to be used, not without great care and circumspection: for if the patient be subject to the disease of the lungs, or be very rheumaticke, they may prove hurtfull. But we will begin with the neerer parts, and by degrees proceede



Strengtheners.

ceed to those that are remote. *Diacuminum*, *Aurea Alexandrina*, *Diacastoreum*. Triacle, Mithridate, with Betony-water, Conserve of Roses, *Diacorum*, *Plerosarconticum*, *Diambra*, *Diamuscum*, both sweet and bitter. A bag of Majoram, Betony, Rosemary, Conserve of Rosemary-flowers, *Acorus* conserved; the decoction of the Wood *Guaia-cum*, with the flowers of *Carduus Benedictus*, are medicinal, as well for the *Cephalagia*, as *Hemicrania*; Cubebs, Musk, Majoram, Amber, Nutmegge, Cinamon. An Epitheme for the forehead of the liquor of Wine distilled, washing the head with lye, wherein Betony and Majoram leaves, Flowers of Mellilote and Camomill for some few howres haue beene infused. Irrigations of the head with the decoction of bay-leaves, Betony, Majoram, Mellilote-flowers; Pepper-bathes doe very much comfort head-aches, An odoriferous ball of Cinamon, Cloves, *Stachas*, Bay-leaves, Majoram, Mastick, Nutmeg. An oyntment of the oyle of Flower-de-luce, oyle of Rew, of Lillies, of Anniseed, of Camomill, wherewith annoint the fore-head and nostrill holes; Emplaisters made of the Root of wild Cucumbers with Wormwood; A cerate of *Euphorbium*: this is an approved medicine by the ancient Physicians, for an old headache. These medicines doe very much strengthen the braine, by taking away cold distempers, and then are they of greatest force, when the stomack is empty. This is likewise the fittest time to apply outward remedies, otherwise they doe draw vapours from the lower parts: but when the disease doth beginne to decline, digestive and strengthening remedies may be applied.

### The cure of the cold HEAD--ACHE

more particularly.

Take of the leaves of Betony, Sage, Rew, Majoram, ana, *I.* handfull, of the flowers of *Stachas*, of Feaverwort, ana, *P. I.* of garden Mallows, Mellilote, of wild Mallows, ana, *I.* hand-



handfull and halfe, Anni-seeds, Fennel-seede, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\text{ss}$ , of Nutmeg, Cinamon, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij Colocynthi,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\text{ss}$ . Let them be boyled in water as much as sufficeth to  $\text{lb}$  i.  $\text{ss}$ , adde to the straying, of the electuary of *Eleuscopi*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\text{ss}$ . Sp. *Benedicte Laxativa*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Diaturbith cum Rhabarb.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. *Mellis rosati colati*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Oyle of Rew and Baies,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i,  $\text{ss}$ . of white Salt,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i of this make a Clyster, which must be administred before dinner.

$\mathfrak{R}$  *Oxymellis compositi*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. syr. of *Stachas*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the decoction of *Stachas*, Betony, Rosemary, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  x. for certaine dayes let him take  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. hereof.

A Potion

$\mathfrak{R}$  of the roots of the hearb dogs-tooth, of Sperage, of Parsly ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Sage leaves, of Betony leaves, of Hylop leaves Uervven-leaves, ana, M i. of Endive M i.  $\text{ss}$ , of Licorice scraped  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\text{ss}$ , the seed of Parsley, Anni-seeds, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. the Flowers of Rosemary, of *Stachas*, ana, p i. of Nutmegs, n. ij. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb}$  i.  $\text{ss}$ . adde unto the straying *Oxymellis squillitici*  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of the syrrepe of *Stachas*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

A Potion

$\mathfrak{R}$  of rootes of *Acorus*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Sperage, Parsley, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\text{ss}$ . of Betony, of Majoram, ana, M i. of Raisins the the stones being taken out,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the seeds of Smallage, and Fennell, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij of Buglosse flowers, M i. of Rosemary, M  $\text{ss}$ . *Sene Alexandrina*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the whitest and lightest part of the mushrome  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. *turbith albi et gummosi*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of white Ginger  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij.  $\text{ss}$ . boyle these in a sufficient quantity of water to  $\text{lb}$  i. to the straining adde *Mellis rosati*, syrrepe. *Byzanti-ni*, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of fine white Sugar, q. s. drinke of this each morning fasting  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

A Potion

$\mathfrak{R}$  *Pillul. de agarico cochiar.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\text{ss}$ . *Diagridij* gr. iij. the syrrepe of *Stachas* q. s. make 7. or 8. Pills of this.

Pills.

$\mathfrak{R}$  *Agarici Trochiscati*, *Hiera*, *Diacol.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\text{ss}$  of Nutmeg gr. viij. of the syrrepe of *Stachas*, of wormwood, ana, q. s. make 8. Pills of this.

Pills.

$\mathfrak{R}$  *Diacathelic. Electuarij Indii*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.  $\text{ss}$ . drink this with the water of Betony.

A Dranght.

C

$\mathfrak{R}$  *Diagr.*

- A Draught** *R.* *Diaturbich cum rhab. arb. Electuarij Elefcopi Dia-*  
*catholic.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij  $\mathfrak{ss}$ . fyrripe *Stachados*, *Oxymel-Simp.* ana  
 $\mathfrak{z}$   $\mathfrak{ss}$ . of the decoction of Betony, and Sage, q. s. drink this in  
the morning.
- Lozenges** *R.* *Diamusci dulcis*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i *Diamargariti calidi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\mathfrak{ss}$ , *Di-*  
*ambre*  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Betony-water, and white Sugar, q. s. make  
this into *Lozenges*; whereof let the patient-eate one, after  
the fyrripe is tak. n.
- An Opiat.** *R.* *Sp. Pleresarcontici*, *Diagalanga*, *Diamusci dulcis*,  
ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij  $\mathfrak{ss}$ . of the roots of *Elecampany*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\mathfrak{ss}$ , conserve of  
Rosemary-flowers  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. fyrripe of *Stachas* q. s. make an  
Electuary in forme of an Opiate.
- A Mix-  
ture.** *R.* the conserve of Rosemary-flowers  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\mathfrak{ss}$ , *Acori*  $\mathfrak{z}$   
*saurea Alexandrina*, *Aromatici rosati*, of Mithridate, ana  
 $\mathfrak{z}$  i. fyr. *Stachados* q. s. mixe these together. and give the  
patient  $\mathfrak{z}$  i thereof with Betony water.
- Lozenges** *R.* *Sp. Diamusci dulcis*, *diamb.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Dianth.* Cyna-  
mon of the best, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\mathfrak{ss}$  Nutmeg, Mace, Fennell-seeds,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  
of the finest sugar dissolved in Betony-water, and water of  
Rosemary, ana q. s. make an Electuary in Lozenges, where-  
of eate one  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. houres before dinner.
- An Ele-  
ctuary.** *R.* *Sp. Diambre*, *Diamusci dulcis*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i conserve of  
Rosemary, the flowers of Sage, of *Acorus*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\mathfrak{ss}$  of Ma-  
stick, Cynamon, Orange rinds, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\mathfrak{ss}$ . fyr. *Stachados* q. s.  
make a soft Electuary of this.
- A powder  
to cause  
sneezing.** *R.* of Nutmeg  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Lingwort, of bastard Pellitory,  
ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\mathfrak{ss}$ . of Pepper-wort, Majoram, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\mathfrak{ss}$ . oyle of Bea-  
vers-stone,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Muske gr. i. make a sneezing powder  
hereof, and blow some of it into the patients nostrills with  
a quill.
- A Garga-  
risme.** *R.* of Hyfop, Majoram, Betony, ana M i. of Staves-acre,  
 $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. of Mustard-seed, long Pepper, bastard Pellitory, ana,  
 $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\mathfrak{ss}$ ; boyle these in a sufficient quantity of water un-  
to ff. i. of the decoction adde *Oxymellis simplicis*, *Mellis*  
*rosati*, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i make a Gargarisme hereof and use it in the  
mor-



morning before the patient eat any thing.

℞ of the powder of the seeds of Staves-acre, Pepperwort, ana, ʒ 2. Nutmegs, Pepper, ʒ 1. hearb of Scammony ʒ ʒ. the juyce of Majoram, of clarified Hony, ana q. l. make a Liniment therewith, and annoynt the inward part of the nostrills.

A Liniment.

℞ of Rosemary, M 2. Betony, Majoram, M 1. Cammomill, Mellilote, Origan, ana M 1. ʒ. boyle these in water, untill the third part be consumed, and in conclusion adde a little distilled wine.

An Embroch.

℞ the oyle of Cammomill, of Lillies, ana, ʒ 1. de Euphorbio, ʒ 1. of Nutmegs, of the flowers of Stachas, ana, ʒ 2. ʒ. with a little wax, make hereof an oyntment: whensoever occasion shall serve for the use of this Oyntment, all the afore said ingredients must be dissolved in Aqua Vita, wherewith the head likewise should sometimes be moistened.

An Oyntment.

℞ the oyle of white Lillies, ʒ 1. of Annis ʒ 1. Nutmegs, ʒ ʒ. dip Cotton in them, and apply to the eares nigh the chinne.

An Ointment.

℞ the oyle of white Lilles, Bayes, Rew, ʒ vi Vitrioli Romani, somewhat burnt ʒ iiij. of Wax, and of Saffron a litle, make an Oyntment of these, it is of great force, when as the disease is stubborne, and rebellious.

An Oyntment.

℞ of the flowers of Stachas, of Rosemary, Sage, Betony, Majoram, Origan dried Worme-wood, ana M ʒ, of Nutmegs, Mace, ʒ 1. Let them bee beaten together and sewed into a red cloth, whereof make a bagge in the forme of a cap, let the patient weare it for the space of 2 or 3 moneths, which must sometimes be sprinkled with distilled Wine.

A Quilt.



*An appendix, or addition serving for the cure  
of the cold HEAD-ACHE.*

**F**irst of all the belly must be purged with a clyster, if the matter of the disease be rough, and viscus; it may be made subject to nature by sharpe medicines, afterwards the other humours may be expelled, when their course is turned from the head. Which being done, the head may be strengthened, and the reliques destroyed, which is easily brought to passe by the former medicines, if universalls be in right manner sorted with particulars: and heere is to be noted, that the former medicines may serve either for the *Cephalea*, or *Hemicrania*. Sometimes they may be made stronger, but especially such medicines as are locall, because then the mischeif is most rebellious. Amongst the other diseases of the head-ache, either an actuall or potentiall caution may doe some good. The head-ache which is caused by the French pox we will handle in his peculiar place. If the paine happen by a feaver, that shall first be cured; it by staying too long in the sunne, mixe oyle of Roses, and Vinegar, as also Rose-water, wherein dippe a linnen cloth and apply it to the head. Let the patient sleepe without disturbance.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the PALSEY  
or PARALYSIS*

**A** Palsey is a depriving of sense and motion, not of the whole body, as in an Apoplexy, but when one side, or all parts of the body under the head, or any other limbe is deprived of sense and motion, as Jaw, Tongue, Eye, Foote, Hand, Arme, Lip. It also falls out that some part is deprived of the sensitive faculty, the motive faculty not being hurt; and contrariwise the motion dies, when as the sensitive faculty remains sound. Sometimes it happens, that neither sense nor motion is quite taken away

but

but onely waxeth dull, and is benum'd. Physicians call this an imperfect Palsy, and the harbinger of a Palsey. And seeing that motion and sense is divided but by one sinew, it doth so chauce, that the motion is taken away when as the sense remains: because hard sinews are grafted in the limbes, which if they suffer but a small paine, presently feele it; because to the perfection of sense, a small portion of the sensitive faculty is sufficient; for the sense of feeling doth rather seeme to suffer, then ro be an agent. But to the perfection of motion, great store of animal faculty is required, whereby small hurt will sooner destroy the motion, then the sense. But why the sense doth sometime perish, and motion abides: this happens, because some parts doe participate of a twofold kind of sinews. This mischeif hath great affinity with the Apoplexy, and sometime is caused by a weake Apoplexy; and then it is called *Paraplexia*; and herein they differ; the Apoplexy seizeth upon all parts of the body, depriving them both of sense and motion: the Palsey seldome or never leaves the head without motion and sense, but the other parts of the body lose both motion and sense, and after a different manner: for if the beginning of the marrow of the back bone be affected, all parts under the face doe sympathize with it; if but one halfe of the back-bone be affected, all parts having relation to that side, suffer in like manner. But if the before mentioned parts are not hurt, but some particular sinew of some part of the body is loosed, that part whereto this nerve is joyned shall likewise lose sense and motion.

*The part affected.*

The beginning of the marrow of the backe bone, which is the originall of all other sinews, is more greivously annoyed than the braine; and then the face being unhurt, all parts under the head are hurt: sometime it doth take hold on the left, or right side of the marrow of the backe-bone,



whereby the right or left side of the body is destitute of motion and sense, because the marrow of the back-bone, even as the braine, is divided into two parts throughout the whole length of the back-bone, whereby the sinews on the right side, are separated from those of the left by a certaine filme, though very obscure, and so thereafter as the stopping of the sinews is in the right side or left, or both, the Palsey in like manner will seize on the right, or left side, or the whole body. Sometime the brain is affected, but not the whole substance of the brain, for then an apoplexy would be caused; but the right or left side of the braine; and then that part of the face as also that side of the body, whether right or left, doth suffer with the braine, and when as any part of the face is bereft of sense and motion, the rising of the sinews, from the third conjugation of the brain are effected. Sometime one part of the body is voyd of sense and motion; which is caused by the resolution of a sinew coming from the braine, or from some part of the marrow of the back-bone, from which, the part affected doth take sense and motion. Wherefore we ought to take paines in the Anatomy, that wee may know where this mischeife keepeth its first residence, as also the distributions of the sinews, and from what part of the marrow of the back-bone, every part hath its sinews. For this is an effect, belonging to the offended action of the animall faculties, sensitive and motive.

*The Signs.*

The palsied part, if it be lifted up, falleth backe againe; it is soone coole, and in time withers; their urine for the most part is white, and sometimes inclining to rednesse, by reason of the great paine in the Kidneys, or because they cannot separate blood from the whayish moisture, by reason of their weaknes; if one side be affected, that is cold, the other hot, and the eye of the affected side is abated; if the jaw, or any other part of the face be seized on by

the

the Palsey, it is wrested toward the contrary sound part. In this mischeife, sense peritheth, the motion being perfect: sometime motion is taken away, and sense doth remaine: oftentimes both are gone, and then this mischeife is at his full height, the pulse is faint, slow, little, and soft.

*The Causes.*

It is caused by a cold and moist distemper, sometime by an impostume, or some other tumor crushing the sinews or marrow; also it is caused by a wound, a fall, a fracture, too straight a ligature, luxation of bones in the backe by a stroke; but it is caused for the most part by thin and watrish humors, derived from the braine, which doe insinuate into the pores and substance of the sinews, and so the sinews being made too soft, are loosened and slackned, and doe sucke in so much moisture, that they stop the head of the sinews, whereby the passage of the animall Faculty is hindered: which hath his originall from the braine, as from its first originall, and like a sunne-beame doth thence break forth, and is spread abroad in the lower parts, and distributes both sense and motion to those parts; when a part is bereft of the animall spirits it falleth downe as though it were withered, and is immoveable: hereof this shall be a signe, that it comes suddenly. But if any part, by reason of great abundance of thinne humors do swell very much, then will follow a convulsion in that part. It is also as often caused by grosse humors, which being driven upon the sinews, doe cause obstructions, and oftentimes such, that the passage of the animall spirits is stopped: which is the reason of the sinews withering and falling. It is some time caused by grosse Spirits, because they have some evill quality either hid, or apparent.

*Prognostiques.*

A Palsey which is caused by the cutting of a sinew overthwart, is incurable. A Palsey is oftner caused in the winter; and in old men is never or hardly cur'd; because na-

tive



true heate is deficient in them, whereby cold, and grosse humours are generated in them; the Palsey which is only in some part, is never sharpe, but of a long continuance. A Palsey is occasioned by a weake Apoplexy, and is to be feared, least it should returne to that againe. There is better hopes for the cure of it in the spring, and the summer seasons, than in the Autumnall and winter; if an Ague, and a shaking come upon the party affected, it doth preface health.

*Generall directions serving for the cure  
of the PALSEY.*

Let the Aire be hot and dry, procured by a fire, if the season of the yeare requireth it, or by a perfume of Cloves and Rosemary, His meate must likewise be such as heate, and dry, let him eat roasted Chickens, Capons, Hennes, small birds, reere Eggs. He must abstaine from swines flesh, fish and brothes, or at the least let them be amended by art. Let his diet be slender until the fourteenth day, For it is very good for the patient to be abstemious; let his drink be small, and he may drinke water sweetened with Hony, or Cinamon water, or hypocras. It is very expedient that he moderately exercise the part affected. Sleepe in the day time must be avoyded, his meate must be such as is answerable to his belly, and he should not any way be troubled in mind.

*Prepara-  
tive,*

\* *Hydromel, Oxymel*, the decoction of the Roots of Flower-de-luce, of Sage, *Stachas*, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Syr. *Stachados*, Hyssop, *Acetosus simplex*, *Byzantinum*, *Mel rosatum*, *Oxymel Squilliticum*. The water of Sage, of Rosemary, Betony, Majoram, Balme, Primrose, a Potion of the decoction of Sage, Betony, Hyssop, Nutmegges, Cloves, Cynamon, *Stachas* Flowers, and Rosemary Flowers, with the roots of *Acorus*; to which adde some of the former sitrupe. For the space of 5 or 6 dayes the humors must

must bee extenuated, and preparation made for expulsion first of all by gentle medicines; then wee will evacuate and use stronger; but such as are compounded with Vineger, are obnoxious; for Vineger is an enemy to the sinewes: whereof if we doe use Vineger, wee will mingle with it such simples as doe strengthen the sinewes.

The *Cephalica* veine shall bee opened on that side that is sound, if the Palsey bee caused by blood, and the body be full, a small quantity of blood shall be taken away, lest the naturall heate in a cold body, and by a cold disease, should bee extinguished. A potion of the roots of *Acorum*, Flower-de-luce, Sage, Rosemary, Betony, Flowers of *Stechas*, *Sena*, Agarick, *Turbit*, Ginger, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, Hony, Sugar. Pills of *Coccia*, *Assaiaret*, Agarick, *Alephangine Fetide*, *Mustichine*, de *Sagapeno*, de *Opopanace*, de *Euphorbio*, *Hiera-Diacolocynth*: *Hiera Picra Galeni*, *Hiera*, *Logodali*, *Diacatholicon*, Agarick made into Trochiskes: Vomits and Clysters once in every weeke are permitted. In this disease wee will rather use Pills then Electuaries; because they draw the corrupt matter from the parts of farthest distance, wee must begin the cure with gentle purging medicines, especially in a dull Palsey, and the fourteenth day after, we will use stronger, fearing that the gentler medicines should not prevaile.

Clysters of Sage, Betony, *Stechas*, Origan, Mallowes, Camomile, Majoram, Centory the lesse, Holly-hock, Rew, Mercury, the Electuary of *Elescopi*, *Hiera-picra*, *Benedicta Laxativa*, *Diacatholicon*, Oyle of Camomile, Lillies, by little and little we will use stronger. Let cupping glasses without scarification be fastned to the roote of the sinewes, and so leisurely be removed to the part affected, that the naturall spirit and heate may be drawne to it, and the drowfie faculty be awaked; but lest the strength be dissolved, let the cupping-glasses remaine thereon but a short time.

Emptiers.

Averters.



An Apophlegmatisme of Nutmeg; Gargarismes; Erhines; Sneezes; dry frictions; either with the hands or a warme cloth, are excellent; let a playster of mustard-seed be layd to the nape of the necke; wee will not use these drawing medicines before the patient bee 3. or 4. times purged. Such as doe strengthen the braine, and that doe digest the reliques, and amend the distemper, must now bee used. It is apparent, that Triacle and Mithridate doe much good in this case, *Aurea Alexandrina*, and Triacle water, *Diarrhodon Abbati*, *Pliris arcomium*, *Diamusculum dulce*, *Diambra*, new Conserve of Roses, *Confectio Anacardina*, Preserved *Acorus*, Preserved Ginger, and Bastard Pellitory preserved. *Discofloreum*, *Aqua mensalis* of our description, is herein of great force. Conserve of Sage, Betony, Rosemary-flowers, flowers of *Stachus*, *Elecampana*, Galingal. Let pills be made of the oyle of Beaver-stone *Assa Fetida*, Nutmeg, and the ayre of a Dove-house is good by a secret propertie; let him hold a Nutmeg in his mouth and chew it, a Hares braine roasted is good; the decoction of the wood *Guajacum*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Cyna* with Honey, if the disease bee stubborne: A decoction with the roots of *Acorus*, Flower-de-luce, Worme-seede, Ginger, *Stachus*, Sage, dried Hyssop, Majoram, Rosemary, Ground-pine, Nutmeg, Cloves, Roots of *Cyna*, *Guajacum* wood, Honey: make a Fomentation for the part affected, with the decoction of Milke-thistle; let the whole decoction be applyed to it: make also a bath for the part affected of the decoction of a Fox, and cover the place affected with the warme skinne. But first of all anoint the place with the Oyle of a Fox, and let that bee done after the bath hath bene used, or in the stead of this bath, let him use the bath of Brimstone or Nitre, and that which doth settle in the bottome, shall be taken out, and applied to the part first affected: make likewise a hot-house with a mete vessell therein, wherein let the patient enter morning and evening: it is not amisse, if stones were  
beat

heat red hot, and a little hot Wine sprinkled upon them, which must then be so neere layd to the patient, that the smoake may ascend to his nostrils. As soone as the patient is come out of the stew, or hot-house, he must goe to bed, and therein sweat; which that he may the better doe, let him drinke of old triacle,  $\text{ʒ i.}$  and anoynt the roots of his finewes with some oyntment. Likewise a dry bath may be made with a convenient decoction, which must be put into a vessell, and under this make a fire, and a pipe must be so fastned to this vessell, that the vapour may bee conveyed to the patient. An oyntment of *Agrippa*, *Martiatum*, *Bdellium*. An oyntment of the oyle of Foxes, of the oyle of Bever-stones, Nutmeg, oyle of Spiknard, oyle of Pepper, Camomile, Lillies, powder of Wormes. Galingale, Pepper, Hony, oyle of Rew, of Philosophers, of St. Johnswort, of Baies, of Turpentine, *Costini*, *Aqua vite*, oyle of brimstone. Too much use of hot medicines doth bring a resolution: wherefore oyles that too much heat and dry, may not safely be permitted: such medicines as are resolving may not be used, untill the patient be purged at the least 4. times, amongst which medicines frictions may bee very well reckoned. Also an especiall care ought to be had in applying outward remedies, and seeking out the part primarily affected, whereunto we must minister helpe, and not unto those that are secundarily affected.

*The cure of the Palsey more particularly,*

R of Sage, Majoram, Hyssop, Calaminth, of Centory the lesser ana,  $\text{M i ʒ}$ , of white, and light *Agarick*  $\text{ʒ ʒ}$ , flowers of Camomile, *Stachas*, Mellilot, ana,  $\text{M. i.}$  Boyle these in a sufficient quantity of water, unto  $\text{ʒ i}$ , add to that which is strained forth *Benedictæ laxative*, *Electuarii Elefscopi*, ana,  $\text{ʒ vi.}$  of oyle of Lillies,  $\text{ʒ iij.}$  of Malmsey  $\text{ʒ iij. ʒ}$ , of Salt,  $\text{ʒ ʒ}$ . Mix these together, whereof make a Clyster; the which hee may use twice in a weeke, untill he be recovered.

R syr. *Stachados*  $\text{ʒ ij.}$  *Mellin rosati*, syr. of Hyssop, ana,  $\text{ʒ i.}$  the decoction of Sage, the water of Hyssop, and Rose-

*A Clyster.*

*Iulep.*



*A pleasant  
water for the  
palate, and  
no lesse whole  
some.*

*A potion.*

*Pills.*

*A morsell.*

*Pills.*

*A Garga-  
risme.*

*A Sternu-  
tion.*

*A Mistica-  
tory.*

*A Vmit.*

mary, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. hereof make a Julep.

Rx of Hyssop  $\mathfrak{M}$  iii.  $\beta$ , of Sage, Rosemary, ana,  $\mathfrak{M}$  i. boyle them in water as much as doth suffice, untill the third part be consumed. Adde to the straining of Hony, as much as is sufficient, whereof make a pleasing water to drinke for the space of a moneth and halfe.

Rx of the roots of Angelica,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Aristolochia rot.  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. Acori  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Sage, Majoram, Betony, ana,  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , the flowers of *S. echin*  $\mathfrak{M}$   $\beta$ , *Senae Alexandrinae*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , white and light Agarick  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Cinnamon, Ginger, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of water, adde to the straining the syrup of *Stechas*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. make a potion hereof.

Rx of the pills *de Euphorbia*, *Fetidarum*, ana,  $\mathfrak{D}$   $\beta$ , *Cochiarum*, of the best Turbith, ana,  $\mathfrak{D}$  i, of the oyle of Beavers-stones,  $\mathfrak{D}$   $\beta$ , the juyce of the hearbe Scammony, gr. iii. of these make pills, which hee must take when hee goes to bed.

Rx of Agarick, made into a Trochisk,  $\mathfrak{D}$  i. *Hiera diacolocynthidos*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , o Nutmeg,  $\mathfrak{D}$   $\beta$ , conserve of Rosemary flowers q.s. make hereof a morsell.

Rx the pills *de Opoponace*  $\mathfrak{D}$  ii. *Fetidarum*, of the oyle of Beavers-stones, ana gr xii. hereof make pills, the which hee may use twice or thrice in a weeke.

Rx of Mustard-seed, of Staves-acre, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of bastard-Pellitory,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Turbith  $\mathfrak{D}$  iii. of Rew, of Sage, of Hyssop, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  ii.  $\beta$ , make a decoction with a sufficient quantity of water, unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i.  $\beta$ , adde *Oxymellis simplicis*, *Squillitici*, *Mellis rosati*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. hereof make a Gargarisme.

Rx of Pepper-wort,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Cyclaminis*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of white Pepper, of the oyle of Beavers-stone, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  i, mix these with hony and aneynt the Nostrils, that sneezing may be provoked.

Rx of Nutmeg, bastard Pellitory, of the seed of Staves-acres, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ . of Hyssop,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. white Pepper, Raisins, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. as much Hony as is sufficient, make hereof little lumps to be chewed.

Rx *Oxymellis squillitici*  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of the decoction of Radish roots,

roots, sweet Majoram,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. voyle of Spikenard,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , mingle these, and make a vomit thereof, if necessity require, you may helpe the patient with a feather dipped in oyle.

R $\mathfrak{x}$  of the conserve of *Acorus*, Rosemary, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Diacastrei  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of old *Triacle  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , *Confectionis anardine*, *Diamusci dulcis*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. mixe these together, and let the patient take every morning and every other night the quantity of a Chestnut.**

R $\mathfrak{x}$  of *Triacle  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Aque vite*, the juyce of Betony, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Let him take it twice in a weeke.*

R $\mathfrak{x}$  conserve of the flowers of Sage, Rosemary-flower, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  . of the roots of Elecampany preserved, Ginger preserved, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the *Triacle* of *Andromachus*, Mithridate, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ , Nutmeg  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. syr. up of *Siechar*, q. s. make a compound hereof and let him take  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$  when he goes to bed.

R $\mathfrak{x}$  of the conserved Sage-flowers,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Rosemary, the roots of *Acorus* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Nutmeg, Pepper, Cloves, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. syr. of *Siechar*, q. s. make a mixture, and after dinner let the patient take thereof  $\mathfrak{z}$  .

R $\mathfrak{x}$  of Mithridate  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of *Triacle  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Sage-water  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. hereof make a draught.*

R $\mathfrak{x}$  of the oyle of Turpentine, *petrolei*, oyle of Bricke of Foxes, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , oyle of Beavers itones, or Wormes, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. *Mustibini*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of bastard-Pellitory,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Sage, Nutmeg, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ , *Gummi ammoniaci*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ , *Castorei*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , dissolve these in Wine, and adde to these a sufficient quantity of Waxe, so that the oyntment be soft: with this anoynt the parts affected, and the ends of the sinewes, and the parts of the back, and neck shall bee well chafed with a rough cloth, but before all other, the following Oyntment may be used.

R $\mathfrak{x}$  of the oyle of Cammomile, of Spikenard, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi Lillies, Turpentine, the greafe of Foxes, oyle of wormes, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Aque vite*  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. of wax, q. s. make an oyntment of this

D 3

and

A mixture.

A Potion.

A compound.

Another.

A draught.

An Oyntment.

An Oyntment.



and anoynt those parts therewith that have lost all sense, a also those parts which doe impart to them the sense of feeling, and they must all bee kept very warme with clothes.

*An Oym-  
ment.*

Rx the oyle of Cammomile,  $\text{ʒ} \text{iii.}$  of Lillies  $\text{ʒ} \text{i.}$  and with that alone anoynt the top, or beginning of the sinewes, the body being purged. It is likewise good to wash the parts affected with the hot water, if it bee done with great strength.

*A soft oym-  
ment.*

Rx of Pepper, Juniper, Mustard-seede, ana,  $\text{ʒ} \text{ii.}$  of the fruit of *Anacardium*,  $\text{ʒ} \text{ʒ}$ , of the roots of wilde-Pellitory, *Salis ammoniaci*, ana,  $\text{ʒ} \text{i.}$   $\text{ʒ}$ . boyle them in  $\text{ʒ} \text{iiii.}$  of white Wine, of Malmsey  $\text{ʒ} \text{viii.}$  oyle of Turpentine, of Bayes, *Petrolei*, ana,  $\text{ʒ} \text{ii.}$  boyle them untill the Wine be consumed: adde then thereto the oile of Bever-stone, *Euphorbii*, *Galbani*, Myrrhe, *bdellii*, ana,  $\text{ʒ} \text{i.}$   $\text{ʒ}$ . of Wax q.s. make hereof a soft oymntment, and after the part affected is anoynted therewith cover it with a Fox skin, so that the oymntment be well rubd in with a hot cloth.

*A Bath.*

Let a bath likewise be made of a Fox, or the whelps, but first flea them, and take out their guts; in this bath the resolved parts, as also the marrow of the back-bone must be bathed; adde thereto Sage, Hysope, Bay-leaves, *Stachus*, Rosemary, Rew, the roots of Pellitory, of *Acorus*, of Flower-de-luce, Elecampane, flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot.

*A Fomenta-  
tion.*

Rx the oyle of St. Johns-wort, of Lillies, Cammomile, ana  $\text{ʒ} \text{iii.}$  oyle of brickettes, of Turpentine, of Foxes,  $\text{ʒ} \text{i.}$   $\text{ʒ}$ , dippe toosed Wooll herein, and first wash the part affected, then lay it thereon. This Fomentation must be done by the fire.

*A dry Bath.*

Rx of Bay leaves, Sage, Hysope, ana,  $\text{M} \text{ii.}$  boyle these in Wine, then take some stones, and heat them as hot as may be, being hot, cast them into some convenient vessell, and besprinkle them with the decoction; the vessell must be so placed, that the patient may receive all the fume, and  
ayre

ayre that ascends: the fittest place for this purpose is in some hot-house, as was shewed before; and this must be done morning and evening as long as he can well indure it; and when he doth come out of this hot-house, let him take of Triacle, ʒ i. and so goe into his warme bed, and sweat after it. After 3. houres the beginning of the marrow of the back-bone must be anoynted with the foresaid oyntment.

Rx of Rew-leaves, Bay-leaves, Hysope, St. Johns-wort. Sage, ana, Mi.ß, of the flower of *Stachys*, *Spica*, ana, Mß, of Beavers-stone ʒ i Nutmeg, Cloves, Mace, ana, ʒ ʒ ʒ; beate these into a powder, and put them into a Quilt.

A Quilt.

*An appendix or addition serving for the cure  
of the PALSEY.*

**F**irst, the belly must be purged by a Clyster: and after 5. or 6. dayes, he may take such things, as will prepare the matter; and then againe, gentler purges must be prescribed, before the humours be carried another way; for some few dayes hee must abstaine from preparing and purging medicines, and in the *interim*, let the humours that runne to the part affected, be dissolved by Clysters, Gargarismes, Sneefings, and medicines that provoke vomitting. Then againe there may be used such medicines, as will make the humours more plyable, and expell them being well concocted, by which meanes stronger medicines may with more safety be used, after that, shall the palsied part be strengthened, and the reliques consum'd: and then againe, let him for a while forbear taking medicines, onely once every weeke, or at the most twice, let him have a Clyster, and then wee may use such as doe prepare, and purge the body; and in the meane space, cupping glasses must be fastned to the roote of the marrow of the back-bone; for by these meanes wee shall bring back the sense to the affected part. For the cure of the particular palsied part, an especiall

care



care must be had, that the locall medicines be applied to that part, from whence the palsied sinew doth arise, not upon the whole back bone, or braine. Likewise care ought to be had, that those things that will draw spirits, and blood to the part affected, may be applied. Playsters of Pitch, Salt, and Mustard-seed are excellent for this purpose, and after the aforesaid manner we will cure the dulnesse, if it so oppresse any part of the body, that it may seeme to be as it were a broken, or diminished Palsie: if the Palsie be caused by a cold and ill constitution, we will not use purging medicines, but onely such as are hot, and have an alterative power.

*A method serving for the knowledge of* MELANCHOLY, *or* BLACK CHOLER.

**M**elancholy is a kind of doting without a Feaver, arising from a melancholy humour, which so disturbs the seate of the minde, that they speake, and doe things repugnant to reason, and that with feare and sadnesse; this name is given to this disease from the matter, and cause thereof.

3. Kinds of melancholy.

1.

There be three kinds of Melancholies. The first cometh of grosse Melancholy blood, being full of dregs, gathered together in the braine: for Melancholy juyce is more boyld then it should, all the other blood in the body remaining pure.

2.

The second happens, when as all the veines of the body are bedewed with melancholy blood, caused for the most part by the corruption of the liver, which doth ingender grosse and fæulent blood; or else by the spleene, when as either by weaknesse, or obstruction it cannot cleanse the liver from such dregs.

3.

The third kind is called hypochondriacall melancholy; of which in the next Chapter we will say somewhat more largely.

*The*

*The part affected.*

The part affected is the brain, which is hereby known: because some principall faculty of the braine is hurt; for from the brain, all the soules principall faculties do spring: and it so chances, that the braine in this disease is tainted, because it is a similar part; for the whole temper of the brain is changed into cold and dry by the melancholy humour; and herein it appears, because it neither suddenly comes, neither is the party suddenly ridde of it. The whole essence of the braine is sometime hurt, and then it cannot appeare that the sides under the short ribs, or stomack, or any other part is ainoited. But sometimes the symptomes of melancholick men are more apparent, because they be more increased, and then a leaden hiew doth appeare in the face: sometime it is hurt by consent of the stomack and *Mirash*. Sometimes through the corruption of the whole body; and then the face is of a blackish colour. Lastly, there is a suppression of monthly termes, or of pyles, or of some usuall excrement, viz. the superfluities of the liver, and spleene. The habit of the body is lean, hairy, and inclining to blacknesse, and the veines are larger then they should be. By this that is said, we may understand this effect to be nothing else, then a depraving of the function of the principall faculty; and therefore we may rather cal it a symptome, then a disease. The imaginary faculty is offended, but the memory and thoughts are free. In conclusion, we will say that melancholy is a symptome seeking the ruine of the principall faculties action, viz. imaginative.

*The signes.*

The signes of melancholy are feare and sadnesse, evill thoughts without any manifest cause, for vapours arising from blacke choler, doe darken the minde; and the braine is as it were clowded all over, injoying small light of reason, which may, appeare by their actions.

E

They



They are toucht with a wearinesse of life, and with ill and deepe thoughts of minde. At length they talke very idly. Oftentimes you shall finde them crying; and now they delight in solitarinesse, within short time, they will as much condemne it; they are ever musing, and thinking that they are beguiled, or that some plots are working against them; their sleepe is short, and oftentimes they are therein disquieted with troublesome dreames: besides these affects, which are alwayes common to melancholy men, some are ever laughing, others ever weeping; some imagine themselves to be prophets, foretelling much of things to come; some have such an imagination that they are mighty men; others suppose themselves to be transformed into some strange shape, whereby they counterfeite the voyces and actions of Cuckoes, some of Cocks, or of some other beasts; some thinke they are earthen vessels, and by that reason go aside, lest they should be hurt or broken by them that meete them; some though they dread death, yet doe they wish it, and sometime kill themselves; some thinke they be without heads, other without legs; some armelesse, some refuse meat, supposing the terme of their lives to be at an end: some do imagine thieves are come, and that officers wait for them to carry them to prison, some feare that the earth wil swallow them up; some are disquieted with other imaginations, even as a his former course of life was: some are busied with warlike affaires, strifes, studies, prayers, or other courses whereunto they were addicted: in a word, these dreame waking.

*The Causes.*

The cause of this, is the cold and dry distemper of the braine; whether it doth happen by nature, or accidentally by a melancholy humour, and ill vapours generated in the other parts, or of old time left there: from hence it is, that black and dreggish vapours doe creepe into the seate of the mind, whereby the brain is darkned. It is also caused by

too much heat in the head, so that the blood is burnt up, & from thence come melancholy vapours, which sometime is observed in feavers. A continuation of sadnesse, superfluous watchings, solitarinesse, and the staying of monthly terms and piles, bring this disease; for maligne vapours carried up by the corrupt blood, doe vitiate the mind. Again, the use of such things that doe not nourish well, especially if they be not well digested, oftentimes cause this disease; to widows, and such as are deeply in love, this doth commonly happen; because the minde is spent with care and griefe: sometime the liver is in fault, when by reason of some great distemper, it doth beget store of black blood. Sometime it is caused by the spleen, when as it doth draw great store of that blood; and doth not expell it; for hereby in time the whole body is bedewed with melancholy blood.

*Prognostiques.*

Melancholy, which doth seaze upon the essence of the braine, and continues long, making the affect as it were naturall, is altogether incurable: yet if it were taken at the beginning, the cure would be easier. Too much sadnesse, and immoderate feare is a signe of melancholy: but if they that are troubled with this affect, are troubled with the pyles, there is hope of cure. And it is to be feared, that it should grow to an Apoplexy, or convulsion, or madnes, or falling-sicknesse, and therefore this mitchiefe must presently be cured. Melancholy is troublesome to men, but especially old men, but to women it is dangerous. Melancholy caused by the corruption of the whole body, as also that which is caused by the default of the braine, is hardly cured.

*A method serving for the cure of MELANCHOLY.*

**I**T is wrought by these remedies following. Let the aire be cleare, of a wholesome smell, moylt, and in the rest



temperate; his diet must be such as doe moisten in a meane, and such as is of good iuyce, and easie digestion, not breeding wind: reare eggs, flesh of Hens, Capons, Chickens, Partridges; Fish of tender substance. Parsely, Raynsins, Endive, Borage, Buglosse, Lettuce, Mallows, Spinage, may be used in broths: let him drinke white Wine, and exercise himselfe moderately, and walk in pleasant places; he may sleep somewhat longer than ordinary; if nature cannot expell the excrements, art must be used: perturbations of the minde must chiefly be avoyded, especially feare and sadness, and in stead thereof the minde must bee cherished with mirth, stedfastnesse and good hopes.

*Preparers.*

The syrup of the iuyce of Borage, Buglosse, or Violets, of *Epithymon*, of Apples, Quinces, Fumitory, Hops, *Oxymel simplex*; waters of Buglosse, Hops, Fumitory, Endive, Succory, and Baulme. A decoction of Fennill-roots, rootes of Parsely, Capers, Licorice, the rindes of *Tamariscus*, *Epithymi*, Thyme, Fumitory, *Scolopendria*, flowers of Borage, Buglosse, and Violets, Raynsins: the syrup of *Epithymum*, Licorice, Fumitory, Buglosse, Violets; those that doe moysten, and moderately heate, especially are to be made choice of; for the faulty humor is made cold and dry by reason of aduersion.

*Emptiers.*

The former decoction, whereto adde Damaske Prunes, Polipody, Sene, *Mirabolani*, Indi, *Emipelatici*, *Diasena*, Cassia, the infusion of Sene leaves, and *Epithymon*, are very good. *Confectio Hamech*, *Hiera*, *Diacolocynthidos*, *Logodali*, *Diasena*. N. *Pillula Inde*, de lapide *Lazuli*, lapis *Armenus*, *Cyanus*, Polypody, *Epithymon*, Sene, *Mirabolani kebuli nigri*, Bearesfoote; the Helleborisme of *Mathiolum*. Let the median veine be opened; if the whole body abound with melancholy blood, if the median appeare not, we may open a veine in the ankle, especially in women, whose monethly

termes

termes are suppressed, or in men, who formerly had the piles; but if the braine be in fault, it is not so requisite, unless it cannot be cured by other meanes, and then the *Cephalear* veine shall be cut; if this will not prevaile, we must cut a veine in the forehead. We must begin with milder medicines, and seldome use purgers, because they will dry more than is requisite; and also the matter must be emptied by distance of time, that nature may be releaved. Alwayes moistners shall bee mingled with laxative medicines, and such as may comfort the spirits, and principall parts.

*Averters.*

Clysters of the decoction of Anni-seeds, Fennill-seeds, wild-saffron, Hops, Thyme, *Epithymon*, Mallows, Mercury, Fumitory, Buglosse, Polipody, Sene, *Diasena*, *confectio Hammech*, *Discaholicon*, *Hiera*, *Logodali*, *cassia*; oyle of Violets, of sweet Almonds. Suppositers; Frictions of the extreme parts; Ligatures also of those parts, and bathing with hot water; sternutatories, and masticatories. We must endeavour to bring downe the monethly termes, and pyles, if this disease did take the originall from them. Cupping-glasses without scarification, may bee laid to his rib-gristles. Horse-leeches may be set to his forehead, and other parts, Let Cauteries be made in the coronall seame, and the thicknesse of the skull may bee diminished by a Trepan, that a conveyance may be made for smoaky and stutty vapours.

*Strengtheners.*

*Electuarium latificans Galeni de gemmis*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Dianibos*, *pleresarcotium confectio de granis tinctorin*. *Diagalanga*, *Diacuminum*, *diabuglossatum*, *diaboraginatium*. *Diambra*, *Electuarium conciliatorum*, *diamuscum* sweet and bitter; syr. of Quinces, of Apples; the great conserve of our description; Borage, Buglosse, Violets, Roses, Fumitory, Orange-rinds, conserve of Elecampane, *Satyrion*, the decoction



*Saccharum violatum rosatum, manus Christi*, an odour of Rose-water, violets an irrigation of the head being shaved, with the decoction of the flowers of *Nymphaea*, Lettuce, Mallowses, *Sisymbrium*, Violets, Camomile, Holy-hockes, and Weathers-head which he shall use many dayes in the morning. An epitheme for the heart, of the water of Buglosse, Borage, Water-lillies, Violets, odoriferous Wine, Baulm-leaves, Nutmeg, both *Bechens* Cloves, Sorell-seede, a Fomentation of the belly, made with oyle, wherein Cummine, Rew, Carrot, and Dill-seed have been boyled. An oyntment for the back-bone, of the oyle of Violets, of sweet Almonds, Dill, Camomile, and Water-lillies: often bathing in sweet water, is very wholesome, especially if the leaves of Mallowses, Violets, Roses, Water-lillies, Weather-heads, Lin-seede, Fenegreeke Buglosse, Comomile, Mellilote flowers have been boyled.

*Correctors of Accidents.*

Syrup of Poppy, of Violets, with Lettuce-water, *Philonium Romanum*, *Tripheba magna*, Pills of Hounds-tongue; a lotion for the head, of the decoction of the flowers of Water-lillies, and Violet-flowers, and rootes of Mandrake, Henbane, white Poppy, an ointment of the oyle of Dill, Water-lillies, Popler, Violets, *Opium*, and Saffron. We must use such as will procure sleep, for this is great ease to the patient, whereas watchings are hurtfull, but Opiate must not be administred, unlesse necessity require.

*A more particular method for the curing of the*  
**MELANCHOLY.**

*A Clyster.*

R of the leaves of Beete, Mallowses, Violets, Mercury, Hops, ana M i.  $\beta$ , Borage, M ij. *Epithymi*,  $\beta$   $\zeta$ , of the flowers of Elder, Mi.  $\beta$ , of Anai-seed, *Lini*, ana  $\zeta$  i. of the seed of Bastard Saffron beaten, *Polipodidi quercini*, ana  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , *Sena Alexandrina*,  $\zeta$  i. the rinde of Beares-foot.  $\zeta$  i. Boyle these in Whey, q. s. unto ff i.  $\beta$ , adde to that which is strained

# The Physitians Practice.

31

ned forth, *Sp. Hieræ Logodali*. ʒ β, Oyle of Violets, Lillies, ana ʒ i. β, of Salt ʒ i. hereof make a Clyster which may be used twice every weeke.

Rx *Syr. de Epithymo*, the syr. of Apples, of Violets, ana ʒ i. Buglosse, Fumitary, ana ʒ β, of the water of Borage, Fumitary, Violets, ana ʒ iij hereof make a syrup.

*A Syrup.*

Rx of Anni-seeds, ʒ iij. of the leaves of Senæ ʒ i. β, *Epithymi* ʒ β, Damaske Prunes, ʒ x. Let them be grossely beaten, and infused one day in the whey of Goates milke, q. s. hereof make a Potion.

*A draught.*

Rx of the roots of Fennill, of grasfe, ana ʒ i. β, Borage-flowres, of Violets, *Epithymi*, ana M i, β of Hops, Fumitary, M i, Anni-seede, ʒ β, Railins, the stones being taken out, of pure Barley, ana ʒ i. of scraped Licorice, ʒ iij. of *Tamariscus* rinds, ʒ β, *Senæ Alexandrina*, ʒ i. β. *Rhabarb. Indorum Myrobalanarum*, ana ʒ ij, *Polipodi quercini*, ʒ x. Boile these in a sufficient quantity of water, unto ʒ i. β, add to the straining, *Syr. de Epithymo*, of Fumitary, ana ʒ i. β, hereof make a Potion.

*A potion.*

Rx *Confectionis bamech*. ʒ v. *Pulveris sancti* ʒ i. syr. *Epithymi*, ʒ i. the water of Fumitary, of Borage, ana ʒ i. β, make a draught hereof.

*A draught.*

Rx *Confect. bamech*, *Diapruni compositi*, ana ʒ iij. syr. of Succory with *Rhabarb.* ʒ i. of the common decoction q. s. hereof make a draught.

*Another.*

Rx *Pillularum Indarum*, ʒ ij. *Pul. Hieræ logod.* ʒ i. *trochisci albandale* gr. iij, syr. *Epithymi* q. s. make Pills thereof.

*Pills.*

Rx *Masse pillul. de Hieræ composita*, ʒ β, *Cochiarum*, ʒ i. *trochiscorum albandal.* gr. iij, syr. of *Stæchas*, of Violets, ana q. s. make it into Pills.

*Pills.*

Rx *Pillularum de lapide lazuli, aggregatarum*, *Indarum*, ana ʒ i. *diagr.* gr. iij, syr. *Epithymi* q. s.

*Pills.*

Rx *Hieræ logodali*, ʒ i. *Hieræ diacola.* ʒ i. *Senæ Alex.* ʒ i. β syrup of Violets, ʒ i. β, Violet-water ʒ iij, make a draught hereof.

*A purging  
Potion.*

Rx of



*A vomiting  
Potion.*

Rx of the roots of Radishes of an equall bignes, bore holes through them, fasten small pieces of Ling-wort to them: and on the third day, when as the radish roote shall have drawn the strength from the Ling-wort, boyle it in *Oxymel Squille*, the Ling-wort being quite taken away: hereof give the patient ℥ij. with ℥iiij. of warmwater.

*Another.*

Rx of the roots of Lung-wort ℥iiij. infuse them in ℔β, of the water of Buglosse over hot embers; straine it, and make a syrupe thereof with clarified Hony: give to the patient one spoonful hereof in broth that is somewhat fat, whereunto adde, *Hiere Logod.* ℥ij.

*A conserve.*

Rx the Conserve of Violets, of Buglosse ana ℥i β, *Sp. Latifantis Galeni* ℥ij. *Dianthos*, *Dianthusci dulcis*, *El. Et. de Gemmis*, ana, ℥ij. *Diamargariti. Frigid.* *Diapragacanthi frigid.* ana ℥i β, syr. of Violets, of Apples ana q. s. Two-houres before dinner or supper the patient may take ℥i.

*A soft electu-  
ary.*

Rx *Elect. Latifantis Gal.* ℥β, *Corticum Conditorum Citri*, ℥iiij, *Sacchari Violarum*, *Rosarum*, ana ℥β syr. of the juyce of Barage. q. s.

*A comforting  
Potion.*

Rx *Plerisarcant. Latifantis Galeni*, ana ℥ij, *Sacchari*, *Violacei* & *Rosacei*, ana ℥i. let ℥iiij be given with strong Wine.

*An Opiate.*

Rx the Conserve of Buglosse ℥i β *Sp. Latifantis Galeni* ℥i *Sp. Diarrh. babatin Sine Mosco* ℥β. the seed of Citrines, of the best Cinnamon, ℥β. syr. of Violets, Buglosse ana, q. s.

*Lozenges.*

Rx *Sp. Electuarij de gemmis*, ℥i β, *Dianthos*, *Dambre*, ana ℥ij. of the purest Sugar dissolved in Violet-water, and Buglosse water q. s. let this electuary be made into Lozenges.

*A Bath.*

Rx of the Flowers of water-Lilies, Borage, Buglosse, Violets, ana M. ij, of Camomil, Melilote, ana M. iij. of the leaves of Mallows, *Althea*, ana M. ij, of the seeds of *Linus*, *Fengreeke*, of Barley ana ℥iiij, Cowcumber, Gourd ana ℥ij. 2 or 3 heads of Wethers. Boyle them in waters, q. s. make a bath of it, wherein put new Cows-milke, of fresh-butter ℔iiij,

℞ iij. bathe the body herewith 6 houres before meales.

℞ of the flowers of Camomile Mij. ℞. of *Stachas*, of water-Lillies, ana Mi. of Lettuce, Mallowes, Violets, wild Mallows, ana Mi. ℞. 2 heads of weathers, boyle them in water, q. s. to the third part, hereof make an irrigation, wherewith besprinkle the patients head, being newly shaved, and then apply the lights of a Ram as hot as they come out of the belly, unto the head.

℞ the oyle of Violets, ℞ i. of sweete Almonds, of Camomile, ana ℞ ℞. of Annis, oyle of Mace, ana ℞ ij. make an unguent, with which the head after lotion shal be anointed.

℞ the oyle of Violets, of Lillies, ana ℞ i. of sweet Almonds, of Capons grease, of mans fat ℞ ℞. wherewith the back must be anointed after the patient doth come out of the bath.

℞ syr. de *Papavere* ℞ i. ℞. of Violets, ℞ ℞. the water of Violets, of Lettuce, ana ℞ i. ℞. make a syr. to procure sleep.

℞ Oyle of Violets, of mandrake, of water-Lillies, ana, ℞ ℞, of Nutmeg, ℞ ℞. saffron gr. v. of *Opium*, gr. iij. of waxe q. s. make an oymntment to cause sleep, wherewith anoynt the temples, wrists, and soles of the feet.

℞ of Vine leaves, of Violets, of Lettuce, ana Mij. of willow, flowers of Violets, Buglosse, water-Lillies, ana Mi. the heads of white Poppy, no iij. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of water. It is approved to be excellent for the causing of sleep, if the hands and feet be bathed therein.

*An Appendix, serving for the cure of the*  
MELANCHOLY.

**F**irst, the belly must be loosed by a softning Clyster, such as discusse windinesse, and concoct the humors, then a veine shall be cut, and the humors made pliable to nature, at the length the body shalbe purged of them; mildly at the first lest we doe overheate and dry the body; afterward we may use stronger. Purging potions are better than pills, because pills dry more than liquid things, afterwards turne the

F humours

*An Embroch.*

*An unguent.*

*Another.*

*A Syrup to  
cause sleepe.  
An Oymt-  
ment.*

*A Bath.*



humors from the braine, with Ligatures, Frictions, strong Clysters, Suppositers, and Cupping-glasses; then we will strengthen the principall parts of the body, chiefly the braine, and heart, and resolve the reliques; then administer such medicines as will procure sleepe, all which wee will effect by the former medicines, so that universals, in due sort, be applyed to particulars; and above all, we will adde such things as doe moysten, because that the disease is caused by a dry distemper. Some there bee that are very serious, and are verily perswaded that they have frogs, serpents, or such like in their bowels, whereof some have beene healed, because some such things, unknowne to the patients, were cast into their excrements, when purging medicines were ministred: for seeing them, they layd aside their false imagination.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the Hypochondriall* MELANCHOLY.

**T**He Hypochondriall, or windy melancholly is often caused by the over-boyling of dreggish blood, which was settled neere unto the stomack, or gristles of the short ribs, by a distemper of the liver, stomack, or miseraicall veines; hence it is, that grosse and burnt humours, are carried up to the principall seat of the braine, and so doe disquiet it, and stirre up Melancholy. By the selfe same cause, as in a suffusion, the symptomes of that mischief are stirred up by sharpe, and smoky vapours, proceeding from the lower parts: for it so happens, that the temperature of the braine is altered by darke and foggy vapours arising from the stomack, liver, mesentary, or from some other adjacent part neere unto them: whereby the imagination is hurt, memory and cogitation remaining perfect. The matter of this disease, viz. a melancholy humor, partly is derived from the liver, partly from the spleene, but most commonly from the liver; and when the spleene doth not draw this humor

humor unto it by reason of some fault in that bowell, then this humor doth stay in the miseraicall veines.

*The part affected.*

The part affected is the braine, and that either by consent of the stomack; or the gristles of the short ribs; for in these places, as it were in an inflamed part, the melancholy blood is gathered together: sometime it is sent from other parts neere unto the stomack being overheated, for hereby the neighbouring blood waxeth hot, and is turned into melancholy; at length it so happens, that the braine doth sympathize with these parts.

*Signes.*

Besides the ordinary signes of Melancholians, by the excessive heate of the humors, the parts about the heart are inflamed, and seeme to be somewhat mitigated by cold meates: oftentimes the patient doth feele paine in his stomack, and short ribs, after he hath eaten such meates that are not easie of digestion, for from hence much crudity is caused, whereof the more plenty there is, by so much the more doth this mischief rage. They doe eat much, but in the meane while they have their bellies bound: they break winde often, and belch very much, which is caused by raw and melancholy humors contained in the aforesayd places. In those places are very frequent rumblings, and murmurs heard; and this is an especiall signe of this disease. Sometimes they have paines in their shoulder, the Midriffe is drawne upwards, the arteries beate strongly, and disorderly; Ringing in the eares, and inflammations of veines and eyes, are caused by vapours which are carried up thither. Their sleepe is short and troublesome. They are troubled with a dizzines, and palpitation. Vomit of crude phlegme is caused, wherewith choler is sometime mixed. They are eased of their paine, after they have digested that which they have eaten, after stooles, vomits, and belchings.



*The Causes.*

It is caused by the default of the spleene, when it doth not draw away the melancholy blood made by the livers distemper. Sometimes it doth happen, that the blood, which is in the veines of the stomach, mesentery, Spleene, bowels, guts, and adjacent parts, is burnt up by too much heate, caused by some obstruction, or some other cause; and then the blood doth degenerate into black juyce which runnes over the mesentery, spleene, and other parts thereto adjoyning, whereof followeth a great heate of the bowels; and from thence vapours are conveyed to the braine, from whence these Symptomes breake out.

*Prognosticks.*

This affect is not so violent as the former, yet in time it will degenerate into the former kinds. And as the patient is eased by due concoction of his meate, so the disease is much exasperated by crudities. If this disease take deepe roots, sometime madnesse, sometime a Fever not unlike the hectick will follow. But at the first it is soone cured; if it waxe old, it is hardly to be cured.

*A method serving for the cure of the Hypochondriacall MELANCHOLY.*

**I**T is wrought by these kinds of remedies following, a hot and moyst ayre is good.

Let his diet be such as are moyst, as Hens, Chickens, Capons, Veale, Partridges; a small quantity of broth is good, whereas if they be given in great abundance, they cause a fluctuation, and crudity in the stomach. Raynsins, sweete cherries, Prunes, rost Apples, wherewith mixe a little Sugar, let them be coold, and they will be both medicine and nourishment. His drinke must bee the Creame of huld Barley, with a little Cinnamon and seede of Annis, white Wine mixed with water, Whey, but that of Goates Milke is best. Let violent motion be avoyded; riding, sayling, walking, swimming in an artificall bath is good;

If

If the patient doe not sleepe well, such meanes as are laid up in arts store-houle for the procuring of sleepe must be admittred, all disquietnesse of minde must bee banished, and they must be recreated with mulicke, and delightfull songs.

Syrup of the iuyce of Fumitory, Violets, Maiden-haires, of odoriferous Apples, the iuyce of Borage, Endive, *Epithymon*, Orange pills, Wormewood, Syrup *Byzantini* without Vineger, water of Hops, Buglosse, Fumitory, Bawlme, Borage, Violets, Endive, Scabius: a decoction of the roots of *Asarum*, Fennell, Parsly, *Asparagi*, knee houlme grasse, *Valeriana*, *cyper*, Succory, a decoction of Pennyroyall. Centory the lesse, and Wormewood, are taken by many with good successe: those which take away stopping and comfort the stomack, ought to be mingled with preparing medicines.

Confect. *Hameck*, *Diacatholicon*, *Diaphenicum*, *Diafena*, *pulvis sanctus*, *Helleborismus Matthioli*, *Hieralogodali*, *Diacolocymb*. Pills *lazuli lapidis*, Fumitory, *Inde*. Syrup of many infusions, of Roses, Sene, Polipody, black Hellebore, *Epithymon*, *Manna*. Vomit doth much good, if the effect be of long continuance: if he vomit with much ease, it is best, especially if the stomack bee overcharged with raw undigested humors. After meate with warme water simple *Oxyssel*, or with the infusion of Radish-roots, of blacke or white Hellebore, the residue shall bee stirred up and avoyded. With a Clyster of the decoction of Camomile, Bettony, Mugwort, Centory the lesse, Beet, with wind, Hops, Fumitory, wild Saffron, *Epithymon*, Polipody, Sene-leaves, whereto adde Hony, *Hierapiera*, *Logodal*. Oyle of Lillies and Violets. The liver veine of the left arme must be opened if there be great fulnesse, or the *Salvatella*, if months or piles be staied, and if the disease be stubborne, a veine in the forehead shall bee opened; and as it is expedient that preparing medicines bee renewed, so is it likewise fitting to renew purging medicines, be-

Preparers.

Emptiers.



because humors causing this disease, are for the most part earthy: and from hence rebellious diseases for the most part arise.

*Antidotes hinc etiam Averters.*

Lotions, Frictions, Ligatures of the legs are awaylable: Clysters, provocation of Pyles, and monethly tearmes, cupping-glasses with scarifications, must bee applyed to the gristles of the short-ribs, if there be no paine, for they fetch out winds. Such medicines as turne away the humors that loade the head are of great force.

*Strengtheners, and such as doe amend the distemper.*

Triacle Diacuminum, Aromaticum Rosarum, Diamargaritum frigidum, Eleſtuarium de Gemmis, Diamuscum dulce, Diagalanga, Conserve of the flowers, and rootes of Buglosse, of Violets, the great conserve. A decoction of the lesse Centory, Penny-royall, Wormewood, Ground-pine, Germander, Anni-seeds, Fennill and Palsey. Syr. of *Asarum*-root, with Borage, Buglosse, Succory, Roses, Centory the lesse, Camomile, the leaves of Fumitory, Wormewood, Germander, Ground-pine, Hartstongue, Borage, Hops, Hyssop, Betony, Anni-seeds, Fennell and Caret-feed, Rayfins, Syr. of Pomegranat, of sweet and sowre Apples. An oyntment for the sides and belly, of the Oyle of Capers, Lillies, Camomile, Rew, sweet Almonds, Broome-flowers, seedes of *Nigella-Romana*, Cinnamon, *Ammoniacum*, Vinegar. An odour: Make a fomentation of water and Wine, wherein boyle Sotherne-wood, Mellilot, Dane-wort, Camomile, *Epithymon*, Tyme, Mug-wort, Sene, Polipody, whereto likewise adde some Vinegar. A bath of sweet water is very goodd, being made of Mallowes, Violets, Beet, Roses, Camomile, Fennell, Butter, and Milke. Medicines, that heat and dry too much, are forbidden, such as are *Aurea Alexandrina*, and many more: and we wil use the assigned cordiall

cordiall powders very moderately, because they dry the humors, and body, and by that meanes increase the malady.

*Correctors of accidents.*

These following doe correct accidents: Cupping glasses without scarification doe resolve winds; a fomentation of the sides with the decoction of Penny-royall. Dill, Rew, Wormewood, Bayleaves, *Serpillum*; or else let it be made of Vineger, wherein the seeds of Cummin, Annise, and Penny-royall were boiled. A bag of Camomile-flowers, Roses, Anni-seeds, Cummin, Fennell, Fengreek, Bay-leaves, *Serpillum*, Rew, Wormewood, Penny-royall. Moysten it with Vineger, and let it be hot when it is applyed unto the stomack. An oyntment *ex oleo nardis*, Wormewood, and Rew; a Cataplasme of *Cyperus*-roots, flowers of Camomile, seeds of Fennell, Annis, Cummin, Fengreeke, Mugwort, Danewort, Rosemary, and Wormewood-leaves. Make an irrigation for the head with sweet water, described in the bath: it is very good to procure sleep; some of these that are prescribed, doe assuage paine, others scatter the winds that are offensive to the body, others do procure sleepe.

*A more particular manner of curing the Hypochondriall MELANCHOLY.*

Rx Mercury leaves, Mallows, Pennyroyall, flowers of Elder, Camomile, Mellilot, Centory the lesse, ana M i. of broome, M i.  $\beta$ , Beet leaves, Coleworts, Hops, ana M  $\beta$ , of Dodder; M i. Antiseed, of Fennell, of bastard Saffron, ana  $\zeta$  vi. *Polypodii quercini*  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , *Sene Alexandrina*,  $\zeta$  i. *Epinymi*  $\zeta$  v. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of water unto  $\text{fbi}$ .  $\beta$ , adde to the straining, *Hiera logodali*, *pulveris sancti*  $\zeta$  i  $\beta$ , *Confectionis bamech*,  $\zeta$  iii. oyle of Lillies, of Violets, of Dill, ana  $\zeta$  i. *Mellis violacei*,  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , of Salt  $\zeta$  i. hereof make a Clyster, which he may use once every weeke, and the remainder

*A Clyster.*



A cataplasme.

A Potion to  
expell poison.

A Julep.

A Potion.

A Potion.

A bole.

Pills.

A vomit.

mainder of the Clyster, will serve to make a cataplasme for the spleene.

When the Clyster is come downe, the next day the patient must drinke of the best Mithridate, of the great Triacle, ana  $\text{ʒij}$  of Hypocras  $\text{ʒiiij}$ .

Rx of the syr. of *Epithymon*, of Violets, ana  $\text{ʒi}$ . of the juyce of Borage, *Byzantini* without Vinegar, ana  $\text{ʒi}$ .  $\beta$ . water of Violets, of Borage, of Hops, ana  $\text{ʒiiij}$ .

Rx of Fennell Roots, of Grasse, ana  $\text{ʒi}$ . of Borage  $\text{ʒij}$ . of Betony leaves, Pennyroyall, Hyssop, the lesse Centory, ana,  $\text{M}\beta$ . Aniseeds, of Fennell, of Carrots ana  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . Fumitory, of the tendrils of Hops ana  $\text{Mi}$  *Epithymi*,  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ . Nutmeg  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . Orange Pills  $\text{ʒv}$ . of Raylins the stones being taken out  $\text{ʒi}$ . of scraped Liquorice  $\text{ʒv}$ . of Cowcumber seeds  $\text{ʒvi}$ . of the flowers of Woodrowell, ana  $\text{Mi}$ . boyle them in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed: add to the straining of the syr. of Pomegranats, sweet and sowre apples, juyce of Borage ana  $\text{ʒi}$ .

Rx the Roots of Borage,  $\text{ʒi}$ .  $\beta$ . of Centory the lesse, Pennyroyall, ana,  $\text{Mi}$ .  $\beta$ . of Anise and Fennell seeds ana  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . of Raylins  $\text{ʒi}$ .  $\beta$ . of Sene leaves, *Polypodii quercini*, ana,  $\text{ʒi}$ . *Epithymi*,  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ . Flowers of Woodrowell  $\text{M}\beta$ . boyle them in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb i}$ .  $\beta$ . adde to the straying *Diacatholiconis*  $\text{ʒi}$ . *Sp. biera Logodali*,  $\text{ʒi}$ . Syr. *Byzantini*, de *Epithymo*, ana,  $\text{ʒi}$ .  $\beta$ . make a potion hereof, which the Patient may use frequently.

Rx Confect. *Hamech*,  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . *Pulveris Sancti*  $\text{ʒi}$ . *Diacatholiconis*  $\text{ʒij}$ . a bit or morrell must be made hereof.

Rx *Pulveris biera logod.*  $\text{ʒi}$ .  $\beta$ . *Sp. biera Picra Gal.*  $\text{ʒij}$ . syr. of Wormwood q. s. make pills hereof: about an howre after he hath eaten the pills, let the Patient drinke the decoction of huld Barley with a little Sugar. After that, he must vomit, which must be caused by  $\text{ʒvi}$ . of warme water, wherein  $\text{ʒij}$ . of *Oxymel* were dissolved, or with the juyce of a Radish that hath received the strength of white hellebore, which may this way bee effected: take of white helle-

bore

bore 3 i, which must be thrust into the Radish, and there remaine for the space of three dayes, and then the juyce of the Radish being pressed forth, is for the purpose.

R the conserve of Buglosse roots, 3 i. ʒ, of Violets, 3 ʒ, *Dianthusci dulcis*, *Rosata novella* ana 3 ij. *Letificantis Galeni*, 3 ij. ʒ, syr. of the juyce of Borage, of Orange-pills, ana q. s. a soft Electuary of this.

R *Sp. Diarrhod. abbatis* ʒ ij, *Rosata novella*, *Aromatici rosati Gabr.* ana ʒ i. of Buglosse flowers ʒ i ʒ, of Orange-pills, 3 i. of Anni-seed, 3 iij, *Sacchari violacei*, *rosacei*, conserve of Buglosse roots, ana, 3 ij. syr. of the juyce of Borage, q. s. an Electuary in forme of an Opiate.

R of Borage-roots, 3 ij. of *Polypody*, 3 ʒ, the barks of the roots of Capers, 3 ij. of Annis and Carraway-seeds, ana 3 iij, flowers of Violets and Buglosse, ana M i. ʒ, boyle them in two pints of water untill halfe be consumed. Then adde *Viniodorati* lb i. let them simmer a while together; adde to the straining of Nutmeg, Cinnamon, *Rosata novella*, ana 3 ʒ, of fine Sugar q. s. make hereof Hypocras.

R of Penny-royall of Sowthern-wood, ana M i. ʒ, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i. Cummin, and Anni-seeds, ana 3 i. *Epithymi*, *polipodii quercini* 3 vi. of Centory the lesse, Rew, ana M ʒ, boyle them in equall portions of Wine and Water untill the third part be consumed, then adde *Aceti squillitici* q. s. make a fomentation for the belly.

R Oyle of Capers, Lillies, sweete Almonds, ana 3 ʒ, of the seeds of *Nigella*, *avetbi*, of the best Cinnamon, ana ʒ ʒ, of Saffron gr. xij. *ammoniacy* 3 ij. of Waxe, q. s. make a soft oyntment of this, wherewith anoynt the parts under the stomack morning and evening.

R Oyle of Rew, wherein the seeds of Annise, Cummin, and Centory the lesse have been boyled, 3 i. of ship-pitch, 3 iij. mixe these, and apply them to the belly if he bee troubled with wind, but let the stomack be anoynted with the Oyle of Mastick, and Mace.

R of red Roses, of Camomile-flowers, ana M i. of the

*An electuary.*

*A cordiall opiate.*

*Cordiall Hypocras*

*A Fomentation.*

*An Oyntment.*

*A Quilt.*



lesse Centory-leaves, Penny-royal, Worm-wood, ana ℥iij, of the seeds of Rew, Annis, Fennill, Cummin, Fengreek, ana ℥i.β, bruise these grossely, make a quilt hereof for the stomach, and be sprinkle it sometime with Vinegar and Wine and apply it warm to the stomach.

*A Fomenta-  
tion.*

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Dane-wort, ℥i. of leaves of Rew, of Elder, *Anerbi*, ana M β, of the seeds of Annis, Cummin, and Carots, ana, ℥i, of Cinnamon, ℥β, boyle these in an equall quantity of water and wine, being first grossly bruised: make a Fomentation hereof for the belly where the wind did usually rumble.

*A Bath.*

R<sup>x</sup> of Dane-wort ℥ij. of the leaves of Bete, Violets, Mal-  
lowes, Mercury, Coleworts, ana Mij. of Hops, Fumita-  
ry, Centory the lesse, ana, Mij. β, flowers of Camomile, Mel-  
lilot, ana Mij β, *Seminum lini*, of Fengreek, ana ℥iij. boyle  
them in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, where-  
in powre some Milke, and of fresh Butter lb iij. Let a  
bath be made. With Figs, Leaven, Mustard-seed, Cantha-  
rides, and Vinegar, let a strong Caustery or blistering me-  
dicine bee made hereof, which must bee applied under the  
left side.

*An appendix or addition serving for the cure of the  
Hypocondriacall MELANCHOLY.*

**T**He belly must be evacuated by a Clyster, then a veine  
shall be opened, and the humors made plyable to na-  
ture, at the last all such humors as do offend the body, shall  
bee expelled, and presently after such things must bee  
prescribed as will comfort the braine, Liver, and Spleene,  
and will also disperse the reliques.

Then againe, because of the stubbornes of the disease,  
we will concoct and purge humours, and will strengthen  
the aforesaid parts: and then againe drive out the matter  
offending. All which wee may effect with successe by the  
former medicines.

Such

Such as heat and dry much, are to bee avoyded, whether they be medicines or nutriment: whereupon some using such medicines and nutriment to allay windynesse, and rumbling, doe very much encrease the disease; yet the medicines must altogether bee hot or cold, but as the circumstances, namely, the matters and accidents shall require, those medicines likewise that may breede winds, or detainethem in the body, must not be permitted.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the VER-  
TIGO or GIDDINES.*

**G**iddinesse is a disease, whereby the head, and all other parts of the body seeme to be turned about, so disturbing the braine and senses, that the patient oft falleth downe, unlesse he be held up by some stay neare at hand. And it doth so happen, that they that are sick of this disease, now and then fall downe on the earth, with a turning, even as those that runne in a ring, and if they do attempt to turne round, presently are they brought to the ground, whereas they that are sound, will endure many turnes. Sometime they will fall downe, if they see another man turne round, or any thing else that doth move with a circular motion. In this disease the sight, common sense, and imaginations are hurt. This disease is of neere kin unto the falling sickness, onely herein they differ, that the giddy party is not deprived of his senses, neither is hee hurried this way and that way, as convulsions deale with their patients.

*The part affected.*

The part that is affected, is the braine which doth appear by the functions that are hurt, for the animall faculty is grieved. But chiefly the braine is affected, and then a head-ach was the forerunner, as also heaviness and dullness thereof, annoyance of smell and taste, a ringing in the



cares, and yet never was it observed that the lower parts were endangered. But one while the braine is affected, because it is agreeable to the stomach, heart, and other inferior parts, for therein vicious humors are gathered together, or else corrupt nourishment is therein contained and hurtfull crudities generated; and then queasinesse and gnawing of the stomach doth very much trouble him; the appetite is quite taken away, and the heart is very much fretted. If it be caused by some other part of the body, or by staying of moneths, it shall appeare by his proper signes, but giddines is an accident appertaining both to the sight and imagination, for both faculties are thereby hurt.

*The signes.*

They wil not endure the sight of those things which turn swiftly about. Their sight is likewise depraved: or to their sight all things seeme to turne round, and darknesse is oft spread before their eyes, and they are very apt to fall, and if they turn but a little, they presently fall to the ground: for the action of the animall and sensitive soule is hurt, the imagination likewise goes not scot-free, and the head is dull: these accidents will be of longer continuance, if the brain be chiefly in fault, and if no affect of any other part is known to be resident there.

*The causes.*

It is caused by the abundance of boyling blood, and plenty of spirits, if it bee not voided at the nose, when it is ready to run out. This we doe commonly observe in sharpe diseases, and it is oft caused by crude and raw humours, as also venemous, which are either generated in the head, or in some one of the inferiour parts, especially in the stomach; because many crudities are therein generated. Also it doth take its beginning from the wombe, by reason of the communion these parts have with the braine. Moreover usuall and accustomed excrements are  
sup-

suppressed, (and that I may speake in generall) all humors, from whence vapours and windy spirits, grosse and hot, turbulent & malignant are generated, and lifted up, for these by their motion doe move the animall spirits (which is the soules wagon, chiefly that which is in the foremost ventricle of the braine) in a round by some inordinate motion, and so earnestly, that a man doth imagine that to be done outwardly, which is done inwardly; and so the judgement of the imaginative faculty is perverted; and oftentimes he doth imagine that he turneth round, & falleth forward. And no wonder: for those vapours turne round like a flame, and as the smoake turneth round in an oven, while they have no way out, the passage of the brain being stopped. It is likewise caused by a hot distemper of the braine, which strongly drawes in many vapours and doth extenuate the humors, and puts them in rage: againe, all that may disquiet the braine, all that doth stir up and heate humors, as immoderate exercise, heat of the sunne, and other like, which may recall the fit, doe cause this disease.

*Prognostiques.*

If giddinesse doe last long, it is next to an apoplexy, and falling sicknesse, the former age did terme it a little falling sicknesse. It must not therefore be neglected, seeing it may soone be changed into the most pernicious affect.

*A method serving for the cure of the  
GIDDINES.*

**L** Et his ayre be temperate, bright, & clear: that meat is good that breedeth good juyce, & that which is easily digested, and is not windy but pleasing to the stomach. Hunger must be avoided as well as glutting: let his drinke bee waterish Wine; temperate motion and exercise is meete, yet rest is better for the head: moderate sleepe is wholesome: excrements must dayly bee furthered, if they will not bee voyded of their owne accord: no



## Emptiers.

perturbations of the minde must bee permitted, as wrath, grief, sadnesse, &c.

Syr. of many infusions of Roses, of *Diaprunum Solutivum*, *Diacatholicon*, *Electuarium de Psyllio*, *Hiera Logod.* *Hiera piera*, *Diacolocimb*: *Pillule Cochie*, *Anree*, *Arabice*, *Mastichine*, *Aggregative*, of the v. kindes of *Myrabolani*, *Tamarindi*, *Rhabarb*: *Manna*, *Sene*, *Polipody*, *Epiithymon*, *Mirabolani Citrini*, *Agaricus trochiscatus*. Vomit is good: if it doth take his beginning from the stomach. Wee must chuse fit medicines for the offending humour, and yet it is not one onely humour that doth offend: for choler is oft joyned with other bad humours, and therefore such as purge choler, must be mingled with them.

## Averters.

Let the *Cephalica* veine bee opened, and that often, if the disease bee caused by blood, or other hot humours, sharpe Clysters in this case are good, especially if wee cannot let blood; frictions of the farthest parts with a hot cloth are commended, and wee may descend by degrees from the neck and armes, to the feet: wee must not touch the head, lest wee should offend it with rubbing, unlesse the whole body be well purged before: for it doth rather fill the head with vapors. Let cups with scarifications bee first applyed to the foremost part, then to the hinder part of the head, and let the hemroid veines bee opened and moneths provoked, sneezings, gargarismes, apophlegmatismes, a cautery of leaven, *Cantharides*, and Vinegar, shall be applyed behind his eares, or instead thereof; let an actuall cautery bee made in the crowne of his head: for by this meanes vapors are best resolved. Errhines of the juyce of *Cyclaminis*, *Anagallis*, which shall bee drawne up at his nostrils; or let *Nigella* with old Oyle and Niter mixed together bee drawne up into his nostrils, after the manner and forme before; for that doth purge the head best by the nostrils. Syr. of Quinces, Pomegranates, Roses, *Saccharum Rosaceum*, juyce of Berberies; Gooseberries

Allayers of  
troublesome  
motions.

berries, *Diacydonium*, *sive Speciebus*, waters of Lettuce, Roses, Violets, Plantane, Baulme; make an odour of Camphire, Roses, and Vinegar, Oyle of Roses. An irrigation of his head with Oyle of Roses and Vinegar, after the patient hath fed, let these be given him to that end that vapors bee not carried up to the head.

*Strengtheners.*

Syrup of Apples, *Stachas*, Buglosse, Conserve of Buglosse, Borage, *Saccharum Rosatum*, *Diar rhodon Abbatis*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diatrion Sandalorum*, *Diamuscum Dulce*. A decoction of Betony, Rosemary, Eyebright, Mints, Sage, *Stachas*, Centory the lesse, Galingale, Cinnamon, Annise, and Fennill-seeds, Licorice, an Odour of *Nigella*, Majoram, *Castoreum*, an irrigation of the head with digesting matters. A bath of the same, as also the aforesaid cautery.

*A more particular method for the cure of the*  
GIDDINES:

Rx of the Roots of *Acorus*, of Galingale, *Angelica*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij, of Sage, Origan, Mint, ana M. i.  $\beta$ , of Betony flowers, *Stachas*, the lesse Centory, ana M. i. Annise and Fennill-seed, Carawaies, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, of white and light Agarick  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij, of the seede of bastard Saffron,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Polypody, *Sena Alexandrina*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$ . i  $\beta$ , adde to the straining *Pulveris Diasena*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij, *Hiera Diacolocinth*.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, *Diacatho*.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, hereof make a Clyster.

*A Clyster.*

Rx of Succory cum *Rhabarbaro*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij, syr. of the juyce of Endive  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ , of the waters of Worm-wood, Cychory, Endive ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

*A Potiōn.*

Rx of the Roots of Grasse  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ , Endive and Succory leaves, ana M i  $\beta$ , Fennill aud Anni-seeds, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij, scraped Liquorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Polypodii quercini*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, *Rhabarb. Elect.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii, boyle them in water q. s. to  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i  $\beta$ . adde to the straying

*A Julep.*

ning



ning syr. *Rosarum solutivi*, ℥ iij.

*Pills.*

R *Hiera picra Galeni*, aggregativarum; ana ℥ i β, syr. of mints q. s. make hereof Pills: when vapours arising from the stomach doe trouble the braines Spirits, then shall these be administered.

*Pills.*

R Pills *Arabicarum*, Sp. *Hiera Simp. Gal.* ana ℥ β. *Rhabarb. optimi*, *Agarici Trochiscati*, ana ℥ β, *Diagridii*, gr. iij. syr. of Mint and *Stachas*, q. s. hereof make Pilles. Let him take ℥ β, one houre before Supper once in a weeke.

*A vomit.*

R of Betony-roots, *Asari*, ana ℥ i, of hull'd barley ℥ β. of the seed of Radish, ℥ ij, boyle them in water q. s. to the consumption of the third part, take of the straying hereof ℥ v. unto the which adde *Oxymellis Squillitici*, ℥ ij, take it in the morning, afterward let him take a good quantity of the broth of a Hen, and after that let him prepare to vomit, and then take some more broth.

*A Julep.*

R the syr. of Pomegranates, *Acetosi simp.* ana ℥ i β, of the decoction of Barley, ℥ vi, of Endive, Plantane and Lettuce-water ana ℥ ij β, make hereof a Julep. It doth hinder the vapours rising up, and doth stay the moving of the Spirits.

*A mixture.*

R the pulpe of a Quince ℥ ij, Conserve of Roses, ℥ i, of Rosemary-flowers, ℥ β, *Aromatici, rosati*, *Gabr.* ℥ i β, syrup of Roses, ℥ i β, make a mixture of these, and let the patient take ℥ i, after supper and dinner.

*A Potion.*

R of Sage-leave, M iij, of the seeds of Piony ℥ i, of Anni-seeds, ℥ β, of scraped liquorice ℥ vi. of the Oyle of Beavers (tones) ℥ i, boyle these in a sufficient quantity of Wine, unto ℥ i.

*An electuary.*

R of the Roots of Galingale, *Zedoaria*, ana ℥ iij, of Sage ℥ ij β, of preserved Ginger, ℥ i, Nutmeg, Cinnamon ana ℥ i, Piony-seeds, ℥ i β, of Juniper, ℥ i, of Mint ℥ i β, syr. of Roses q. s. make hereof a soft electuary.

*Lozenges.*

R *Aromatici rosati Diarrhod. abbatis* without Muske ana ℥ i, of the finest Sugar and wormwood-water, q. s. make

make an Electuary in Lozenges.

℞ of the seeds of *Nigella Romana* ʒ ij. Nitri ʒ i. old Oyle q. s. make hereof a head purger.

℞ the juyce of Bete, Majoram, ana, ʒ i β, the juyce of the leaves of Cowcubers, ʒ iiij. *Nigella Romana* ʒ i. Let them be mingled, and some portion thereof bee drawne to the nose.

℞ of Rayfins the stones being taken out, ana ʒ ij. of Hyssop, Origan, ana ʒ i. *Acori conditi*, Mustard-seed, ana ʒ i. β, Pepper, Matlick, ana ʒ i. of Honey q. s. let a masticatory bee made.

℞ of the roots of *Asarum*, ana ʒ β, of Betony, Sage-leaves, ana M i. Pyretbri, Mustardseed, ana ʒ β, boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, to the straining adde *Oxymel squilliticum*, ana ʒ ij. make a Gargarisme.

℞ Oyle of Lillies, ana ʒ i. β, Oyle of Beaver stones, ʒ β, Wine of a good favour, ana ʒ iiij boyle these untill the Wine be consumed, then adde a little Wax and Vineger, and make hereof an oymntment.

℞ of Betony leaves, flowers of Camomile, Roses, ana M i. of the seeds of *Nigella*, ana ʒ β, of prepared Coriander, ana ʒ iiij. being dried, let them be beaten a little, and let them be sowed in a linnen bag in the forme of a cap.

A purge for the head.

A Sternutatory.

A Masticatory.

A Gargarisme.

An Oymntment.

A Bag.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the GIDDINES.

First, we will evacuate with a sharpe Clyster, then will we open a veine, if nothing hinder us; then with a purging medicine, we will more fully empty humors offending, and breeding store of vapours: afterwards by frictions, ventoses, scarifications, Clysters, we will drive back the force of vapors into the opposite parts. Binders and such as do stay the vapors from ascending shall be applied, to wit, Rosewater ʒ ij. of Vineger ʒ iiij. last of all, we will strengthen the stomach



mack and head, & wil disperse the reliques, with masticatories, clenfers of the nose, and such like; all which we will effect with the above named medicines, so that universals bee rightly applyed to particulars. If this disease hath his beginning from the stomack, as commonly it hath, then we will use a vomit: if it be caused by the wombe or other members, let it be cured as in those places is shewed, and then let the braine be strengthened. If it be caused by things swiftly turned about, let him bee conveyed from the sight of them. If it be caused by long fasting, let him take a crust soaked in strong Wine. If it doe arise from the staying of humours that were wont to runne, wee will stirre up their wonted excretion.

*A method serving for the knowledge of INCUBUS or NIGHT-MARE.*

**I**NCUBUS is a passion wherein a man doth thinke himselfe stifled with a great weight lying on him in his sleep; likewise difficulty of speech and breathing doe accompany it, his senses are amazed, not taken away. It doth differ from the falling sicknesse herein, the matter causing the falling sicknesse, is venomous, so is it not in the Hag or Mare, here is no convulsion, as in the falling sicknesse.

*The part affected.*

The part affected is the heart-wals, or part of the midriffe. The man doth imagine himselfe stifled with somewhat that doth lye upon him, and he can scarce draw his breath: the braine also in this disease is annoyed by the content of the lower parts. The sensitive faculty is disturbed by vapours that doe ascend. All the senses are dull, motion is difficult, and the imagination evill.

*Signes.*

The signes are these: he moves with much difficulty, and doth

doth imagine that he is assaulted & oppressed by some thing: for he thinks that somewhat doth sit upon his brest: his sense in his sleep is stupefied, and he supposeth himselfe to be stifled, in so much that he cannot speak a word, although he endeavor to his utmost power; and if he doe utter any voyce, it is uncertaine and not very distinct. Sometime hee groanes, as they doe that weepe, and his fancy is so offended, that he doth think seriously that a Spirit is there; whereupon anguish of minde commeth withall, and hee hath a desire to cry out withall. From hence is caused the heating of his blood, and as it were boyling, and so the spirits being attenuated, and the pores opened, the man suddenly starteth up.

*The Cause.*

It is caused by a grosse and cold Phelgme, as also from grosse and melancholy blood settled about the heart and veines of the brest, from whence grosse vapours are belched out, wherewith, as often as raw vapours caused by gluttony are mingled, then in the aforesaid places the parts of the midriffe are oppressed, as also the lungs, whereby difficulty of breathing is caused, and the imagination stifled; and when it commeth from hence into the throate, the voyce seemeth to be stopt. If it bee conveyed to the braine, it doth molest the mind and sense with ugly sights. If the moneths or hemeroids be stayd in any, they doe send out such vapors. It is not, as some suppose, caused by an old Hag riding us.

*Prognostiques.*

He that useth a slender diet, is seldome troubled with the Mare, but it doth frequent such as have many crudities. It doth seldome seaze on them that lye on their sides. If this affect chance to bee of long continuance, it doth threaten an apoplexy or falling sicknesse, as also madnesse, very often the hypocondriall melancholy, giddines, Palsey, convulsion, a stretching of sinnewe, or sodaine death: for it is not unusuall with many to have died sodainely in their



beds in the depth of night; children, fat men, and such whose digestion is stopped, are very much troubled with this disease. If after the patient awake, panting of the heart and cold sweat do happen, it is an ill signe.

*A method serving for the cure of the NIGHT-MARE.*

Preparers.

**L**et the ayre be temperately hot, and bright, cold, winds and sun-shine must be avoided. His meat must be such that may be easily digested, and of good juyce, not windy; let him eate sparingly, especially at supper. He may drinke white wine mingled with water; sleeping in the day time, specially presently after meate, is unwholesome; the excrements must be avoyded by art or nature, at last the quietnesse of mind must be procured: to prepare the body, use syr. of *Strachus*, Mints, Wormwood, *Oxymel Simplex*, *Meliceratum*, Wormwood water, Majoram, Buglosse, Betony, Fumitory, a decoction of Fennell-roots, and Parsely, of Rosemary, Hyssop, Endive, Borage, Buglosse, Fumitory, with wine. *Ceterach*, Succory, of the heads of hops, Maden haire, Violet flowers, the barke of the Rootes of Capers, Liquorice, Rayfins, Honey, and Sugar added. syr. of Fumitory, Hops, Apples. When there is great store of phlegme, wee may use the former; if abundance of melancholy, we may use the latter: let the same be observed in Purgers.

Emptiers.

A veine shall be opened, if the body be full, or if moneths, or hemroids be stopped against custome, first the *Saphena*, next day the shoulder veine may be opened, and the grosser the blood is, the more must be drawne out: at the length, if the disease be not driven away by using the remedies prescribed, let a veine in the forehead be opened, or else that under the tongue, *Pillule Cochiae*, de *Agarico*, *Mastichine*, *Stomatica*, *Hiera picra Galeni*, *Hiera Diacalychnidos*, *Logodii*, *Russi*, *Cassia Fistula*, *Pill. de Lapide lazuli*, *Diacatholicon*, *Diaphanicum*, *Diasena*, *Sena*.

Averters.

By such medicines as draw, and convey it to another part

part of the body, this disease is to be cured. Such Clysters as are not very gentle, Cupping-glasses, fastned to the calves of the legs, frictions of the head, especially the hinder part, frequent combings of the head, light errhines, gargarismes, such as provoke sneezing, light apophlegmatismes. The disease is likewise helped by such as stop the vapors from ascending to the head: As *Diarrhodon Abbutis*, *Caro Cydoniorum sine Speciebus*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Saccharum Rosarum*, *Carrali*.

Strengtheners.

Triacle, *Diambra*, *Dianauscum dulce*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Dianthos*, Conserve of Rosemary-flowers, of Buglosse, *Acorus*, the black seed and roots of Piony, Nutmeg. Anointing of the head, and brest, and belly with the Oyle of Camomill, the Oyntment of Anniseeds, hot wine: A fomentation of the head with the Oyle of Anniseeds, being somewhat hot; a *Dropax* must be applied to the head and sides: unto five portions of Pitch, but one of the Oyle of Spike must be added, or if that be wanting, as much of Mastick; It must be reasonably heated when it is laid to the head, it must likewise be wrapped in a Linen cloth, lest it should stick too close unto the skinne. A bag, with the flowers of Roses, Buglosse, Violets, leaves of Baulme, which have been moistned in white Wine, and baulme-water, apply it unto the heart somewhat hot. A Cucusa must be made of Betony, sweet Majoram, Rosemary-flowers, *Stechas*, red Roses, Orange pills, Cloves, Nutmeg, the Root of wild Galingale, Coriander, Oyle of Anniseeds.

More particular medicines for the cure of the

NIGHT-MARE.

Rx of the decoction mentioned hereafter lb. i. therein dissolve *Sp. Hiera Legodali* 3 i. β, *Pulvern Sancti*, 3 ij β, Oyle of Camomill, Anniseeds, Rue, ana 3 i. of Malmsey 3 ij.

Rx of the Roots of *Acorus* 3 β, Angelica, 3 vj. of the leaves of Betony, Perwinckle, Violets, M. i. of red Roser, Camomill, Mellilote, ana M β. boyle them in flesh-

H 3

broth,

A Clyster.

A Clyster.



broth, q. s. unto ℥ i. β, adde to the strayingn *Pulveris Diasene* ʒ ij. *Hiere logodali*, ʒ i, *Discatho*. ʒ β, oyle of Rew, of Camomile, ana ʒ i, of Salt, ʒ i.

*A Julep.*

Rx of the syr. of *Stachas*, Worm-wood, ana ʒ i. β, *Oxymellis simplicis*, syr. of Mints, ana ʒ β, the water of Worm-wood, of Buglosse, Hops, ana ʒ iiij. Let the patient take hereof ʒ iiij.

*A Potion.*

Rx *Diasene* ʒ i. β, *Diaturbith cum rhubarb*, ʒ vi. *Oxymellis simplicis*, ʒ i. water of Hops, of Fumitory, ana ʒ i. β.

*Pills.*

Rx *Pillul. de agarico cochiarum*, ana ʒ i. β, *Pulveris hierelogodali* ʒ β, syr. of *Stachas*, q. s. of this make eight pills, let it be taken after mid-night.

*Bolus.*

Rx of the Triacle of Andromachus, ʒ i. of Mithridate, Angelica-roote, ana ʒ i. water of Angelica, of *Cardus Benedictus*, ana ʒ i. β, make a bolus hereof, which must be given the next morning.

*A vomit*

Rx *Oxymellis squillitici*, ʒ ii. of the decoction of Radish, ʒ vi. of sweet Oyle ʒ i β, of this make a vomiting medicine, wherewith you shall expell the crudities of the stomach caused by surfer.

*A Potion.*

Rx of the Roots of *Acorns*, Angelica, by Piony, ana ʒ β, of Fennill, grasse, ana ʒ i. of Fumitory, Betony, Dodder, hearts-tongue, of chaffe, ana M i. of Hyssop, Horehound, Endive, Borage, ana M β. of Cummin, and Anniseeds, ana ʒ β, of Rayfins, ʒ i. eight Damaske prunes of the flower of Woodrowell M β, *Senae Alexandrina*, *Polypodii quercini*, ana, ʒ i, of white and light Agarick, of Ginger, ana ʒ i β, of Nutmeg, ʒ ii. boyle these in water q. s. unto ℥ i. β, adde to the straining of clarified Hony, of the finest Sugar, ana ʒ i, hereof make a potion, which may be used when you have observed by the urine that the humors are perfectly concocted: for the space of 4 or 5 dayes the patient must take hereof ʒ iiij.

*An eleſtuary.*

Rx of the Conſerves of *Acorns*, ʒ iii, let the patient after every purging medicine take hereof ʒ i.

Rx *Aromatici Rosari Gabrielis* ʒ iii of old Triacle, ʒ i. β

ʒ i. β. *Pleresarcotici*, ʒ iij, *Diamusci dulcis*, ʒ ij β, Con-  
serve of Rosemary, of Rosemary-flowers, of *Acorn*, ana  
ʒ iij, Piony seeds ʒ iij, of Coriander ʒ ij, *Syr. Stachados*  
q. s. hereof make an electuary, and after meate let him take  
ʒ i.

R *Diacimini*, ʒ ij, of Anniseeds, the roots of Elicampany,  
of Angelica ana ʒ i β, *Aromatici rosati Gab.* ʒ ij β, of Nut-  
meg, Cinnamon, ana ʒ i, of Orange-pills preserved ʒ i β.  
*ʒ i. de Epithymo*, q. s. make hereof an electuary in the forme  
of an opiate.

R of the Oyle of *Aneibus*, of sweet Almonds, ana ʒ i, of  
Camomile, ʒ β, of Piony-seeds, ʒ β, a little strong Wine  
and Waxe, q. s. make hereof an unguent for the brest and  
stomack.

R of dried Betony ʒ i, the flowers of *Stachn*, red Roses,  
of Rosemary-flowers, ana ʒ β, Nutmeg, Cloves, ana ʒ ii, of  
the Roote of wilde Galingale, of the rindes of Lemmons,  
ʒ iij, hereof make a Cucusa.

R Orange-pilles dried, ʒ β, of wilde Galingale, of  
Cloves, ana ʒ ii. *Coci insectarii* ana ʒ iij. of Coriander, ana  
ʒ ij. β, of dried sweet Majoram, dried Betony, ana ʒ β,  
*Stachados Arab.* of red Roses, ana ʒ ij, make hereof a  
powder grossely beaten, put it into a bag and lay it to  
the head, it doth very much comfort and refresh the  
braine.

R of the seeds and pills of Oranges, the roots of Galin-  
gale, ana ʒ iij, of Baulme-leaves, M i. Buglosse, Borage, *Sta-*  
*chas*, and Rosemary-flowers, ana M i. *Electuarii de gemmis*,  
ʒ i, β, make a little bag and put these therein, and apply it  
to the heart; sometime you may sprinkle some Malsmeley  
thereon.

Another.

An unguent.

A Cucusa.

A Powder.

An



*An Appendix, serving for the cure of the  
MARE or HAG.*

**F**irst, let the common matter bee extracted by a gentle Clyster, then cause a veine to be opened, if blood doe abound; then let the humours which doe molest the body, be made subject to nature, afterwards expell them forth the body with fitting medicines; the braine likewise shall be empried by a Gargarisme, or Apophlegmatisme, or with a sneezing powder, or by some other means before mentioned. Afterward such things may bee prescribed, which may hinder the ascen ing of vapours to the braine, and at the length the parts that were affected, shall be corroborated with strengthners, and the reliques shalbe consumed: and all this may bee effected with most happy successe by these and the former medicines, if that universals be well sorted with particulars.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the  
FALLING-SICKNES.*

**T**He Falling-sicknesse is a convulsion of all the parts of the body, not continuall, but that which commeth by distances of time, the minde and senses being thereby hurt. It doth take its name from the great affect which doth oppresse the patient. There bee three differences of Falling-sicknes. For it doth either happen, when the braine hath the cause of the disease in it selfe, which is usuall, when the disease hath its beginning from thence. Sometime it is caused by the evill affect of the mouth of the stomack, or some other part underneath, from whence venomous infection creepeth into the braine through secret passages. For some say that they shall bee sick before the fit doth come upon them, because they feele the cause of the disease, like a vapour of cold winde, to bee carried to the  
braine

braine by the continuity of the other parts, from that part of the body wherein the disease is chiefly seated : and the cause of this mischief is for the most part a venomous vapour, carried up from some lower part of the body into the braine, and then the patient doth suddenly fall with a Convulsion. When the braine is first affected, the eyes are darkened, the head doth ache, and withall is heavy ; their mind and senses are dull, their dreames are troublesome, and their fit sudden. If the mischiefs cause taketh its beginning from the mouth of the stomach, the patients, for the most part, are worse ; a sharpe assault of the fit will sooner come upon the patient, if hee be falling ; and before this fit commeth, they feele a queysinesse, gnawing, and disturbance of the stomach, as also a panting of the heart, and a floating of ill humors about the stomach ; at the length they fall into a swoond, and then they doe vomit phlegme or choler when the fit is at an end. It doth differ from all sorts of convulsions, because herein the convulsion is not perpetuall. In conclusion the sensitive and principall operations are hurt in the falling sicknesse : in convulsions, the principall functions are not hurt at all. There is likewise a gentler kinde of falling sicknesse, which doth not much differ from Giddinesse.

*The part affected.*

The part affected is the braine, which doth appeare by those functions which are hurt ; for all the faculties suffer alike, and are alike hurt. The braine is affected either by it selfe, or by consent of the stomach or some other parts : the signes of the affected part appeare by that which was said before. When the fit commeth suddenly, the braine as an instrumentall part, even as the ventricle, but chiefly the middle ventricle is affected. For it is not affected as a similar part, because that cannot bee without distemper : but the Falling sicknesse is a disease which hinders the action of the animall faculties : for sense, motion, and all



the principall faculties are as yet after a different manner, the motive facultie is depraved, and they are deprived of the other faculties.

*The Signes.*

The fit oftentimes comes suddenly with much some, and some is a peculiar and especiall note of this disease, which, because it is slimy, may be drawne out at length, yet in a gentler falling sicknesse this doth not appeare; and then, when hee is deprived of senses, hee falls to the ground with a violent shaking of his body, his face is wrested, his eyes turned upwards, his chinne is sometime driven to his shoulders, and oftentimes he voydeth feed, ordure, urine against his will, his muskles are loosned: all these are signes of a strong fit. Moreover, they doe often snort, and cry out in their sleepe, and their voyces are faint, like unto the voyces of such as are almost strangled. They oftentimes thrust out their tongues, and it is to be feared, that sometime they bite them with their teeth. Sometime their teeth are so fast closed together, that they are in danger of stifling; this fit in some lasteth not long, and then they come to themselves againe, and rise of their owne accord. Very often, before the comming of this fit, they breathe with difficulty: some feele a cold vapour ascend from the nape of the neck, unto the crowne of the head; in some, windinesse doth trouble the belly and heart, Palenesse of the face, inordinate motion of the tongue, paine and heavinesse of the head, forgetfulnesse, sadnesse, sicknesse of mind, troublesome dreames are ushers to this disease, then are they taken with a giddinesse: sometime darknesse, and divers dimme glitterings appeare before their eyes.

*The Cause.*

It is most commonly caused by the abundance of a melancholy and a phlegmatick humor, from whence corrupt, venomous, and stinking vapors break out, whereby obstructions are caused in the passage of the brain, and the passages of the spirits are hereby hindered; by this meanes the brain,  
and

and the roots of the sinewes shrinke, and as it were tremble in the expelling of that which is obnoxious, whether it be vapour or humour.

*Prognostiques.*

This disease for the most part doth frequent children, because they are of a moyster brain then young men; next unto these, men of full growth, and old men least of all. This disease is more incident to men than women, and usually it doth stick close to the patient, unlesse it be taken away by medicines in its minority, or at the least ripening age, or the first comming downe of monethly termes. For seeing there is an alteration in childrens bodies, when the haire begin to grow; if it be not then cured, it will not on a sudden depart from the patient. An old Falling-sicknesse is incurable, even as that which wee bring into the world with us. And even as in the spring time it commonly doth frequent the patient, so is it at that time most dangerous. Again when the whole body is affected, and it doth so suddenly creepe upon the patient, that he doth not perceive any sense of it in some part of the body separated from the head, this is likewise incurable: if this disease bee vehement, and the fits come often upon the patient, and the symptomes bee dangerous, hee will in short time be freed of the disease by death: but if a quartaine ague, or any other longer feaver surprize him, it portends health.

*A method serving for the cure of the FAL-  
LING-SICKNES.*

**L**et his ayre be hot & dry, and his meat birds of Mountains, Hens, Fish, Pulse, Swines flesh, Garlick, Mustard, Onyons, Carots, Nuts, and Dates must bee avoyded; but Capers are very good. Let his meat bee mixed with such things as doe dissolve and extenuate the humors. Of this



fort are wild-Betony, Hyssop, Pennyroyall. His drinke mu<sup>t</sup> be small waterish wine, not old. *Mulsa*. Exercise of the body and friction of the head are prevalent; and even as the moderate use of Venery is helpfull, so on the contrary, the immoderate use thereof is hurtfull: sleepe in the day time must bee avoyded, and sleepe in the night reason be moderately taken. Let the excrements be voyded in due time, and if nature is deficient herein, Art must bee used: cares, feares, and perturbations of the mind must bee avoyded.

*Preparers.*

*Oxymel Squillit. simplex*, syr. of Hyssop, *Stachas*, Wormwood, and Apples, syr. *Acetosus*, *Simplex & compositus*. A decoction of Betony, Hyssop, *Stachas*, Roots, and seeds of Piony, Majoram, Rosemary, Wormwood, Fennell and the seeds of Annise, Cinnamon, Licorice, and a little of *Oxymel simp.*

*Emptiers.*

Let a veine in the ancle be opened; then the *Cephalica*, at the entrance of the spring: if the disease be growne old, and if the cause proceed from the other parts, *Diaphenicum*, *Electuarium*, *Indum*. Agarick made into trochisks in this disease is very medicinable. *Hiera Gal. Simplex*, *Logod. Hiere* *Diacolocynib*, are very good. *Pillula aurea*, *Alephangina*, *Assiaret*, of Hermodactyls, *Pillula Cochiae Fetida*, *Masticbinæ de Euphorbio*, Bears-foot. A decoction of the Roots of Piony, Sage-leaves, Hyssop, Betony, Primrose, Baulme, *Stachas*, Buglosse, Annise, and Piony-seeds, Licorice, Cinnamon, Nutmeg: whereunto adde *Electuarium Indum*, Agarick made into Trochiskes.

*Averters.*

*Mercury,*  
*the berbe.*

Clysters of the decoction of *Aristolochia*, Mercury, Camomill, Piony roots, Betony, Tyme, Pennyroyall, Centory the lesse, Agarick, Calamint; whereunto adde *Hiera picra*, *Mel rosatum*, *Hiera Diacolocynib*. Oyle of Rew, Suppositors, Apophlegmatismes, of the seeds of Piony, Bastard-Pellitory, Mastick, Masticatories, of Hyssop, Nutmeg, Beavers-stones, Roots of Piony, Bastard Pellitory, Ginger, Mastick, Staves-acre, Rayfins.

Nafals

Nasals of the juyce of the Roots of Piony, Rew, Mummy, and Hony. Gargarismes, of Wine and Vinegar, wherein boile the flowers of *Stachas*, the leaves of Origan, H. flöp. Betony, Majoram, Calamint, Mustard-seed, Baltard-Pellitory, *Nigella Romana*: to this add *Oxymell squill*. A sneezing of Pepper, Hellebore, Beavers stone, the root, of Piony, Nutmeg. Cupping glasses with Scarification, must bee applyed to the sides, and shoulder blade bone, as also to the hammes and ancles, if the cause doe proceed from the other parts: And then againe unto the hinder parts of the head. But especially they shall bee layd to the extreme parts: if the part cannot be bound, emplaysters must be applyed, which are made of Mithridate, or Triacle, with rubifiers. Such extreme parts as are capable of ligatures, shall be bound, that the vapors may bee hindred in their progresse. Frictions shall bee used from the upper parts unto the neithermost. *Hemroides* shall bee opened with Horse-leeches; which must bee applied to the head, or some other convenient part of the head. But Cauteries must be made in the hinder part of the head, if the braine be of it selfe ill affected, but by no meanes must a Cautery be used, when as the venemous vapors shall be communicated to the head by some other part, unlesse by long continuance of this communication the braines essence should be corrupted. Rubifying medicines shall in like sort bee applied to the neck, and to that part from which the venemous vapour is sent, which may be made of mustard-seed *Euphorbium*, Pepper, Cantharides, strong Vinegar, and leaven.

Triacle and Mithridate must be very much used. The conserve of our description, and they are all of wonderfull effect. *Plirisarcoticum*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diacorum*, *Diamuscum*, sweet and bitter. Conserve of Rosemary. *Stachas*, Galingale, Sage, Orange-rinds preserved, and preserved Pellitory. The water of the flowers of the tree *Tilia*, the scrapings of Ivory, Mistleto, Harts-horne, the hooves of an asse,

*Strengtheners.*



mans-bones burnt. *Assa Fetida*, Bastard Pellitory, Hyssop, Cow-slips, Elicampany, the roots and seeds of Piony, Rew, the Emerauld-stone, the seed of *Palma Christi*, Agarick, the skull of a man, (if it be to be used about women, and a womens skull, if for a man) burnt untill it be white. By daily use of this, some have bin recovered of the disease; ʒ i. at one time hereof is sufficient. The bladder of a Bore taken very hot out with the stale must be put into a hot oven, and dried untill it may be beaten to powder, is very good. A medicine of *Squilla*, a decoction of the wood *Guaiacum*, *sarsaparil*, *cynae*, oyle of Philosophers; an oyntment of the oyle of Rew, *Euphorbii*, tiles of bricks, Foxes. A cataplasme of tosted bread, and wheat, with Mithridate, Piony-roots, wild-Betony, Honyed-water. A bath, a cautery must be made in the hinder part of the head, or in the fleshy part of the arme, if no good can be done with the former medicines; or else in the seame of the forepart of the head.

The cure of the FALLING-SIGNES  
more particularly.

*A Clyster.*

Rx of the roots of Piony, ʒ i. of *Acorus*, *Aristolochia*, ana ʒ ʒ, of Rew, Centory the lesse, Wormewood, Sage, Hyssop, Betony, ana M ʒ, of Anni-seeds, ʒ i. *Pulpa colocynth*. ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. ʒ, adde to the straying *Sphiera legnd*. ʒ i. oyle of Camomile ʒ iij. *Diacatholic*. ʒ i. ʒ, of Hony, ʒ ij. of Salt, ʒ i. Give this before dinner as well in the fit, if it doe last long, as also when the fit hath left him.

*A Julep.*

Rx of the syr. of *Stachas*, Hyssop, *Oxymel. Squillit*. ana ʒ i. ʒ, of the decoction of *Stachas*, Hyssop, Calaminth, Sage, Betony, Rosemary, ʒ x. for the space of foure or five dayes the patient may take ʒ iij.

*Pills.*

Rx *Oxymellis squillit*. ʒ ʒ, give to the patient ʒ i. ʒ, hereof, with the decoction of Sage, Piony, Hyssop.

*Pills.*

Rx the pills of *Fetida Eliphangina*, *Cochia*, ana ʒ i. of black

black Hellebore, gr. vi. syr. of *Stachas*, q. s. give these about the middle of the night.

Rx of the Roots of *Acorus*, Angelica  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij, the rinds of the Roots of the Elder-tree  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . seeds of *Rex*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . Piony Roots,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . leaves of Betony, Rosemary, two Majoram, Hyssop, Worm-wood, Tyme, Sage, Pariety, M. i. *Stachados Arab. ana*, M  $\beta$ . flowers of Buglosse, Borage, ana M i.  $\beta$ . the seeds of Annise and Fennill  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij, of Licorice scraped  $\mathfrak{z}$  v, of Raylins, the stones being taken out,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of white and light Agarick  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. seeds of Bastard Saffron, bruied  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . *Polipodii quercini*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ . *Visci quercini*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. *Sena Alexand.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. of black Hellebore  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Ginger,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q. s. to lb i.  $\beta$ . add to the straining, of Nutmeg, Cinnamon  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ . the syr. of Hyssop, *Oxymellis simplicis* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ .

A potion.

Rx *Hiera Diacolocynth*, of the Pills of *Fetida*, Agarick made into a trochiske, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, of Beaver-stone gr. vi. syr. of *Stachas*. q. s.

Pills.

Rx of Agarick made into a trochiske,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of black Hellebore, Nutmeg, Petter, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . of Beaver-stone. gr. viij. of *Stachas*. q. s.

Pills.

Rx of Mithridate  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, of Triacle  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . of Beaver-stone, gr. iij. give this to the patient, in the day of his fit, with the decoction of Hyssop, as before.

Rx of the Roots of Betony, Radish, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the seeds of Cresses, Radish, Orache, ana,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed. Give to the patient  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. add to the straying Oyle of Spikenard,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

A vomit.

Rx of Nutmeg, Roots of Piony, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of blacke Hellebore  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Bastard Pellitory, white Petter, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. mixe these together.

A powder to provoke sneezing.

Rx of Nutmeg, Roots of *Acorus*, Piony, preserved Ginger, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij Mustard-seed, Bastard Pellitory, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ . of Raylins, Matlick, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

A Nasficatory.

Rx of the rinds of Elder-roots  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. bastard Pellitory, Galingale, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . the leaves of Betony, Orange, Baulme, ana

A Gargarisme.

Mi. of



M<sup>i</sup> of scraped Licorice ʒ iij. of Anni-seed, ʒ iij. of Cubebs, ʒ i. ʒ. of Raylins, the stones being taken out, M<sup>i</sup>. boyle these in water q. l. unto ʒ i. ʒ. adde to the strayingning *Oxymel. squil.* ʒ iij.

*A mixture.*

R<sup>x</sup> the conserve of Rosemary, Buglosse, ana ʒ i. *Diamusci dulcis*, ʒ ij. of Triacle, Mithridate, ana ʒ i. ʒ. seeds and roots of Piony, ʒ ij. of the hearbe *Paralysis*, *rhabarb*, ana ʒ i. of bastard Pellitory, the seed of *Sanctonicus*, ana ʒ ij. ʒ. of Sage, ʒ ij. *Visci quercini*, ʒ i. of man or womans skull, ʒ ij. preserved Orange rinds, ʒ ij ʒ. syr. of Hyssop, q. l. After the patient is purged, foure houres before dinner give the patient ʒ i. and after this, drinke a little of the decoction of Hyssop.

*Lozenges.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Sp. Diamusci dulcis* ʒ ʒ. of Nutmeg, Myrrh, ana, ʒ ʒ. of the graines of Piony, ʒ ij. the powder of mans skull burnt, scraped Ivory, Harts horne, any ʒ i. of the finest Sugar dissolved in Rosemary water, ana, Hyssop water q. l.

*An electuary.*

R<sup>x</sup> of the powder of mans-skull burnt, of the powder of the seeds and roots of Piony, ana ʒ i. ʒ. of Beaver stone, *opopanacs*, of the best Mithridate, ana ʒ ij. make an Electuary of the syr. made with the decoction of Sage, Piony, Rosemary, Betony. Squinant.

*Pills.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Assa Fetida*, of Beaver stone, ana ʒ ij. of the roots and seeds of Piony, ana ʒ i. of Nutmeg, ʒ ij. *Diagalanga*, ʒ ij. with the aforesaid syr. make pills hereof, and give them at night ʒ ʒ.

*Cucufa.*

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Flower-de-luce, Piony, *Cyperus*, ana ʒ ʒ. seeds of Piony, the skull of a man, ʒ ij. of Mace, Nutmeg, ana ʒ i. of the flowers of Camomile M ʒ.

*Pills.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Visci quercini* seeds and roots of Piony, ana ʒ i. ʒ. Nutmeg, ʒ i. ʒ. of Anni-seeds, ʒ i. ʒ. *Sacchari buglossati* ʒ vij. in every pill, ʒ i.

An Appendix, serving for the cure of the  
FALLING-SICKNES.

**T**He patient must forbear taking such things as may breed vapors, and those things which doe stirre up this disease by secret property, namely Parsely, Goates-flesh, Lettuce, Purslane, and all Coolers : when the fit hath lost him, if hee be stricken in yeers, it will be good to use a Clyster, to draw downe the matter offending ; and then if the body be full, a veine shall bee cut. Offending humors must be expelled once every weeke. Afterwards the humors that fly up to the head, must bee driven backe by frictions, and stronger Clysters than the former : the passages likewise of the venomous vapours shall bee hindered by ligatures, if they may be perceived to hasten to the braine, from some other remote part. The ligatures shall be somewhat above that place, from whence the vapors arise, and then such things must be prescribed, that nourish and strengthen the head and body : all which may bee effected by the grace of God, if universals be in due sort applyed to particulars : if the other above mentioned doe no whit prevaile, an actuall cautery must bee used, or in stead of that, a deepe potentiall, of *Cantharides*, Leaven, and Vineger, in the coronall seame, if these venomous humors are in the braine. But in youths a cautery shall be made in the hinder part, which may runne for the space of 60. daies. Likewise the skull may bee opened with a trepan, that blacke vapours may have time to avoid, and the matter whereby they are caused, by such meanes may bee consumed. These cauteries shall in like manner bee made in the lower parts, from whence these vapors at the first did come in the time of his fit : if it doth last long, that it may the sooner bee ended, hee may bee called on with a loud voyce, his nose pinched, his fingers nipped, sneezings provoked, painefull frictions and ligatures, his



teeth must bee parted with a staffe put beewene them, his tongue and chops rubd, and a rag must be put to the tip of his tongue, the rag being first dipt in Rew, where in Triacle hath beene dissolved. Rub the tongue likewise over with Rew, Beaver stone, also mix the seeds of Piony with them, and put them into the nostrils, for this must needs shorten the fit: if these vapors doe arise from the stomach, a vomit is good; and then he may be purged with *Hiera*; then oyntments, emplasters, and other medicines which may comfort the stomach, must be prescribed.

*A method serving for the knowledge of* SPASMUS *or* CONVULSION.

**S**pasmus is a Convulsion, or a shrinking of the sinews, and is an affect which doth force the sinews, & muskles unwillingly, to that same disposition of body, which they did enjoy by the benefit of the animall faculty, when they were in perfect health: this I say is an involuntary motion in the part which usually did move of its owne accord. Sometime the whole body is taken with a convulsion, which sometime doth happen to such as have the Falling sicknesse; in which accident, the Roots of the sinews are hurt, and the brain being shrunk together, doth joine all its force together, for the expelling of that which is hurtfull. The mind is vitiated as well as the senses, because the braine is diseased. This disease doth trouble the patient by fits, not afflicting them continually, as it doth happen in other diseases of like kind. Sometimes all parts of the body except the head, are shrunk together; but for the most part, this affect doth happen unto some one part of the body, as the eye, the Root of the tongue, the skin of the forehead, the Shoulders, Armes, Legs. But this depraved motion, which doth chance to molest the convulsed part, doth in this sort differ from the natural motion of the same part. The muskles and sinewes are drawne toward the Roots from whence they come, as in a naturall motion

motion, onely this is done not without much. reluctance and paine; for naturall motion is voluntary, not compelled, and hath its seate by the Roote of the sinewes in the braine, from whence the beginning of motion is bestowed on the chiefe sinewes, and by their meanes on the muskles, and so are the muskles both stretched, and drawne backe to their owne Roote, drawing likewise that part of the body with them, wherein they are planted. There is a kind of convulsion much slighter then the former, which is caused by grosse winds, winding themselves into the substance of the sinewes; and these cause a strong paine, but somewhat shorter, which of its owne accord departs; howsoever by much frication the patient is freed of it. This kind of convulsion seldome lasteth longer then the space of an houre, and wee may perceive this kind of crampe in our Legs, Fingers-ends, and Toes, and in some the Legs, Armes, and hands are so shrunk together, that maugre the strength of many men, they cannot be stretched out, untill the fit be ended.

*The part affected.*

Sometime the braine is here affected first, and chiefly, and then the face with the whole body is shrunkie up together, no change of the body happening before. But for the most part, a convulsion doth light upon the muskles, in determinate parts, whereby the part affected plainly sheweth that the muskles are grieved. For the affection must ever bee referred to that muscle or sinew, which doth move those parts that are hurt. For the muscle is the proper instrument of motion, which if it bee forcibly drawne up to its Roote, may very well be said to be hurt; even as in a convulsion of the eye, which is called squinting, the muskles which move the eye, are plucked together; and in like manner is it with the other parts; for in all such diseases always one muscle, sometimes more are drawn backward, and they draw the part with them wherein they are set, and deprives them of motion, insomuch that either they



seeme crooked, or wrested. If the lips be drawne together, the broad muscle, from whence the muscles of the lips doe spring, are first affected: the same may bee said of the other parts of the body.

*The signes.*

With all stretchings of the sinews, a vehement paine for the most part is joyned, which if it remaine very long with the patient, doth exceedingly waste the strength. The part affected is so drawne toward its Root, by meanes of sinews and muscles (and that against their will) that it cannot be reduced to its former habit, and while all parts under the head are convulsed, the body can either by no meanes be bowed, or else it is so bowed forward, that the chinne is fastned unto the brest, or else the head is so wrested backward, that the head is, as it were fastned to the shoulder-blades. The face is overspread with rednes, and is troubled with paine. Teares gush out of their eyes, which are also wrested. The mouth can hardly be opened: the Back, Jaws, Hands, Armes, and Legs are stiffe. And when the disease is encreased, the patient is afflicted with such extremity of paine, that he starteth out of his bed, and clasping his thumbe in his fist, cries out aloud, and like unto a mad man talketh idly, and sometime casteth out drinke at his nostrils.

*The Causes.*

The efficient cause is eyther fulnesse, or emptinesse: fulnesse is eyther caused by blood, and then a convulsion happeneth suddenly, even unto such as are sound; idle life, gluttony, and drunkenness did goe before; it is in like manner caused by a phlegmy humour, which doth wind it self even as the blood doth, into the sinews and muscles: for sometime they so swell in breadth and thicknesse, and necessarily shrinke in length, and hereby cause a convulsion; but while the phlegmy matter so pierceth the solid substance, that the limbs swell not, but are rather loosned by moisture, then as we sayd before, a palsy is caused.

A phlegmy matter doth cause a palsie and convulsion after a different manner. A convulsion is likewise caused by an impostume, and the detaining of some accustomed vacuation. It is sometime caused by grosse humors, and then as it doth come suddenly, so it is as soone gone. Emptinesse or drynesse of a sinew, is oft the cause of a Convulsion, and then it doth take more deliberation in growing upon the patient. There went before it immoderate labour & watchings, a burning Ague, hunger, solitarinesse, violent sweatings, vomit and a loosenesse of the belly; as also too much bleeding, excessive Venery, inflammations and great burnings, heate of sinewy parts: for by these causes the body and sinews are much dried, the radicall moysture of the sinewes is quite wasted, and they dry and shrinke like unto skins neere the fire.

*Prognostiques.*

A convulsion which is caused by a wound, and of *Hel-leborus* is mortall; the disease is also incurable, if it be caused by emptinesse: this convulsion of all other kinds is the worst; and wee will endeavour to prevent it by taking away the cause. If it bee occasioned by a burning Feaver, it will likewise hardly be cured; and it is better for an Ague to come upon a convulsion, then a convulsion to come upon a Feaver. For hee that is taken with a convulsion or stretching of sinews, is thereof freed by an Ague. Whosoever is taken with such a convulsion, that he cannot stirre any way, within foure dayes there is danger of death, yet if he doe outlive them, he will recover. Oftentimes the patient is above measure tormented with paine, and is franticke like unto a mad man; and if then hee lose the use of his voyce, and his strength faile, or sweate very much, and doth cast beere out of his nostrils, these are all mortall.



A method serving for the cure of the CON-  
VULSION.

**L**Et his ayre be hot and dry, Farmety, reare Eggs, flesh of Hens, Capons, and Chickens are good, but they should rather be rost then sod. Among pot-herbs, Majoram, Sage, wild-Betony, Hyssop: among fruits, Rayfins and Almonds are good. When the disease doth first enter upon the patient, hee must abstaine from wine; in stead whereof, hee may be permitted to drinke honyed water, wherein Sage and Cinamon were boyled; motion must be avoyded; let the neck and back bones of the patient be rubbed, his sleepe must bee moderate; and his excrements answerable to his belly; perturbations of the minde must be shunned.

*Emptiers.*

*Diatribiticum rhabarb, Hiera logodii, Diaphenicum.* Agarick made into a Trochisk. The infusion of Agarick. *Pil. coctie, fetida, de Sagapeno, de opopanax,* whereunto wee will adde some Beaver stone. The median veine shall bee opened, if the Convulsion be caused by blood, whereof he may spare a sufficient quantity; but it must be done at sundry times, because the strength is very much weakened by this disease. But first of all, the belly must bee brought downe by a mild Clyster: we can scarce use preparing medicines, because the disease is very sharpe, yeelding no truce, and the strength in a short time is overthrowne; wherefore at the first we will use gentle purging medicines, though the matter be not concocted; but if the disease threaten no danger, then we may use the preparing medicines recited before in the Tractate of the palsey.

*Averters.*

Clysters of the decoction of Annise, and Fennell-seeds, Piony roots, Sage, Betony, Majoram, Hyssop, Pennyroyall, Cammonile, Rosemary, whereunto adde some common Oyle. Sneezings, Errhines, Masticatories, Gargarismes, Frictions with warme cloathes are good; but chiefly if the disease

ease

case be caused by windinesse. Cupping glasses with scarifications must be applyed to the beginnings, or middle, not unto the end of the sinews. The body being purged, and the disease continuing its course, at the length there is hope that it will bee vanquishd with the corrupt matter. The whole body must be well-purged, before we intend to make use of these present medicines.

A bath of the decoction of the seeds of *Linus*, Fengreek, Mallows, Holi hockes, Cammomile, Sage, Betony, *Stechus*, the head of a Foxe, or Weather, whereunto adde a good quantity of the oyle of a Foxe; the patient must not stay long in the bath, because it doth resolve the strength too much; and because at the returning of the fit, hee must enter into the bath againe. Or if through weakenesse hee cannot indure a bath; irrigations of the affected part must be made with this decoction. A bag stuffed with fried Salt, and laid to the affected sinew, will asswage the paine. Make a Fomentation for the neck & neighbouring parts, with wooll dipped in warme softning oyle, or oyle of Cammomile, that the naturall heat may be kept in those parts. A bladder halfe full of warme oyle shall be layd upon the part, for it nourisheth naturall heat: and our native heat is glad of that heat that comes most neere unto it in likeness. Oyle of Lillies, Foxes, *Cyprinum*. An Oyntment of the oyle of Wormes, of the wood *Guaicum*, Turpentine, Lillies, Cammomile, the marrow of a Cowes leg, mans greafe, with this the neck, and back bone of the patient shall be anointed after he is come out of the bath: but if this disease bee caused by emptinesse, as soone as he shall come forth of the sweet, and warme bath, the aforesaid parts shall be anoynted with the oyle of Roses, and Violets, that the moisture of the bath might not suddenly be dried up. Make also a Cataplasme of Wormes, and Oyle of Foxes; and because excessive paine is common to this disease, wee must therefore use these Medicines with

Asswagers.



without any delay, because they must make loose the vehement shrinking of the sinewes. By no meanes wee may use such things as binde, whether liniments, or else toments; because by them the disease is rather augmented than mitigated.

Strengibners.

*Consect. acardina*, Triacle, once in every weeke Mithridate. The great Conserve of our description, is an especiall medicine for all kinds of convulsion. *Diacorum*, *Diamuscum dulce*. *Acorus* preserved, Beaver stone with honied water is a very good remedy against this disease. *Opopanax*, syr. of Calaminth, the water of *Cardus Benedictus*, given in drink, is very good. An oyntment of the Oyle of a Fox, of Lillies, *Edellium*, Hens fat, the fat likewise of a man, a Goose, and whelpe, Oyle of Philosophers, *de Euphorbio*, Oyle of Pepper. And a whelpe cut up alive in the middest, or the lungs of beasts taken out when they are newly dead, if they be laid to the convulsed part, after the part is anoynted, is likewise wholesome. The skins of Cats, Foxes, Weathers, Wolves, wherein the convulsed part must bee wrapped after the anoynting, and being once cold, must be dipped in hot Oyle again, and laid on the part convulsed againe. An oyntment of the Oyle of Turpentine, sweet Almonds, Lillies, Beaver-stones, of the wood *Guaiaicum*. The juyce of Crabs must also be duly applyed to the part affected. Make a perfume under a pavillion, of the decoction of such matters that doe serve for a Clyster, and let hot stones be cast into a cauldron couched under the pavillion for that purpose, so that the vapor and heate get not any way out of the pavillion. A bath of naturall brimstone, of Salt and Allom: and if these bee wanting, make this both by art of brimstone, Salt, and Allom: or else of Sage, Betony, Mallows, St. Johns wort, Rew, Bay leaves, Wormewood, Sowthern wood, Majoram, Pennyroyall, Melilot, Cammomile, roots of Lillies, of Flower-de-luce, Linseed, Fengreeke; these baths are very good after the due purging of the body, because they resolve the reliques

reliques from all parts alike; these baths the patient must use twice or thrice every day. At the last, Cupping glasses with scarification must be applied to the neck, and hinder part of the head; but wee must forbear them, so long as the body is ill juyced, or full: for it is to bee feared, that greater store of excrements will fall downe upon the part convulsed.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of the*  
**CONVULSION.**

Rx of the roots of white Lillies  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Aristolochia rot.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. leaves of Sage, Betony, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , flowers of *Carduus benedictus*, Camomile, Mercury, Centory the lesse, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i. of branne  $\mathfrak{M}$  ij. of white and light Agarick,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i.  $\beta$ , adde to the straining, *Sp. hiera picra simp.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\mathfrak{z}$ , *benedicte laxative*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Mellin rosati*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. oyle of white Lillies  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. a little Salt, hereof make a Clyster. But first of all make an *Enema* of the decoction of Barley, Lillies, leaves of Mallows, *Albea*, Linseed, Fengreeke, oyle of Lillies, and common oyle.

*A Clyster.*

Rx Syrrup of Calaminth  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Oxymel. squillit.* syrrup of Hyssop, *Stachas*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , the water of *Carduus benedictus*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. of the decoction of *Cicer*, Betony, *Carduus benedictus*,  $\mathfrak{lb}$   $\beta$ .

*A Julep.*

Rx the flowers of *Rosemary*, *Stachas*, leaves of Sage, Betony, Origan, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i. of Hyssop.  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , make a decoction of these in water q. s. and boyle them untill the third part be consumed, boyle that which is strained forth the second time with a sufficient quantity of Honey, unto the consistence of a Syrup, hereof  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , must be given with the decoction of the leaves of Sage, Betony, *Carduus benedictus*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

*A Syrup.*

Rx of new *Cassia*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, Turpentine  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Narmeg,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

*A Bolus.*



*A potion.*

Rx of old Triacle ʒ i. Oyle of Beaver stone ʒ i. β, Oyle of sweet Almonds, of white Lillies, ana ʒ i. mix these and give the patient hereof in the morning.

*An Electuary*

Rx of the conserve of *Acorus*, ʒ iij. Juniper berries ʒ i. β, of Beaver stone, *Assa Fetida*, ana ʒ i. β, syr. of Calaminth, *Stachas*, ana q. s.

*A mixture.*

Rx conserve of Rosemary flowers, of Betony ʒ vi. *Confect. anacardine*, ʒ ij. *Diamusci dulcis* ʒ iij of the best Mithridate ʒ i. β, of Beaver stone, ʒ ij. syr. of *Stachas* q. s.

*A Masticatory.*

Rx of Nutmeg, Mace, ana ʒ i. of the seed of bastard Pelitory, of Staves-acre, ana ʒ i. β, of Mastick, ʒ ij. preserved *Acorus*, preserved Ginger, ana ʒ ij. β, of the juyce of Beete q. s.

*A Vomit.*

Rx of Betony, ʒ i. of the seeds of Cresses, Rocket, ana, ʒ ij, seeds of Radish ʒ i. β, boyle these untill the third part be consumed. Of the strained decoction take ʒ v. *Oxymel. squil.* oyle of white Lillies, ana ʒ i. β, give this potion after meat.

*A Fomentation.*

Rx of the leaves of Sage, Rew, ana M iij. seeds of Fengreeke ʒ β, of common oyle and water q. s.

*A Bath.*

Rx of the roots of Mallowes, and Lillies, white Daffadill, ana ʒ vj. leaves of Sage M iij. of Wormewood, Origan, ana M ij. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, *Stachas*, ana M ij. β, Fengreeke, Linseed, ana ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. adde to the decoction of common oyle, and oyle of Lillies ʒ i. use this twice or thrice in a day: likewise with the former a Fox may be boyld, and it would be very good.

*An Unguent.*

Rx of the oyle of Nutmeg, ʒ ij. Turpentine, Lillies, Nard, ana ʒ β, of Beaver stone, earth-Wormes, St. Johnswort, ana ʒ ij.

*A Liniment.*

Rx the oyle of white Lillies, Turpentine, ana ʒ i. β, of the oynement made of Flowerdeluce ʒ iij. of the grease of a Fox of a man, *Unguenti Agrippe*, ana, ʒ β, the hinder part of the head, namely, the nape of the neck, and the whole back bone, and the convulsed part must be gently fomented,

ted, and anoynted therewith, which being done, cover the patient with wooll steeped therein.

Rx of the flowers of Rosemary, *Stachas*, wilde Betony-wild Majoram, Hyssop, ana M i. of Mace, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, Cloves, ana ʒ ʒ, of Beaver stone ʒ i. boyle these in Oyle of Lillies, and flowerdeluce; use this after hee hath done with the Bath, and let the parts anoynted be wrapped in moyst wooll.

Rx of Salt parched and warme, fryed branne, the flowers of Camomile, ana M i. Linseed, ʒ iij.

Rx of Mugwort, Rew, Camomile, ana M ʒ, of Nutmeg, the fruits of Juniper, ana ʒ ij. boyle these in common Oyle q. s. unto this adde some meale, of Fengeeke, Linseed ana ʒ ij. of Barley ʒ i, *Galbani*, ʒ ij. of Hony, Turpentine, q. f.

*If the Crampe or Convulsion shall be caused  
by emptinesse.*

Rx of the leaves of Mallows, M iij. foure or five Weathers heads, boyle these a good while in water q. f. adde hereto of new Milke lb viij. of fresh butter lb ij.

Rx of conserve of Buglosse, of Violets, ana ʒ i. *manum Christi* ʒ ʒ, *Diamargariti frigidi* ʒ v. Pine-nuts, ʒ ʒ, syr. of *Stachas* q. f.

Rx of the decoction of a Capon, leaves of Violets, Mallows, Barley, the heads of Weathers, adde likewise hereto the Oyle of Violets ʒ iij.

Rx of the Oyle of Violets, ʒ iij. of Lillies ʒ ij. of sweet Almonds, *Masticini rosacei*, ana ʒ i. anoynt the back bone and the part affected herewith, or the whole body may be anoynted after the comming forth of the bath; and then let him be cloathed with a Fox skinne.

*An Unguent*

*A Quilt.*

*A Cata-  
plasm.*

*A Bath.*

*An Electuary*

*An Unguent.*

*A Clyster.*



*An Appendix serving for the cure of the*  
**CONVULSION.**

**I**F the Convulsion be caused by fulnesse of cold humors, the belly shall first be loosened with a Clyster, then wee may prepare the humors with gentle medicines, (if the disease will afford so much time) and then endeavour to expell these humours. Likewise those remedies must be prescribed, which may turne away, and expell the humors from the part affected, as Frictions, Ligatures, Cupping-glasses, Gargarismes, Clysters, Apophlegmatismes; at the length such as doe dissolve the reliques, and strengthen the sinews, whether they be taken inwardly or outwardly, are very good: all which we may effect with most happy successe by these, and the former medicines, if universals be in due sort applied to particulars. And this must be especially observed in this disease, that the oynments, playsters, cataplasmes and other medicines that be outwardly applied, be at the first moderately hot, and then by degrees hotter shall be permitted, as Beaver stone. They must likewise soften, digest and resolve, if the disease be caused by winde. The part must gently be rubbed, if it be caused by the biting of venomous beasts; let *Scabius* be stampd and some Triacle, with the yolke of an egge: lay this on the part affected; if it be caused by the pricking of a sinew, because great paine for the most part doth accompany it; mix some Turpentine with Oyle of Roses, and apply them unto that sinew that is hurt. For this doth very much assuage the paine: or else boyle Wormes in the Oyle of Turpentine, and in the Oyle of Wormes, whereof shall be made an effectuall Fomentation, as also a good Cataplasme.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
**APOPLEXY.**

**A**N Apoplexy is a depriving of sense and motion in the whole body, as also the principall animall functions; this name is given to this disease, by reason of the great passion which is common to it; this disease doth amaze both mind and body, and is so dangerous, that very few recover, yet if any be cured hereof, a Palsy will haunt them. Compare the danger of this disease with the losse of breath, which is the very life of man. For in an Apoplexy, and such like diseases, although the patient bee deprived of sense and motion, yet still breath may remaine in his body; for this cause we say that the Apoplexy is most dangerous, and the fault is in the braine: if we cannot perceive the apoplectick to breathe, in this hee is not much unlike a dead man; yet whether hee do live or die, we may try and prove after this manner: Fill some small yessel with water, and set it upon the patients brest, and if the water move, it is a sure signe of breath, and by consequence, of life. Likewise we may prove the same by wooll finely carded, or by a cleare glasse, or a waxe candle. Put this very neere the mouth of the patient, and if he live, the flame will stirre, the wooll will move, and the glasse will bee covered with a mist: but if his breath doth surcease for a while, or if he doth breathe with great difficulty, hee is certainly sicke of a strong, and sore apoplexy; but they that breathe not so violently as the former, though it be done unequally, yet are they not so sore sick, but the disease doth deale more favorably with them: and in this latter there is sometime sense, sometime motion though much amazed, whereby a Palsy in some one part doth remaine. This disease doth not much differ from the strangling of the wombe, as will appeare by the patients drawing of his breath; yet herein they differ, because in an Apoplexy they breathe with difficulty,



but in the other disease their breathing is easie, and free enough.

*The part affected.*

It is perspicuous that the braine, which is the Root of the sinews, is affected; because beside the motive, and sensible faculties of the mind, the chiefe and principall faculties are offended: and these all are derive from the braine; but the impediments are rather in the chiefe ventricle of the braine, then in the substance of the braine; because the corruption thereof is suddainly generated. But an apoplexy is such an affect, that doth offend all the faculties, when as sense, motion, and other principall faculties are not onely diminished, but quite taken away, and it is hand-maid to this disease, viz. the stuffing, binding, or stopping of the ventricles of the braine.

*Signs.*

In a weake Apoplexy, there is a suddaine fall unto the earth with outcries; and immediately doth follow such difficultie of breathing, that a man cannot discern any life in the patient, but hee doth lie still like unto one that is stifled; the brest being in such sort as though it were tied with a bond, and could not be raised up. The animall actions are taken away, and hee is deprived both of sense and motion; inso much that the reasonable soule seemes to be quite extinct; their eyes are shut as though they were sleeping, and they differ from dead men onely in this, that they breathe, which is also done with great difficultie. A head-ach commeth suddainly, giddinesse, and coldnesse of the extreme parts goe before an apoplexy; yet a strong and violent apoplexy taketh one suddainly, and none of these signes goe before.

*The Causes.*

An apoplexy for the most part is caused by slimy, grosse, and cold phlegme; for the ventricles of the brain, and the arteries, through which Spirits are conveyed  
from

from the heart into the braine, are filld; by which meanes, the Spirits and ani mall faculties are hindered from giving any reliefe to the instruments of sense and motion, whereby man is robd both of sense and motion. In like manner this disease is stirred up by crudities, drunkenness, too much strong wine, cold aire, and cold diet. Again, a fall, a blow upon the head, doth hasten the flux of the humors of the braine, which if they fill the principall ventricles of the braine, they cause an Apoplexy: in some, the store of these humors is too small to stirre up a strong Apoplexy. And some after the manner of Apopleticks, fall upon a slight obstruction, which is likewise caused by grosse vapors, or some few humors driven into the braines ventricles.

*Prognostiques.*

Such as are much addicted to surfettings, especially old men, are subject to the apoplexy: also they, who are often taken with a heavy slumber, or with great laziness of body, and such, whose eyes are dimme, and who have a short and narrow neck. This apoplexy, if it bee great is scarce to be cured: therefore it is needlesse to attempt the cure thereof by medicines; because of its owne nature it is mortall. And a weak apoplexy is with great difficulty cured. For although few escaped death that hath this disease about them, yet they that doe escape the danger of death fall into a longer disease, viz. into a Palsey of some part, or of the whole body, or else lose their memory, and especially old men, if they be phlegmy by temper, and have used such diet as are most apt to cause this disease. And very few escape, because of the violence of this disease, and the unweildiness of their age. While cold and nipping winds blow in winter, and thick clouds be set the skie, this disease is most busie: the patient must have a care of taking such medicines as may cause sneezing, because it is mortall.



A method serving for the cure of the  
 APOPLEXY.

**T**He Aire must be hot. His meate, when the disease is somewhat eased, must be but little, it must likewise be hot, and such as may easily bee digested; as Chickens, Hens, Capons: for sawce, he may use sage, Thyme, Hyssop, Rosemary, Majoram. He must abtaine from wine, and drink honyed water. In stead of exercise, strong frictions, and ligatures of the extreme parts, and cupping glasses must be fastned to the shoulders; they must also be carried up and downe in a hanging bed, or running bed, and after two or three weekes a bath is good.

*Emptiers.*

*Eleſtuarium Indum* the greater, *Diaphanicum*, *Trochiſci de agarico*, *Albandal*. *Pillule Fetide*, *Cochie*, *de fumo terre*, *Arabica*, *de lapide lazuli*, *de Euphorbio*, *Hiera Diacolocynth*. *Picra*, *Logodii Pacchii*. Vomiting medicines are fitter to be used when as the disease is growne stronger, rather than at the beginning. Also Clysters are good. If the body be full, a veine shall be opened when he doth begin to breathe better, and when his belly is loosned with a gentle Clyster, and then the head veines in both the armes shall bee opened, not all at once, but by degrees the blood must bee taken away: open the veine the second time, if enough was not evacuated at the first; if the patient begin to recover, and speake, we may use purging medicines; but first we will begin with gentle Clysters. Preparing medicines are not here to be used, because the disease affords no truce, yet towards the declining they may bee prescribed.

*Averters.*

A Clyster of Betony, Sage, Rosemary, *Stachas*, Hyssop, Bayleaves, Majoram, Rew, Centory the lesse, Pennyroyall, Annise, and Fennell seed, *Colocynth*. *Hiera Colocynth*. *Hiera picra*, *Logodii*, Polypody, Sene, Salt, Oyle of Rew,

of

of Bayes, of Camomill. A veine must be opened; and the belly must be loosned by a suppositor of *Hiera Gal. Logodii*, Agarick, Hellebore: there must also be used strong, and painfull ligatures of the extreame parts, that the drowzy faculty may be awakened; and that nature being provoked by the vehemency of those paines, may drive out those ill humors that stop up the passages of the braine. Many, and hard frictions with a course cloth must be used, his body also must bee strongly stirred and shaken about the neck, in which place there is a row of veines and arteries. The whole body shall in like manner be shaken, because many fall after the manner of apopleticks by slight obstructions. And then it is to be hoped, that those slight obstructions will be discussed by the shaking of the body, naturall force awaked, the blood, and humors, spread over the body, and not be permitted to congeale. The hair of his beard, and privities shall be plucked, likewise cupping-glasses shall be applyed to the Loynes, Shoulders, Buttocks, veines of the throat, and unto the lower parts, excepting the Hypochondriall part, which is under the thort ribs, lest we hinder the muskles of the belly, which serve for breathing. Sometime gentle cupping-glasses without scarification must bee applied. If the strength of the patient be such, that it cannot endure the opening of a vein, or if the vein be so hid, that one cannot come at it, then cupping-glasses with scarification must be applyed: it would be better for the patient, if they were fastned to the throat-veines because sticking there, they turne away with greater force, then if they were applyed to other places: a horseleech likewise shall be applyed to those places, and to the Hemeroyd-veynes with scarification. Errhines, Gargarismus, such as provoke sneezings, viz. Beaver-stone, Pepper, Hellebore, and *Euphorbium*, for this doth very much cause sneezing, and doth purge the braine, by the nostrils: yet this must not bee used, untill the body be well purged.



An Apophlegmatisme of Pepper, bastard Pellitory, Beaver stone, doth draw out the slimy stopping matter by the palate, and we will rub the palate, and the inner part of the mouth with our fingers with some of the aforelaid powder. A sinapisme of Mustard seed, and Figs, boyled in water to the thicknesse of a playster.

*Awakers.*

An odeur of *Galbanum*, Beaver stone, *Opopanax*. An oyntment of the same matter. Heate a Frying pan red hot and the head being shaved, hold the pan some distance from the head, by this meanes heate is procured to the head, and grosse humors are abated, and turned into vapors. Mustard seed ground small, and mixed with Salt, must bee cast into the patients mouth, and layd upon his nose.

*Strengibners.*

*Aurea Alex. Confect. anacardina*, Triacle, Mithridate, *Diamuscum dulce*, *Diacorum*, *Diambra*, preserved *Acorus*, Conserve of Betony, Majoram, *Acorus*, Sage, *Aquaviva*, wherein soake some of the former medicine, or else Nutmeg, Beaver stone, the roots of *Acorus*, Sage, Mastick; or else drinke them with *Aquaviva*. Beaver stone is a soveraigne remedy against this disease. An irrigation, and washing of the head, (being first shaved) with oyle and water, wherein were boyled the flowers of *Stachys*, the leaves of Origan, Bay, Rosemary, Sage, Camomile, Mellilot, Pennyroyall, Nutmeg, Rew, Savory. A vesicatory emplayster rubifying with the Oyle of *Euphorbium*, of Beaver stone, with *Aquaviva*. An oyntment of the Oyle of Lillies, Flowerdeluce, Rew, Nard, Spike, and Nutmeg, *Euphorbium*, Beaver stone, Pepper, Mustard, bastard Pellitory, Vineger, and Waxe, the head must be shaved. After three weekes a bath is expedient.

A more particular method for the cure of the  
APOPLEXY.

Rx of the roots of Angelica, ʒvj. of Sage, Rew, Mercury, Betony, Hyssop, ana Mi. flowers of Stechas, the lesse Centory, ana p.i. seeds of Annise, Nettles, Cummin, Fennell, Bayes, ana ʒiiij. white and light Agarick ʒβ. Colocynth. ʒij. β. make a decoction hereof in water q. l. adde to the straining, *Hiera logodii*, *Diacolocynth.* ana ʒi. β, *Benedicta laxativa*, *Disturbith cum rhubarb.* ana ʒiiij. *Oppopanach*, ʒij. *Mellis rosati* ʒij. oyle of Beaver stone, of Bays, ana ʒi. β, of Salt ʒij. β, make hereof a clyster; wherewith by distances of time we shall evacuate the humors out of the body; untill the patient shall be able to take some solutive physick at the mouth, we will use this clyster, if no danger appeare; it will bee good to leave out *Colocynth.* and *Hieram colocynth.* in the first time of giving the Clyster. But at the third it may bee used as is prescribed; for after that the first region of the body is emptied, then wee may use stronger, that thereby the upper parts may bee purged. Twice or thrice it will bee good to use a gentle Clyster, that evacuation and turning away may bee procured.

Rx of Nutmeg, ʒi. of white Hellebore, bastard-Pellitory, Beaver stone, ana, ʒβ, *Nigella*, of white Pepper, ana ʒi. blow a little quantity of this into the Nostrils, with a quill.

Rx *Oxymellis squillitici*, of the decoction of Radish, ana ʒiiij. of the oyle of Lillies, ʒij.

Rx of the roots of *Asarum*, ʒi. β, of the roots of Radish, ʒi. boyle them in water q. l. untill one halfe be consumed; unto ʒvj. of this straining, adde *Oxymel. squillitici* ʒij. β, oyle of white Lillies ʒij.

A Clyster.

A sneezing powder.

A Vomit.

A Vomit.



A Potion.

R of Mithridate ʒ ij. of old Triacle, *Confect. anacardine*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Beaver stone, ʒ ʒ, *Aqua vite*, wherein ʒ i. of Nutmeg and Sage were infused, *Oxymel squil.* ʒ ij. or of Nutmeg boyled, *Acorus*, ʒ ij.

A Potion.

R *Hiera logodii*, *hiera diacolocymb.* ana ʒ i. of Beaver stone, ʒ ʒ, of old Triacle ʒ ij. of the decoction of Sage, Rosemary, Marigolds, Betony, Centory the lesse, q. s. give this after the patient is eased by a Clyster, and it may be put downe his throate with a squirt.

A Suppositor.

R *Hiera logodii* ʒ i. *Colocymb.* ʒ ʒ, *salis gemme*, of Beaver stone, ana ʒ i. *Mellis cocti & concreti* q. s. make hereof a suppositor, *reliquum est supponendum.*

Another.

R of black Hellebore, *Hiera diacolocymb.* ʒ i. ʒ, of Salt, ʒ ʒ, *Mellis cocti & concreti*, q. s.

A draught.

R of Mithridate, Triacle, ana ʒ ij. *Hiera diacoloc.* ʒ ij. of Beaver stone ʒ i. of the best Wine ʒ iij.

Another.

R of the pills of the Agarick, of *Mesuz. de Euphorbia*, ana ʒ i. *Cochiarum*, ʒ i. ʒ, of Beaver stone, ʒ i. *Diagridii gr.* iij. of the decoction of Sage, Betony, Nutmeg, Angelica, ʒ iij. *Aqua vite* ʒ i.

Pills.

R *Pillul. feridarum*, *Cochiarum*, *Aurearum*, ana ʒ i. *Diagridii gr.* v. of Beaver stone ʒ i, which may be given to the patient, if he can swallow, otherwise dissolve them as was shewed before.

A potion.

R of Hyssop, Sage, ana Mi. ʒ, of flowers of Rosemary, M iij. of Nutmeg, ʒ i. ʒ, steepe these in *Aqua vite* lb ʒ, for the space of 24. houres, then straine them forth, and put fresh simples into the liquor againe, renew these very often, and make a potion for the patient.

An Opiate.

R of the conserve of Betony, Majoram, *Acorus*, ana ʒ i. *Confect. anacardine* ʒ. vj. *Diamusci dulcis*, *Diambre*, ana ʒ ij. ʒ, of the best Mithridate, of old Triacle, ana ʒ iij. ʒ, of Nutmeg, Ginger, ʒ i. ʒ. *Stachyd.* q. s. make a mixture in the forme of an Opiate: of which, when the patient hath eaten, a draught of the decoction of Hyssop will do good; but it must be drunke an houre after.

R of

R of the leaves of Bayes, Hyssop, Sage, Betony, Rosemary, ana M ij. of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Stecha, Betony, Calaminth, Majoram, ana M i. boyle these in a like quantity of water and wine, untill the third part be consumed. Make hereof an irrigation for the head: dip a sponge in the liquor, and let it drop downe upon his head in divers places.

An Irrigation.

R of the roots of white Lillies,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i.  $\beta$ , the leaves of Majoram, Pennyroyall, Baulme, Rew, Origan, ana M i. of Anni-seeds,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q. s. make hereof a Fomentation for the head. Adde to these former, of the oyle of Rew,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the oyle of white Lillies, q. s. and a cataplasme may be made for the head.

A Fomentation.

A Cataplasme.

R of the oyle of Nard, *Parole*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Beaver stone,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. Euphorbii,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , first shave the head, and anoynt it with this oyle.

An Oyntment.

R of the oyle of Bricks, of Beaver stone, of Bayes, Juniper, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , in these dissolve Euphorbii  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , adde thereto a little Wax and Vineger, make a soft oyntment for the head and backbone, but especially the beginning of the backbone: anoynt also the inward parts of the nostrills with the oyle of Nard and Rew, wherein a little Nutmeg, and Beaver stone have been dissolved.

Another.

R of the oyle of white Lillies,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Beaver stone  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Euphorbii,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. oyle of Nard,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. make hereof an oyntment for the head, and backbone, which may be used, if the other will not prevaile.

Another.

R of the oyle of Nutmeg, Nard, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Rew,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Beaver stone,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. make hereof a soft Liniment with a little Wax, anoynt the whole backbone herewith, from the beginning unto the end, and then besprinkle it with the powder of the root of bastard Pellitory, Mustard seeds, Staves-acre, Saffron. Open likewise the patients mouth, and rub the tongue and palate with Mithridate, Confect. anacar-

A Liniment.



*dina*, old Triacle, or else *confect. anacardina*  $\text{℥ i.}$   $\text{ss}$ , may be put into the mouth of the patient.

Rx of oyle of Masticke, Nutmeg, Wormwood, ana  $\text{℥ vi.}$  of Mint  $\text{℥ ss}$ , of Mace, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, ana  $\text{℥ i.}$  make an oyntment for the stomach. Apply a potentiall cautery unto the coronall seame, and prick the blister with a needle, and put a little round thing into the hole, to keep it open for the space of two or three moneths. Or in the stead hereof, make an actual cautery with a hot iron, which in like manner must be kept open, but first the scabbe must be taken away. Likewise in the stead of these cauteries, heat a frying-pan, or a skillett red hot, and hold it so near unto the head that the haire in some sort may seem to be scorched; and this must be done so often, untill the patient bee awaked.

Rx *Castorei*  $\text{℥ vi.}$  *Euphorbii*  $\text{℥ ss}$ , of Mustard-seed,  $\text{℥ ii.}$  the seeds of Nettles  $\text{℥ ss}$ , of the best Figs gently boyld, and of dried Figs, ana  $\text{no xij.}$  make hereof an emplaster, which must be applyed, the head being first shaved.

*An appendix, serving for the cure of the*  
APOPLEXY.

**A** Strong Apoplexy is incurable, because it is a sharpe disease, and speedily kills a man. Wherefore at the first we must make use of strong medicines. First, strong Clysters must bee administred. Such medicines must be given also that may heat the body, and take away obstructions. First of all the patient must be stirred and shaken; and his mouth held open by force. The humours also must be turned away from the head by painfull ligatures and frictions of the remote parts, as also by Cupping-glasses, Suppositors, Clysters, and by opening a vein. Likewise wee may empty the head of these humors by sneezings, Apophlegmatismes, Gargarismes, and at the same time wee will give

give such medicines as shall purge the body; and then such as strengthen the whole body, and discusse the reliques. If the throat vein be opened, make a plaister of bole-armoniack, aloë, the haire of a Hare, and the white of an Egge, and lay it upon the orifice, lest it bleed too much.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
**LETHARGY.**

**L**ethargy is such a necessity of sleeping, that cannot by any means be withstood. Or, it is an oblivious disease caused by a cold Impostume of the braine. The disease called *Caros*, hath great affinity with this, onely herein they differ; *Caros* doth not bring a Feaver with it; and besides, *Caros* causeth a deep, and more profound sleepe then the Lethargy. For prick them both frequently, and to the quick, and such as are vexed with that disease, will scarce be awaked. And being asked questions when they are awaked, they make no answer. The Lethargy doth differ from a phrensy herein; these sleep very little, or not at all, and the contrary happens in the Lethargy. It doth also differ from the Apoplexy herein (for in both, the sense and motion, and function of the mind alike do perish) in the disease *Caros* breath is not taken away, for herein, they doe breathe, and that easily. In the Apoplexy with much difficulty, and by degrees the patients breath is diminished, oppressed, and thereby he is at the length stifled.

*The part affected.*  
The substance of the brain is here affected, and chiefly the hinder part, but not the Ventricks, as may appear by the offended functions of the braine. Experience tells us, that the patient is deprived both of reason and memory, which are the principall functions of the braine. In a word, it is such a disease, whereby reason, memory, the imagination, and the other senses are annoyed.

*Signes*



*Signes.*

An urgent necessity of sleeping with oblivion doth possesse the patient, a lingring and continuall Feaver cometh withall, neverthelesse the Feaver is scarce perceived seeing the phlegme easily rots. They answer slowly, though provoked thereto: they lie with their eyes shut, sometime they open them, if they be called upon with a lowd voyce; and then closing them againe, fall fast asleepe, in somuch that the patient doth not feele that paine which hee doth suffer by being plucked by the haire. These things happen, when as the substance of the braine is vitiated by an Impostume. In which caute, the eyes stick farther out then usually they were wont. Likewise they move with paine and difficulty; also the tongue is white, they are as forgetfull as madde men; for if they aske for a urinall to pisse in, they immediatly forget for what end they did call for it. By this it may easily bee guessed, that reason and memory are banished, and that there is a defect in the imagination: they yawne often, and the pulses beat slowly and faintly, even as the Feaver comes upon them very slowly, thereby making them faint: the bodies of some are loose, of others bound; in like manner is it in their making water, and their urines are not unlike the stale of beasts; and doe signifie a great disquietnesse of spirits within the veines. In some sweat and trembling meete together; they breathe very much, though weakly. The whole body is lazy, and dull, but chiefly the head. Although such as stand by, turne the patient on the one side, yet of his owne accord he doth turne upon his back againe.

*The Causes.*

The causes are from a cold and moist dilemper of the braine, and abundance of phlegmy humors so putrified, that they do bring a Feaver with them: these humors flow in the substance of the braine, and cause a cold tumour: therefore it is no wonder, though motion and sense be taken

taken away, because motion cometh by heat, laziness by cold.

*Prognostiques.*

This disease doth speedily kill the patient, if it be not met withall in time: for the space of seven dayes the patient is in danger of death, and if they doe escape then, they doe often recover. As a true lethargy for the most part is mortall; so trembling is a sure messenger of great danger. Cold sweat about the head is another. They that doe recover of this disease, have an impostume in their brest. But it is best in a Lethargy, if an impostume arise behind the eare, the excrements are for the most part liquid, and great plenty of liquid excrements threaten danger.

*A method serving for the cure of the*  
**LETHARGIE.**

**T**He ayre must be cleere, hot and dry, if otherwise, it may be rectified with Juniper-wood, Rosemary, and Bay leaves. His diet must be such, as may extenuate, viz. Capons, Hens, Chickens, Partridges, Pheasant, birds of Mountaines, stick them with Cloves, and cast Cinamon upon them. Flesh-broth is also good wherein some Cinamon and Pepper have been strained. Let his drinke be small wine and ptisan, and let it be made with Thyme, Hyssop, honied water or *Hydromel*, hee must have a care of drinking water; sleepe must be hindered as much as may be, with pricking and pulling of the haire, or with the smoake of Brimstone, Beaver-stone, *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*. Place this under their noses, that they may be forced to draw the fume into their nostrils, for the same purpose, the nose must be chafed & rubd with Vineger. The excrements of the belly must be brought downe with a Clyster, or suppositor. In stead of exercise frictions and ligatures of extreme parts, viz. the hands and feet, must be used.



## Preparers.

A decoction of Sage, Hyssop, Thyme Majoram, Betony, Penny-royall, Fennill, Smallage, Maidens-haire, Baulme, the Roots of Kneec-holme, grasse; adde to the strayingning *Mel rosaceum*, or *Oxymel*. The syrup of *Stachas*, Betony, Borage; *Melicratum*, *Hydromel*, *Oxymel Simplex & Compositum*. The water of Majoram, Rosemary, Betony, Sage, *Stachas*. We may first use these preparing medicines, if the evill happen to be of any continuance; otherwise we may resist the disease by purging medicines. And if the patient be unwilling to take any medicines, we must labour to put them into him with a squirt.

## Emptiers.

A Clyster of Mallowes, Camomile, Sage, Calamint, Majoram, Origan, Betony, Centory the lesse, Rosemary, seeds of Fennill, *Colocynthis*, *Hiera Simplex*, Agarick, *Hiera logodii*, *Archigonis*, *Electuario Indo*, *Diaphanicum*, Oyle of Camomile, Rew, *Mel rosatum*, *Hiera diacolocynth*, *Logod. Picra*, *Diaphanicum*. *Electuarium Indum majus*, Agaricke made into a trochiske, Agarick. A suppositor of *Hiera picra*, *Benedicta laxativa*, *Colocynth*. Hony and Salt. A Vomit of the decoction of Radish, Orache, Dill, *Oxymel*. *Squillit*. The *Cephalica* veine must bee first opened, because the body is full. Then a veine in the forehead shall bee opened. But first the excrements shall bee evacuated by a gentle Clyster. The order of medicines shall be renewed, and sharpe Clysters, and strong suppositors will be better than such medicines as are taken in at the mouth.

## Averters.

A veine must be opened, a Clyster and suppositor administered; the tongue and palate must be rubd with Vineger and Hony, wherewith Bastard-Pellitory, Mustard-seed, Triacle, Mithridate, *aurea Alexandrina*, are to bee mingled. The extreme parts of the body would bee rubd, untill they wax red and smart. Theaforesaid parts shall likewise bee pinched and pricked, and the haire of the head must now and then be strongly puld, that the patients may bee rowzed from their lethargy. Cupping glaisses must bee set

to the hinder part of the head, or to the turning joynts of the back-bone, as also to the buttocks, and Legs, and of some of them with scarification, others without, yet with great store of flame. Errhins must bee made of Vineger, wherein Origan, Thyme, and Pennyroyall have been boyled; the vapours hereof received up into the nostrils, doe dissipate the grosse humors. A suffumigation of *Galbanum*, and Harts-horne awakens the patient. Gargarismes, Apophlegmatismes. Make an epitheme of Rew boyled in wine, sneezings of white Hellebor, Pepper, Beaver stone. A Fomentation of the head which must be first shaved, especially the hinder parts; this must bee made of the decoction of Rew, Origan, Savory, wild Betony, Hyssop, Beaver stone dissolved in Oyle. A sinapism of Mustard seed, dried Figs, Pigeons dung, *Cantharides*, whereto Pepper and *Euphorbium* may be added, if a stronger medicine be required: and when these medicines have exercised their strength, then shall the place bee annointed with hot Oyle, and the paine asswaged with the decoction of Roses, Mallows, and Camomile. His Legs also must bee rubd with Nettles.

An oyntment for the head, of *Oxyrrhodina*, with a little Vineger. An oyntment of the Oyle of Roses and Camomile with a little Vineger, the first day the former oyntment must be used, and when it doth begin to increase, the second: or in stead of this, boyle Thyme, Calamint, Pennyroyall, the Roots of white Lillies and a little Beaver stone, with the former oyntment; these must be layd to the coronall scame.

Triacle, Mithridate, with *Aqua vite*, *Diamuscum dulce*, *Diambra*, Conserve of Sage, Betony, Majoram, Beaver stone, with *Oxymel*, is of great force for the cure of this disease. An odour must be made of juyce of *Easperitium*, Pennyroyall, Thyme, Southernwood, Origan, *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, Beaver stone, Harts horne, Vineger, and Rew. It is good for the patient to bathe in fresh water. An oynt-

*Averters.*

*Strengtheners.*



ment for the head of Beaver stone, or the Oyle of Bayes, Philosophers, of Pepper, *Costini*, Nard, *Acetum squillanicum*. An Embroch of Betony, Sage, *Serpyllum*, Majoram. A Quilt put upon the head, being first shaved, of Millet, and fried Salt: here strong resolvers are requisite, quite contrary to the custome of other impostumes; because the Impostume cannot by other meanes be resolved; because it doth cleave close unto the inside of the Cranium:

*A more particular method serving for the cure of the*  
LETHARGIE.

*A Chylr.*

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of white Lillies ʒ i. of the leaves of Rew, Sage, Majoram, Mallows, ana M i. flowers of Rosemary, Camomile, Mellilot, the lesser Centory, Betony, ana M ʒ, Lin-seed, Anni-seeds, ana ʒ ʒ, of white and light Agarick, ʒ iij. *Polypodii quercini* ʒ i. *Colocynth.* ʒ i. ʒ, boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. ʒ, adde to the strayning, *Hieræ logod.* ʒ ʒ. *Electuarii Indi*, ʒ v. *Mellin rosacei* ʒ i. ʒ, Oyle of Rew, ʒ iij. of Beaver stone, ʒ i. ʒ, or in the place of this make a suppositor of Honey, ʒ i. ʒ, *Hieræ logod.* ʒ ʒ, of Salt, ʒ i.

*A Julep.*

R<sup>x</sup> Syr. *Stachados*, of Betony, ana ʒ i. of Borage, *Oxymellin simplicis*, ana ʒ ʒ. the water of Hyssop, Rosemary, Betony, Majoram, ana ʒ iij. of this give the patient ʒ iij. in the morning.

*A Potion.*

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Fennell, Parsly, Grasse, Angelica, ana ʒ vi. of Hyssop, Thyme, Pennyroyall, Baulme, ana M i. of Sage, M ʒ, of the flowers of Betony, Rosemary, ana M i. of Borage, Buglosse, ana M ʒ, of the seeds of Fennell, Annise, Smallage, ana ʒ iij. of Licorice scraped, ʒ ʒ, boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. ʒ, adde to the strayning *Mellin rosacei*, *Oxymellin simplicis*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, Give of this ʒ iij. in the morning.

*A draught.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Electuarii Indi majoris*, ʒ ij. *Diacath.* ʒ iij. *Diaphaniconis*,

*niconis*, *Diaturb. cum rhubarb.* ana.  $\zeta$  i. Syrupe of *Stachas*,  $\zeta$  i. of the waters of Betony, Sage, ana  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , mix these.

Rx *Pillularum hiera picra Galeni*  $\mathfrak{D}$  ij. *Hiera Diacolocynth. Pillularum cochiarum*, of Beaver stone, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$   $\beta$ . with a sufficient quantity of the syrup of *Stachas*, hereof make 8. Pills; if he be not able to swallow these, dissolve them with  $\zeta$  iiij. of Betony water, *Mellis rosati*,  $\zeta$  i. Give the patient this to drinke.

Rx *Hiera logod.*  $\mathfrak{D}$  i.  $\beta$ . *dia Hiera colocyn.*  $\mathfrak{D}$  ij. of the decoction of wild Betony, Pennyroyall, Betony, *Calendula*, ana  $\zeta$  iiij. syr. of *Stachas*,  $\zeta$  i.

Rx of the decoction of Radish, *Oxymellis simplicis*, *squillitici*, ana  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , of common oyle  $\zeta$  ij. mixe these, and drinke it off luke-warme, if hee doe not then vomit, dippe Feathers in *Oxymelle squillitico*, and herewith mixe some Mustard, and rubbe the chaps and palate of the mouth.

Rx *Confect. anacardine*, of Mithridate, Triacle, ana  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , of Nutmeg, Beaver stone, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$   $\beta$ , *Aqua vine*, *Calendula* ana  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ .

Rx of the conserve of Rosemary flowers,  $\zeta$  i. *Aromatici rosati Gabrielis*,  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , of old Triacle,  $\mathfrak{D}$  ij. of Mithridate,  $\mathfrak{D}$  i. syr. *Stachados* q. s.

Rx of the roots of Angelica,  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , of Savory, M iiij. of Thyme, Pennyroyall, ana M i. boyle these in white wine q. s. give of this  $\zeta$  iiij. for some few dayes every morning.

Rx of Origan, Betony, Savory, Baulme, Pennyroyall, Rew ana M i. flowers of *Stachas*, M i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in an equall quantity of Wine and Oyle of Cammomile, untill the Wine be consumed. It is for the head.

Rx of Nutmeg, Pepper, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  ij. of white Hellebore, *Emphorbii*, ana gr. vi. of Beaver stone, bastard Pellitory, of Pepperwort, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$   $\beta$ , he must receive a small quantity, of

Pills.

A draught.

A vomit.

A Potion.

An Opiate.

A Potion.

A Fomentation.

A sweating medicine.



this into his nostrills after he hath been well purged: Not before by any meanes.

An apopleg-  
matisme.

A mixture.

Rx of Hyssop, ʒ i. of Nutmeg, ʒ ʒ, of bastard Pellitory, of Mustard, ana ʒ i. ʒ. of Staves-acres, ʒ iiij. bruise these, and sew them in a fine cloth.

Rx *Corfect. anaeardine*, of Mithridate ana ʒ i. *aurae Alexandrine* ʒ ij. of Mustard seed, the roots of bastard Pellitory, ana ʒ i. *Hiere pierre Gal.* ʒ i. a little Hony. Rub the tongue and palate of the mouth with it. Or else the tongue alone may be rubd with Mustard seed bruised, and mingled with Hony and Vineger.

A Suffumi-  
gation.

Rx of Gumme Ammoniack, *Asse Fatida*, ana ʒ i. of Hartshorne, ʒ ij. *Galbani*, Beaver stone, ana ʒ ʒ, of Frankincense, ʒ i. ʒ.

A Cerate.

Rx of the oyle of Tiles or Bricks, Bayes, Lillies, ana ʒ iiij. of Nutmeg, ʒ i. ʒ, of Beaver stone, ʒ ij. of Triacle, ʒ i. ʒ, of Waxe q.s.

An Oyntment.

Rx of the oyle of Tiles ʒ i. *de Euphorbio* ʒ iiij. oyle of flowerdeluce, of Bayes, ana ʒ vi. of Beaver stone, ʒ i. ʒ, *Euphorbii gr. x.* of Nutmeg, ʒ ij.

An Emplai-  
ster.

Rx of Mustard seed, ʒ ʒ, of *Cantharides*, the wings and heads being taken off, ʒ vi. of leaven, Doves dung, ana ʒ i. *Euphorbii* ʒ ʒ, of a raw Onyon, ʒ ʒ, *Emplastri apostolorum*, ʒ iiij. a little Vineger: make a red playster, which shall bee laid to the hinder part of the head, the haire being first taken away.

An Oyntment.

Rx of the oyle of Flowerdeluce, *Aceti squillinci*, ana ʒ iiij. wherein a little Thyme, Pennyroyall, and Origan must be boyled: adde to that which is strained forth, a small quantity of Beaver stone, of the haire of a man burnt, ʒ ʒ. Mingle these, and apply them to the nostrills and forehead.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
LETHARGIE.

**F**irst of all, the *Cephalica* veine must bee opened, in the meane time a gentle Clyster must be given. The veine being opened, the surcharging matter shall bee evacuated by a stronger Clyster, and it shall often bee renewed; because these humors are viscous and grosse, and natuall strength somewhat drow sic. In the meane time, and presently after the beginning of administering medicines, wee must administer such as may drive back the matter, that it runne not to the braine; viz. oyle of Roses, and Vineger, which wee will apply to the coronall seame. After the fourth day we will adde resolvers to the former oymntment. viz. oyle of Lillies, oyle of Beaver stones, oyle of Rew, Camomile, and a linnen cloth dipped herein, shall be laid to the coronall seame. But such as may draw back, and turne aside the matter of the disease, and awaken the patient, are chiefly to be required. All this is effected by Clysters, Ligatures, Frictions, Cupping-glasses, which shall bee applyed to the shoulders with scarification; especially in the beginning of the disease. When the disease is somewhat qualified, they shall bee applyed to the hinder part of the head, and then also it shall be lawfull to purge. And because the disease is violent, and suddenly kills many, the former medicines shall be administered warily, although no signe of concoction appeare. Lastly, such shall be given, that may strengthen the body, and amend the distemper left behind: all which we may effect by these, and the former medicines, so that universals be well sorted with particulars.



A method serving for the knowledge of CATALEPSIS  
or CONGELATION.

**C**atalepsis is a sudden detaining both of soul and body, with the which, whosoever is taken, the same figure of body doth neverthelesse remaine; he abides sitting, or lying, if hee did either sit, or lie when the fit tooke him; by some this disease is styl'd, An awaking amazement; because this disease takes away sense and motion from all parts of the body. Herein it doth agree with the apoplexy, for in both, sense and voluntary motion perisheth: but herein they differ; for in this disease, even the spirits are affected, for they are as it were frozen, and they rest quietly in that part of the body, wherein they were when the fit begun to seize upon the patient; but this happens not in Apoplexies; for they are only by stopping so hindered, that they cannot disperse themselves into the other parts of the body, whereby the parts are left as it were resolved, and loose; not cold and stiffe, as in a *Catalepsis*; and the members change their former figure in an Apoplexy, because the Spirits are sound. Also in Apoplecticks, the eyes are shut.

*The part affected.*

The braine is chiefly affected, as may appeare by the hurt of the animall faculty, as well imaginative as sensitive, and motive, and the braines hinder part is chiefly offended.

*Signes.*

The patient is dumbe, which doth appeare by his not answering: his body is bereft of sense and motion; and though he retain the form of one being awake, yet his mind and senses are asleep, and that on such a sudden, that the lookers on are amazed, and it so vehemently seizeth on them, that some thinke they are rather transported into heaven, than dead. The mind is assaulted so strongly, that they

## The Physicians Practice.

they remaine in the same figure, wherein they were when they were stricken. He can neither void excrements, nor make water, because of the senses dulnesse. The pulse doth beate little and faintly, but in the meane time, equall.

### The Causes.

This affect is caused by a cold and dry distemper of the braine, whereby the braine and animall spirits are congeald and dried up, not only coold. A cold and dry matter caueth this disease, as melancholy, and the ayre cold and dry, and the mixture of phlegme and cholera when both overflow: these causes do not only coole, but do also drie them up, and in a manner congeale the braine, and animall spirits.

### Prognostiques.

This affect is more common to cold regions, than hot, and they are in great hazard of life that are taken with this disease; wherefore present remedy must be sought for, because unless they be speedily cured, they die as it were maimed, and killed with cold: yet if it be a strong *Catalepsis*, it will hardly, or never be cured.

### A method serving for the cure of CATALEPSIS, or CONGELATION.

**T**He ayre must be hot and moist; his meat *Ptisan*, Cream, his drinke small white-wine, and somewhat astringent.

*Syrup of Epithymon.* The iuyce of Fumitory, *Stachys*, Buglosse, the water of Buglosse, Fumitory, Baulme, Hops, Betony; a decoction of Smallage, Dill, Fennill, Calamint.

A decoction of Fumitory, Hops, Polypody, Sene, *Epithymon*. In this dissolve *Diasena*, *Confect. hamech.* *Diacatholicon*, *Diasena*. *Hiera logodii*, *Hiermeu*, *Hiera Diacolocymb.* Sene, Poly-

Preparers.

Emptiers.



*Polypodium quercinum*. Vomit must bee provoked. Also a sharpe clyster must be made of *Stachas*, Sage, Beete, Calamint, Pennyroyall, *Epithymon*, Camomile, Mercury, Borage, Thyme, Polipody, Sene, black Hellebore, *Hiera logod. confect. hamech*; *Indum majus*, oyle of Camomile. If the patient be troubled with slimy phlegme, instead of the former purgers, give Agarick, *Colocynthis*, an Electuary of bayberries.

## Averters.

The *Cephalica* veine must bee opened; if it bee caused by great store of blood, and his strength faile not; we may likewise take away store of blood. The Clyster above mentioned, Frictions, Ligatures of the armes, back, legges, feet, Hemroids, if they did flow before the comming of the disease, must be caused to flow afresh, great outcries must be made about the patient, and sneezing medicines must be given to him with black Hellebore.

## Strengtheners.

Triacle, Mithridate, *Confect. anacardina*, *Diamuscum dulce*, *Laticans Gal. plirisarcoticum*, *Diambra*, Conserve of Buglosse roots, Malmesey, Hypocras. A foment for the hinder part of the head with *Aqua vite*, *Unguentum Martiatum & dialbaa*. A decoction of Majoram, *Stachas*, Sage, Betony, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Wine: this must be made for a fomentation. Likewise make a fomentation of the oyle of Lillies, Camomile, sweet Almonds, *Sejamine*. But in time we may use stronger, as the oyle of Bayes, Rew, *Euphorbium*, Spike, or else some *Euphorbium* may bee added to the former, An oyntment for the hinder part of the head, of the oyle of Lillies, Camomile, Dill, Rew, Elder, Beaverstone: in these we may boyle Hyssop, Thyme, *Serpyllum*, *Epithymon*, Fumitory, flowers of Buglosse, and Borage: dip a linnen cloth in these, and apply to the head.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
**CATALEPSIS, or CONGE-**  
**LATION.**

R<sup>x</sup> of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ij. of Mercury, M j. β, of Sage, Thyme, Pennyroyall, *Epithymon*, ana M i. *sene Alex. Polipodii quercini*, ana ʒ v. *Epithymi*, ʒ ij. of black Hellebor, ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. unto lb i. β, adde to the strayingning Confect. *hamech* ʒ iiij. *Hiera logod.* ʒ vij. β, *Mellin rosati*, common oyle, ana ʒ ij. of Salt, ʒ i. β.

A Clyster.

R<sup>x</sup> of the best Triacle, ʒ i. Mithridate ʒ i. of the water of *Carduus benedictus* ʒ iiij. give this after the Clyster hath sufficiently purged.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> *Hiera logod.* ʒ ij. *hiera diacolocynth.* ʒ i. *Diagridii gr.* vi. of Salt, ʒ i. of Honey, made hard by boyling q. s. a suppositor of this which must be given, if the clyster remaine not with the patient.

A Suppositor.

R<sup>x</sup> Syrup de *Epithymon*, *Stachados*, ana ʒ i. Syrup of Fumitory, Buglosse, ana ʒ β, water of Hops, Betony, Borage, ana ʒ iiij.

A Julep

R<sup>x</sup> *Diasene* ʒ iiij. Confect. *hamech* ʒ ij. de *Epithymo* ʒ i. the water of Betony, *Carduus benedictus*, ana ʒ i. β, give this in the morning.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Buglosse, Borage, ʒ i. β, flowers of *Stachos*, Buglosse, *Carduus benedictus*, *Epithymon*, ana M i. of the seeds of Fennell, ʒ v. of the best Barley ʒ iiij. of Rayfins, the stones being taken out ʒ i. β, boyle these in Buglosse and Betony water q. s. to lb i. when it is almost boyled, put in a little white Wine, wherein one Nutmeg hath been infused for the space of 12 houres, to the strayingning adde syr. *Stachados*, ʒ iiij. syr. de *Epithymo* ʒ i. β.

A Potion.

R<sup>x</sup> of the leaves of *Sene* ʒ β, *rhobarb. Electi.* ʒ i. *Polipodii quercini* ʒ iiij. of the flowers of *Stachos*, M β, of Nutmeg, ʒ ij. β, infuse them in lb i. of the aforesaid decoction 12.

A potion.



*Adraught.*houres to the straying adde syr. *Stachados* ʒ iiij.R̄ *Sp. latifcantis Galeni*, ʒ ij. conserve of the roots of Bugloss, ʒ ij. of Nutmeg, ʒ i. ʒ, infuse these in ʒbi. ʒ, of Malmley for the space of 12 houres. This must be given thrice in one day.*Lozenges.*R̄ *Diamusci dulcis*, *Latifcantis Galeni*, ʒ ij. *trochiscorum de Eupatorio*, ana ʒ ij. of the roots of Angelica ʒ ʒ. the water of *Carduus Benedictus*, Angelica, and of fine Sugar q. s. make an Electuary in Lozenges, which must bee taken morning and evening untill the patient doth begin to wax strong.*An electuary.*R̄ of old Triacle, ʒ i. *Diamusci dulcis*, *latifcantis Gal.* ana ʒ ii. ʒ, conserve of Bugloss, Rosemary-flowers, ana ʒ ʒ, syr. *Buglossati* q. s.*A fomentation.*R̄ of the leaves of Betony, Sage, ana M iij. of Fumitory, *Epithymi*, Baulme, ana M i. of the roots of white Lillies, ʒ ii. of the flowers of *Stachas*, *Carduus benedictus*, Camomile, ana M i. ʒ, boyle these in an equall quantity of Wine and water, and wash the head with the straining, and the other being warme, must be put into a bag, and applyed neere unto the fundament, the heate must be preserved with warme clothes.*An Epitheme for the heart.*R̄ of the roots of Bugloss, Borage, ana ʒ ij. the divers kinds of *Diamusci dulcis*, *Latifcantis Gal.* ana ʒ iiij. the flowers of *Carduus Benedictus* M iij. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of Malmesie.*An oymment.*

R̄ of the oyle of Dill, Camomile, Lillies, ʒ i. ʒ, boyle Hyssop, Thyme and wilde Betony: adde to the straying of Beaver stone, ʒ i. ʒ, make an oymment for the hinder part of the head.

*An oymment.*R̄ of the oyle of Lillies, Elder, ana ʒ i. of Beaver stone, ʒ ij. *Euphorbi* ʒ i. *Aquevina* ʒ ʒ, mixe a little Waxe, and make hereof a soft oymment.

*An Appendix serving for the cure of the*  
**CATALEPSIS.**

**S**uch medicines as are moderately hot, and moyst, are requisite for the cure of this disease: the belly must be emptied by a Clyster, then with loud outeries, Ligatures, painful Frictions of the extreame parts the patient must be awakened. And for this purpose, sneezing medicines shall be prescribed: at that time also if necessity require, the patient shall be let blood; at the length with strengthening oyntments, and resolving, wee will endeavour to shake hands with the disease. The hinder part of the head chiefly shall be anointed: a bath of common oyle being made lukewarme, is good for the former purposes. When the patient is againe com. to himselfe, such medicines must be used as may make the humors obedient to nature, for the space of 4 or 5 dayes, then wee may drive them out of the body; and at the length prescribe such as may strengthen the body and consume the reliques; all which we may effect by these and the former medicines; but we will begin with such as have a resolving force, and by degrees proceed with stronger; at the first wee will rub the whole body with warme clothes. Viager, and other drying medicines are prohibited.

*A method serving for the cure of* **MANIA**  
 or **MADNES.**

**M**ANI 4. fury, or madnesse, is an inclination of melancholy to great fiercenesse and alienation of minde, without feaver, feare, or sadness: sometime, such as have this disease, rage like beasts for seeing that the humors offending are hot, it stirs up dotings; and as long as this humor is in



the body, madde men cannot but rage: herein doth madnesse differ from the phrensy; a Feaver is the compa-  
 uion of a phrensy; whereof madnesse is freed. Lastly, the  
 phrensy is caused by the distemper of the braine alone:  
 Madnesse is caused by the distemper of the inferiour parts,  
 and of the brain afterward. It doth differ from melancholy  
 herein, madnesse is caused by a hot distemper of the braine,  
 melancholy is caused by a cold distemper: besides, the melan-  
 cholick feare much and are sad: madde men doe banish  
 feare, and sadnes. In the Melancholique only imagination is  
 hurt: in mad men imagination and reason cannot be found.

*The part affected.*

The braine is affected, which doth appeare by the hurt  
 of the principall functions of the mind. Sometime the cause  
 of the braines trouble is in it selfe, sometime it doth pro-  
 ceed from the lower parts. For black choler, whereby  
 this evill is caused, is sometime caused by the heads distem-  
 per, sometime it doth arise from the body, and sometime  
 is generated in the fylmes which cover the heart. In a  
 word, madnesse is such a passion, that doth plainly de-  
 monstrate the action of the principall faculty to be depra-  
 ved, not taken away.

*Signes.*

They are now laughing; anon they are sad; sometime  
 (though but seldome) they are in great feare; on a sudden  
 they are rash, furious, crying out, and threatening wonders:  
 sometime they leape and skippe up and downe disorderly,  
 Another while they are so serious, that they hurt either  
 friend or foe, by blowes, bitings, and other injuries, and  
 expresse most savage manners. They have eyes grimme,  
 stout, and staring, and they are alwayes plotting some  
 mischief. Sometime they are so madde, that they doe  
 hurt themselves, and then they ought to bee bound. They  
 are very watchfull; and for the most part are not subject  
 to Feavers. Their eyes in time grow hollow; unusuall and  
 violent wrath is the forerunner of madnesse. Glisterings do  
 appeare

appeare before the eyes of madmen, and a certaine ringing in the eares. They are proner to Venery than before, and are very much troubled about worldly affaires; all which increase by degrees.

*The Causes.*

It doth arise from a hot distemper of the braine. Sometime it is caused by the presence of hot and biting humors, and of melancholy humors so much dried up, that it doth turne to black choler, and then they dote with feare, and are silent by fits, and if once they doe begin to speake they will scarce have done. It is sometime caused by yellow choler over-burnt, and then they are furious, like wild beasts, and withall are very strong, offering injury sometimes unto all they meete with. It is sometime caused by the abundance of boyling blood turned into black choler, which, if it doe get into the head, they doe commonly fall mad with laughter and singing. Sometime it is caused by immoderate watchings, care, and too much heating the braine.

*Prognostiques.*

Young men, and men of middle age, are most subject to this disease; dotings which come with laughing, are lesse dangerous, than such as come with study, and therefore more dangerous, because of their rashnesse. But of dotings that is most dangerous, which is caused by the over-burning of yellow choler. If moneths or hemroids runne, it is good. It is an ill signe, if the patient have no stomack. It is likewise no good signe, if ulcers arise in the face, and in *ano*, and in the feete.

*A method serving for the cure of the  
MANIA, or MADNES.*

The aire must bee temperate and somewhat inclined to moistnes: his diet must be liquid broths, & moistners of the body. viz. frumenty, the strained broth of Chickens, Hens, Partridges,



Partridges, such meates as doe breed wind and choler must be avoyded His drinke must be Barley-water, by no meanes wine, unless the originall of this disease did come by feare, or burnt melancholy, then the patient may be permitted to drinke a little quantity of this wine. Exercising the body moderately, is good; and it is expedient that hee sleepe more then is usuall; and this must bee procured by inward and outward medicines. If nature be deficient in casting the excrements out of the body, then must art bee used; for it is expedient that the patient be soluble. Such, with whom the patient is well acquainted, may be admitted into his company, but strangers, and they that have angered him, must not come in his sight.

*Preparers.*

Syrup of Violets, Fumitory, Water-lillies, *Acetosus Simplex*, syr. of Buglosse, Borage; syr. of Succory with *Rhabarb.* The water of Violets, Hops, Buglosse, Water-lillies, Succory, Endive, Sorrell.

*Emptiers.*

A veine shall bee opened, if the disease bee caused by superfluity of hot blood, whereof plenty shall bee taken away. The *Saphena* veine shall first bee opened, the next day the median shoul der veine, after this, a veine in the forehead, unless the disease be caused by burnt choler without fulnes of blood. Syrup of many infusions of Roses, *Confect. Hamceb. Diacatholicon, Disena, Nicholai, Hira logodii, Hiera piera, Diacolocynthii. Pillule Inde, de lapide Armeno,* Potion of Violets, Succory, Fumitory, Endive, Buglosse, Germander, flowers of Water-lillies; the greater cold seeds; Licorice, Raisins, *Epithymon, Manna, Cassia, Polipody, Sene, Mirobolani electui.* A Clyster of the leaves of Violets, Lettuce, water Mallowes, Mallowes the greater, cold seeds, oyle of Violets.

*Averters.*

The *Saphena* veine shall be opened first of all, as was declared before, Horse-leeches shall be applied to the fore-part of the head, and to the parts round about; means also must be used that the moneths may runne, and the *Hemroids* be opened.

An

An irrigation shall be made for the head, of Roses, juce of Knot-grasse, and Vineger: dip a cloth in these, and apply it unto the forepart of the head; the cloth must be often dipped in the liquor. A fomentation likewise for the head, with the decoction of the flowers of *Stachys*, Camomile, Violets, Roses, Lettuce-leaves, the heads of white Poppy, and some Vineger.

*Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Electuarium de gemmis*, *Diarrhodon abbatii*, *Diarrion sandal. manus Christi*, Conserve of Roses, Buglosse, water-Lillies, Borage, Violets, *Venus haire*. An Epitheme for the liver, of the water of Endive, Roses, Sorrell, seeds of Parslane, Camphire, Spikenard. An Epitheme for the heart, of the water of Buglosse, Roses, water-Lillies, Vineger, Camphire made into Trochisks. *Diamargaritum frigidum*. A bath of the decoction of Camomile-flowers, Mellilot, Violets; the leaves of Violets, Lettuce, Willow, Water-lillies, Mallows, Buglosse, the head shall herewith be washed as long as the Patient is in the bath. An oyntment for the back-bone, and brest, of the Oyle of water-Lillies, sweet Almonds, Roses, Violets. When the patient is come out of the bath, hee may use this oyntment. Cauterics must bee layed to the coronall seame.

*Diarrhodon*, with the syrup of water-lillies. An embrocation of the head of the seeds of Poppy, the flowers of water-lillies, Roses, Violets, Lettuce. An oyntment for the brow and temples, of the Oyle of Violets, Mandrake, as also womans Milke.

*A more particular method, serving for the cure of*  
MANIA or MADNES.

Rx of the leaves of Mallows, Lettuce, Violets, the flowers of Violets, Borage, Endive, ana M<sup>℥</sup> i. of Barley,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.

P

boyle

Repellers.

Strengtheners.

Procureers of  
sleep.



boyl these in flesh broth q. s. unto lb i. β. adde to the straying, *Hiera picra simplicis*, 3 ii. β, of new *Cassia* 3. of the oyle of Violets, 3 iij.

*A Julep.*

Rx the syr. of Endive, *Acetosi simplicis*, of Violets, Buglosse, ana 3 i. syr. of Fumitory, 3 β, the water of Endive, Buglosse, Violets, Borage, ana 3 iij. hereof give the patient in the morning 3 iij.

*A Potion.*

Rx of the roots of Buglosse, 3 i. β, the leaves of Endive, Succory, Fumitory, Hops, ana M i. β, flowers of Buglosse, Borage, Violets, ana M i. seeds of Melons, Cowcumbers, Gourd, ana 3 ii. β, *sena Alex. Polypodii quercini*, 3 i. *Epihy-mi*, 3 β. *rhebarb.* 3 i. β, of scraped Licorice, 3 iij. of Rayfins, the stones being taken out, 3 i. *Tamarindorum* 3 β, boyle these in water q. s. unto lb i. β, adde to the straying *Dia-sena*, 3 vj. of new *Cassia* 3 i. syr. of Roses 3 ii. the patient must take hereof 3 iij, every morning, untill five dayes be expired.

*A Potion.*

Rx *Confect. bamech* 3 ij. β, Electuary of the juyce of Roses 3 ij. *Diacatholici*, 3 iij. syr. of Violets, 3 i. the water of Violet and Buglosse, ana 3 i. β. Give this in the morning early.

*Pills.*

Rx *Pillularum de lapide lazuli, Armeno, Indarum*, ana 3 i. with the syr. of *Epihymon* q. s. make 7 or 8 pills hereof to be taken after the first sleepe.

*An electuary.*

Rx *Darrb d. abbatis* without muske, 3 iij. *Sp. Diarion sandal* 3 i. β, *Sacchari rosacei, syrupi violarum*, ana 3 i. β.

*Another.*

Rx *Sp. Diamargariti frigidi*, 3 ij. Conserve of Violets, Buglosse, ana 3 vi. conerve of Roses, 3 β, *Loboch* of Poppy, 3 iij β, syrup of Violets, of Apples, ana 3 i give unto the patient 3 β, two or three houres before dinner, or supper.

*An Oynment*

Rx of the oyle of Violets, of Roses, ana 3 i. oyle of sweet Almonds, of water Lillies, ana 3 β. anoynt the head with these, when the disease is but fresh, afterward the brest and backbone.

Rx of

R<sup>x</sup> of the water of Buglosse, Roses, water-Lillies, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. of Vineger,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . Sp. *Diatrion sandal. Diatragacanthi frigid.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. of Saffron  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , hereof make an Epitheme, wherewith the heart will be strengthned.

An Epitheme.

R<sup>x</sup> of the leaves of Lettuce, Violets, water-Lillies, Mal-lows, ana M iij. of the leaves of Willow, and Vines, the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ij. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb}$  i.  $\beta$ , and let the patient enter into this bath, after he hath been well purged: also the head must be moystned herewith, so that it be first shaved. When he comes out of the bath, he must be so layd in his bed, that he sweat not all.

A Bath.

R<sup>x</sup> of the leaves of Lettuce, Violets, Willows, the flowers of water-Lillies, Roses, ana M i.  $\beta$ , of the flowers of Camomile p. i. seeds of Lettuce,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of white Poppy,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , two Wheathers-heads: use this 4 or 5 times every day for the space of a weeke.

An Irrigation.

R<sup>x</sup> the syr. of Violets, Poppy, *Diasodii*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , water of Lettuce, *Pisane*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. give this at bed time.

A Potion procuring sleep.

R<sup>x</sup> of the oyle of Violets, Mandrake, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. dip a kercher herein, and apply it to the brow and temples.

An Oyntment

R<sup>x</sup> of the oyle of sweet Almonds, Camomile,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , oyle of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. make hereof an oyntment for the head. Young whelps and Chickens cut in two, or the lights of a Ramme being warme, may also bee applyed to the head. For these things doe strengthen the brain, and doe resolve, and moysten the reliques with their temperate heat.

Another.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the MANIA,  
or MADNES.

**F**irst of all the belly shall be emptied by a Clyster; and then a veine shall be opened, with great care. The hu-



mors likewise shall be made subject unto nature; if not, they must be expeld. In the meane time we may turne them aside with such medicines as doe bring down the moneths, and provoke Hemroids, which may also be affected if the *Sapbena-veine* be opened: at the length such medicines must be given, as may strengthen the brayne and heart, and disperse the reliques: all which wee may effect by these and the former medicines, so that particulars and universals be rightly sorted: if the former medicines will not prevail, an actuall or potentiall cautery must be made in the forepart of the head, where the coronall seam doth meet with the sagittall, and they must be made so deep, that the bone may appear: whereof a quantity must be taken away, and so it must be kept open for the space of a moneth. Though the other medicines fail, this is very seldome used in vain. The cure of *Mania* or Madnes doth herein differ from the cure of the Melancholy. For in the cure of Madnesse, especiall care must be had, that the sharpnesse of the humours may be mitigated: and this may be effected by moystners, and moderate coolers.

*A method serving for the knowledg of PHRENITIS  
or PHRENSY.*

**A** True Phrensie is an inflammation of the brain, or of the tylnes thereof, bringing with it a sharpe Feaver, dozing, and alienation of minde. It is a kinde of Madnesse both dreadfull and dangerous, because the disease is generated in that part which is the chiefe seat of the faculties of the soul, and because a true Phrensie hath his beginning from a false, therefore we will here treat of a false Phrensie. It is an alienation of mind with disquietnesse, and without an impostume of the braine; and it doth follow a Feaver caused by blood or choler. Dotings are not here so much observed, neither doe they vex and grieve so much,

as they doe that are posselt with a true Phrensie; and even as the Feaver doth increase or decrease, so this fit of Phrensie is increased or decreased, especially in the houre of the *crisis*, or conflict between nature and the disease: Sometime this fit doth come sooner then the Feaver, and then the Feaver doth increase, even as the disease doth, and by this meanes it will be more violent in the houre and day of the fit of Phrensie, then in the houre of quietnesse and rest; for in these Feavers, dry vapours get up into the brain, whereby the animall spirits are disquieted. Sometimes Impostumes are the causes of this disease; for from these, sore Feavers doe arise. This cannot absolutely be termed a disease, but rather the passion that doth follow the disease: And this is more frequent then a true Phrensie.

*The part affected.*

The parts affected are *Pia et dura mater*, as may appeare by the hurt of such functions as come from hence. Oftentimes it is caused in this, and then it is lesse dangerous. And there is a principall, and proper affection appertaining to this disease, whereby the patient is continually molested. This Phrensie never goes alone: the temperature of the patients body is too hot; and the disease too violent.

*Signes.*

There is a continuall and dry Feaver; and as they sleep very disquietly, so their watchings are more troublesome, whereby they are very much disquieted; they start out of their beds suddenly, they breathe by fits, seldome and vehement. The patients eys are red, dry, and in a manner withered, and more quicke-sighted then usually they were; yet of one of the eyes teares flow out, and the eye-veins swell with blood; the pulse is thick, quick,



and great, there is also doting and alienation of mind; for being asked a question, they do answer nothing to the purpose; and their memories being decayed, they never think of any thing they have spoken, or done, whereby they utter words without order and sense; they imagine strange things, and now they weep, anon they sing; sometime they cry out, another while they are fiercely desperate; the tongue is withered, rough, and black; they are very thirsty, they gather straws, and other trifles from the ground; their hands tremble, they breath deep, their urine is thinne and fiery, sometimes it is white and thinne, and then there is great danger at hand.

*The Causes.*

It is often caused by too much blood, and these are madde with laughter, yet they dote lesse, and are not so feaverous. But when it is caused by burnt choler, then are the patients impatient, and starke madde, and therefore they must needs be bound; phrenetiques by the reason of drynes are very strong. A Feaver is an unseparable companion of this disease.

*Prognostiques.*

It is a most sharpe, and dangerous disease, add speedily kills a man, if present remedy be not given. For all kind of phrenies are mortall, and doe breed in the place, wherein the souls principal part is resident; but such dotings which come with laughing, are lesse dangerous, then they that come by study; but that is thought to be worst of all, which is bred of burnt choler. If sleepe do appease doting, it is good, if otherwise, it is an ill signe. But continuall doting and waking is mortall.

A method serving for the cure of the  
PHRENSY.

**A** Temperate aire, and somewhat bright must be procured; no variety of pictures must remaine in his sight. His diet must be such as may moisten and cool the body, as *ptisana*. And as it is hurtfull for the patient too eat immoderately, in like manner it is hurtfull to be too long fasting: the one weakens the body, the other doth increase the disease. His Sallets may be of Lettuce, Mallows, Endive. In the declination of the disease, fishes that doe breed in stony places, and scaly fishes may be given. His drinke must be barley-water, whereunto it will be good to adde some syrup of Violets, Water-lillies, Roses. The decoction of Cinnamon shall sometime be prescribed. Inordinate motion must be avoided, and rest desired, yet frictions of the lower parts must bee used, especially when the disease is milder. Also sleepe must be procured by locall medicines, and such as are received in at the mouth: the excrements of the belly must be evacuated. For if they be kept in, they doe increase the disease. Perturbations of the mind are very offensive to this disease: wherefore such friends he best likes, must bee admitted to his presence, and sometime they must speake him faire, another while chide him.

A veine must be opened at the first if the patients strength will permit; in delay there is danger, neither is there any better means whereby this disease may be cured, then by the opening of a veine: in gentler phrensies the belly must first be evacuated, then the shoulder veine shall bee first opened; and then the *Cephalica*. If the first do not appeare, and when the matter rumes, a veine in the forehead shall be opened; and that it may be done aright, the neck must be tied with a scarfe, that the veine may rise, and appear: at the first gentler Clysters of the decoction of Mallows, Beet  
Violets,

*Empirics?*



Violets, Lettuce, Barley, seeds of Cowcombers, Gourd, *Cassia fistula*, the Electuary of the juice of Roses, *Diaprunum solutivum*, *Diacatholicon*, *Hiera picra*, Oyle of Violets, *Mel rosatum*, *Electuarium Indum*, of the juyce of Roses, Electuary of Roses, *Diaprunum solutivum*, *Syrupus Rosarum Laxativus*, *Pillul. Aggregat. Aurea*, *Trochisci de Rhabarb*, Rew, Cassia, *Manna mirabolani*, *Rhabarb* infused in Endive-water. The cholerick matter must be emptied in the beginning of the disease. In the mean space a gentle medicine that may turne away, must be prescribed, lest the humors seeme rather to bee stirred up then purged. Softning Clysters must also bee given every third day.

*Averters.*

A veine must be opened, as was said before, and gentle Clysters at the first, then stronger. The former purging medicine, for this, by turning aside the ill humors, is very prevalent, and will hinder an absolute *Erysipelas*. Cupping-glasses with scarification must bee applyed to the back-stone, the hinder part of the head, shoulders and buttocks, if the cubit-vein were not opened; if it were opened, then no scarification shall bee used: when the disease is at full height, Horse-leeches shall be set to the forehead, and temples of the patients. Bonds, Ligatures, and painfull frictions of the extreame parts, do serve to turne the humours from the head, because they stop, and pluck back the humors arising upward. The hands and feet may be washed with the decoction of Lettuce, Violets, Barley, the heads of Poppy. Also the head shall be moistned with this decoction by the meanes of a sponge.

*Repellers.*

*Oxyrrhodum* of Rose-water, Vineger, Oyle of Roses: dippe a cloth in these, and apply it to the forepart of the head and to the neck, and renew it often; and in time oyle of Cammomile shall be added. Rosewater, water of Plantaine, Vineger, Oyle of Roses. An irrigation must be made of the decoction of the seeds of white Poppy, of *Henbane* flowers, of water-Lillies, of Violets, Roses, the juice of

of Plantane and Lettuce. Dippe wooll in these, and lay it unto the fore-part of the head, and above the neck, for this thickens the humors, & makes them unfit for motion, because the passages of the body through which humors creepe to the braine, by the vertue of these Herbs are strunke together. The juice of Lettuce, Plantane, Roses, water-lillies, Gourds. An odour of the water of Plantane, Roses, Houssleek, Sorrell, Camphyre, flowers of Roses, water-lillies, a little quantity of costed bread. The oyntment of *Populea* lately or not long since made. At the first wee may use these medicines without any resolvers, but towards the increase, state, or declination of the disease, we may adde to them more or lesse, even as reason shall give directions. But as in the increase repulsters must be above repulsters; so in its declination resolvers must bee above repulsters; and when the disease is at the height, there must be anequal quantity of both. Therefore the continuall use of these mixed together must be avoided, unlesse they be mixed with skill; for they thicken the matters, and will not let them bee resolved: insomuch that by continuall use the Lethargy may bee procured: wherefore towards the state of the disease, we must abstaine from such medicines as drive back the humours, because it is then requisite that the passages be opened, and the humors discussed.

*Diamargaritum frigidum*, Beaver-stone, Syrup of Pomegranates, Roses, with the waters of Roses, Buglosse, Plantane: After meate give this, for thereby the force is better conveyed to the head. Conserve of Roses, and Violets, flowers of water-lillies and Buglosse; make an irrigation for the head of water-lillie flowers, Lettuce, Camomile, Poppy, Mellilot, *Althea*. A warme bath of fresh water is good. A Rams Lungs of Liver, or a Whelp, a Capon, a Hen, a Cat, and other such beast bowelled, shall becut along the midit of the backe-bone, and so they shall

Strengtheners.



Strengtheners  
of accidents.

shall be laid hot to the head; they are very good for the brain; Horse-leaches must be laid to the forehead and temples, but that the local medicines here prescribed, may with better success be ministred to the head, and that the excrements may the better be avoided, the patients head shall be shaved presently after meat, and when the fit of madnesse hath left him.

*Philonium Romanum*, *Philonium Aesum*, with the water of Lettuce, or syrup of Poppy, doth mightily provoke sleep: syr. of Violets, Poppy, with the water of Lettuce. Broths wherein the greater cold seeds, or one head of white Poppy, or the leaves of Lettuce are boyld. The juice of Violets, of Poppy. The oyntment made of the buds of black Poplar, Roses, of the oyle of Violets, water-lillies, Poppy, Mandrake, the seeds of Henbane, Saffron, Opium, Vinegar. A lotion of the Head, Face, Hands, and Feet, with the water wherein the leaves of Lettuce, Violets, the flowers of Roses, water-lillies, the seeds of white Poppy, Cowcumbers, Gourds, and Melons were boyled. Dip a sponge in the aforesaid decoction, and it will serve for an odour. A fomentation of the privy parts and *Perineum*, with the decoction of Pellitory of the wall, the roots of *Asarum*, and Parsely in wine. A Cataplasme also shall bee made of Pellitory of the wall, boyld with a little white-wine, whereunto adde the oyle of Scorpions: apply this to the privy parts and *Perineum*. Make an oyntment of the oyle of Scorpions and the oyntment of *Agrappa*, and annoynt the privy parts. Syrup of Violets, decoction of Barley. Fresh-water whereto syrup of the juice of Raspberries, and syrup of the juice of Citrons must bee added. In this disease there is great need of such things as may procure sleep, because the sick is wasted with continuall watchings: but lest the feeble heat which remaines be extinguished, hot things must be mingled with opiates: for it is to bee feared, that a lethargy may bee caused by too much use of them. The passage of the urine is sometimes stoppt, which

which evill may be cured by such medicines as follow.  
The latter sort of medicines doe quench a vehement thirst.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the PHRENSY.*

Rx of the foure cold cold seeds, the seeds of white Poppy  
ana ʒ ii. boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ iiij. of this decocti-  
on, adde of the syrup of Poppy, ʒ i. ʒ. a little of the best  
Vineger. Give this in the morning and at night.

Rx of the leaves of Lettuce, Mallows, Violets, Beete,  
Borage, ana M i. Barley, the tops of white Poppy, without  
seeds ʒ i. seeds of Cowcomber, Gourd, ana ʒ ʒ, boyle these  
in water q. s. unto ʒ i. adde to the straying oyle of Vio-  
lets ʒ iii. new Cassia, Diacarb. ana ʒ i. of Salt ʒ i.

Rx of the syrup of Pomegranates, Violets, *Acetosa simpl.*  
ana ʒ ii. let the patient take ʒ ii. with the decoction of Bar-  
ley, Violets, Prunes, Licorice, seeds of Lettuce, Gourd,  
whereunto also adde a little Rose-water, or Buglosse-wa-  
ter, also the syrup of Poppy may be added, that the patient  
may sleep well.

Rx of new Cassia, ʒ i. syr. rosarum solut. ʒ ʒ, of the waters  
of Buglosse, Borage, Violets, ana ʒ i.

Rx of the roots of Grasse, ʒ i. of the Cordiall flowers,  
p i. of the leaves of Sorrell, Endive, ana M i. ʒ, of Violets  
M i. the seeds of Gourds, Melons, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Rappins ʒ i.  
*Polypodii quercini*, ʒ ʒ, of the best *Rhabarb.* ʒ ii. *Tamarind.*  
ʒ iii. boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. adde unto the stray-  
ning of the syrup of manifold infusions of Roses, ʒ iii.

Rx *Electuarii de succo rosarum*, ʒ ii. *Diacarb.* ʒ ii. syrupe of  
Violets, of the manifold infusions of Roses, ana ʒ ʒ, of the  
decoction of Barley, ʒ iii.

Rx *Hierapere* ʒ i, *Diagridi* gr. vi. *salin gemma* ʒ ʒ, of  
Hony hardened with boyling, a small quantity.

Syrup.

A Clyster.

A draught.

A Potion.

A draught.

A Suppositor.



*An electuary.*

Rx of the conserve of Roses, Violets, ana  $\zeta$  v. conserve of Buglosse, water-lillies, *Diarragacanthi frigidi*.  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , *Diamargariti frigidi*.  $\zeta$  i. the seeds of Sorrell, Purslane, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. syrup of Violets, q. s. At some time of the day the patient must take  $\zeta$  i.

*An Epitheme.*

Rx of the waters of Buglosse, Roses, Violets, ana  $\zeta$  v. *Diatriion sandal*.  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , a little Saffron, and Vineger: apply this to the stomach.

*An Embroch.*

Rx of the flowers of Violets M  $\beta$ , of Roses, M i.  $\beta$ , the flowers of Lettuce, M ii.  $\beta$ , seeds of white Poppy, Lettuce, ana  $\zeta$  iii. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, then adde a little Vineger, and besprinkle the coronall seame with this decoction, but the head must be first shaved.

*A Liniment.*

Rx of the oyle of Roses  $\zeta$  ii, of Rose-water  $\zeta$  iiiii. of Vineger  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , dippe a cloth in these, and lay it unto the forehead.

*A Julep.*

Rx of the syrupe of Violets, of water-lillies, ana  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , of the syrupe of Poppy,  $\zeta$  i. of the decoction of Violets, of the heads of white Poppy,  $\zeta$  ix. Give this at bedtime.

*A Broth.*

Rx the Broth of a Hen boyld with the leaves of Lettuce, one or two of the heads of white Poppy. This is also good to procure sleepe. For the same purpose boyle Roses, Violets, the leaves of Woorm-wood, one head of white Poppy, *Opii*. gr. i.  $\zeta$  iii. of this must be drunke with the broth of a Capon.

*A Decoction.*

Rx of cleansed Barley, M iii. of the seeds of Cowcumbers,  $\zeta$  iiiii. of Poppy,  $\zeta$  i  $\beta$ , of Lettuce-leaves, M ii. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed. For the same purpose the feet must be washed with decoction of the heads of white Poppy, leaves of Violets, water-lillies, some Barley huld, and the roots of Mandrake. Of this decoction also an odour may be made.

*A mixture.*

Rx of the oyle of Roses,  $\zeta$  iii. of Vineger  $\zeta$  i. *Opii*. gr. ii. apply these unto the forehead & temples. Anoint also these places

places with the scumme, taken from the milke when it hath boyled: but the head must first be shaved. Or doe the like with the oyntment following.

R<sup>x</sup> of the oyntment of Roses, of Poplar ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. oyle of water-lillies, Mandrake, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Vineger  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. If all these cannot procure sleepe, adde unto the aforesaid *Opii gr.* iii. or iiii. of Saffron, *gr.* v. mixe these with care and diligence, and anoynt the temples and hinder part of the head therewith.

An Oyntment.

R<sup>x</sup> of the leaves of Lettuce, M ii. the flowers of Roses, M i. the seeds of white Poppy,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. f. unto a softnesse: adde hereto of wheatmeal  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. of the oyle of Violets, q. f.

A Cataplasme.

R<sup>x</sup> of the oyle of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of water-lillies,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Camomile, Poppy, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. some few drops of Vineger, of Waxe q. f. if the other oyntment will not prevaile, then use this.

An Oyntment

R<sup>x</sup> of Ectony, Fennell, Mallows, ana M i.  $\beta$ , the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Elder, ana M i. of Linseeds, Fennell, Fengreeke, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. f. untill the third part be consumed, wash the head with this, for when the disease doth begin to decline, this doth dissolve the reliques: Also a whelpe of a moneth old, cut in two parts, or a young Pigeon, or the bowels of a Ramme laid hot to the coronall seam. And when these doe begin to waxe cold Roses, and put them into the decoction of Camomile, and apply them as before: doe this often.

A Fomentation.

R<sup>x</sup> *Oxymellis squillit. syr. de duabus rad.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of the gumme of Prunes,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of the decoction of the fruit *Alkeengi*, roots of Parsley, Saxifrage  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i. A potion to provoke urine.

A Potion.



*An Appendix serving for the cure of the*  
PHRENSIE.

Seeing no good can be done against this disease, if it be grown to an Impostume, first a veine must be opened, that it increase not; for this is the presentest remedy, yet the belly must be brought downe by a Clyster. At that time also we must keep back humors and blood running to the head, with repelling medicines, and if opening a veine be for some cause omitted, we will apply Cupping-glasses with scarification, otherwise not. In conclusion, that the blood be not too hot (for it doth soon turne into choler) a cooling syrop shall be given, and also it shall be so mixed, that it may cause the patient to sleep. At the length with purging medicines we may expell the sharpe humours out of the body, when they have been first turned from the head with Ligatures, Frictions of the extreame parts, and washings. And by this meanes at the last we may strengthen the braine: all which we may effect by these and the former medicines, so that universals in due sort be joyned with particulars. Thirst also must be quenched, because this doth not a little trouble the patient, for this purpose give the patient 3 i. of the juice of Respis in a convenient decoction: Sleep also must be procured by art, and the urine must be provoked by medicines: with such medicines as are taken inwards, we must mixe such as may helpe the parts affected, as well as the disease.

*A method serving for the knowledge of CATARACTA  
or SUFFUSION.*

**C**ataracta, or suffusion is, when the sight by little and little is duld by a slymy humour frozen like Ice, and dropping out of the eyes of the patient: sometime it sticks so fast over the ball of the eye, or between the crySTALLINE humor, or the tunicle *Rhegois*, thereby hindering the sight of such things as do present themselves to our view. This humour is conveyed thither from the braine by the optick nerve, and oftentimes so slowly, that it cannot be perceived at the first. Sometime it is suddenly carried thither, and then if that humour stick close unto the ball of the eye, the outward shape of things cannot bee communicated unto the crySTALLINE humor, which is the principall instrument of seeing. In this disease, or cloud at the first there is said to be an imagination, or fancy, in the increase, a mist obscuring the eyes.

*The part affected*

Is the eye it selfe, and especially about the ball thereof, and sometime the cause doth come from it selfe, and then suffusion neither begins in both eyes, neither are they alike affected; for sometime one only eye is affected. But if it be caused by the default of the mouth of the stomach, then such things as are represented to the sight, appeare to both eyes alike, and then neither dimnesse, nor congealed slymy humour can be discerned: at that time chiefly doth the stomach cause this disease, when as it cannot digest the meats and nourishments formerly received. Again this may plainly demonstrate the fault to bee in the stomach, because after vomiting the paine of the eyes is asswaged; which is usuall in the time of *Crisis*, when as nature expels that which is hurtfull unto the body, or any part of the body.



body: these affections of the eyes doe not alwayes appear, for if the stomack can well and easily digest the nutriment, then no affections do molest the eyes. For when it is caused by the default of the stomack, as the stomack doth better or worse concoct, so the eyes paine is either decreased or increased, neither for many moneths can any such defect of the eye be discerned, for it is long in breeding.

*Signes.*

In the beginning of this disease, certaine fumes and spirits doe present themselves to the sight: other-while flies and Gnats, sometime darksome bodies, then againe shining with unstayed motion, are driven up and downe. Some imagine cob-webs, others thinke woollen threads are before their eyes. Sometimes round circles appeare about Candles, and such other unaccustomed sights present themselves to their eyes. Their sight by degrees waxeth dull even as the thin vapour, or humour doth thicken, or congeale; and then there is as it were a clowd before their eyes. Last of all, by greater congelation it is turned into a skin or Panicle, and then the *Pupilla* or eye-ball doth appear muddy, and darksome; in proceffe of time the eye doth appeare as if it were of the same colour with the sea; at the length this mischief is so far extended, that the patient is deprived of sight, which then is, when all the holes of the *Pupilla* are stopped; And yet the patient doth then see light, though but very little. If that humour bee spread before the *Pupilla*, and the parts round about it do remaine pure, the object of sight doth seeme to be full of holes. At the last this mischief increasing, the *Pupilla* doth send forth no light, and is turned unto whitenes; hereby the eyes of some are blue, others eyes are gray. This mischief for the greater part doth lighten but upon one eye, and being once fastned, will not easily be removed.

*The Causes.*

Cold and grosse humors falling upon the optick nerve,

or

or growing between the crySTALLINE humors, or the tunicle *Rbagois*, cause this disease by stopping the hole of the *Pupilla*, whereby the shapes of externall things which should be derived to the sights faculty, and are hindered by the means of obstruction, that they cannot be communicated to the crySTALLINE humour, which is the principall instrument of seeing.

*Prognostiques.*

Amongst the slighter suffusions, that is the worst of all, which is caused by grievous diseases, and great pain of the head: this evill may be cured at the first, but if it continues long, and the suffusion waxeth gray, the eye shall be deprived of sight. But the suffusion which is without brightnes, and is somewhat white of colour, will admit of no cure. Again if the suffusion be of a leaden color, or black, or very yellow, it can neither be cured by Physick or Needles. In like sort the eye wherein no hardned matter doth appear, is incurable, for though the eyes do seem to be cleare, and fair, yet they see nothing, and this is termed *gutta Serena*; also medicines are not available for that suffusion which hath changed the figure of the *Pupilla*. If the humor cometh to the consistence of a pannicle, there remains no other way for the cure of this, then by thrusting a needle through the *Cornea*; and it is expedient that the humors by congealing, at length become firm, for unlesse the needle may be put underneath the congealed humors, the cure is uncertaine; in five yeares if it hardned, and unfit for the needle, yet if it have been of long continuance, it cannot be cured. But if that which is congealed by rubbing be rent asunder, and doth not remain so long, but grows together againe, and is as a sad white colour, there is some hopes of the cure hereof.



A method serving for the cure of CATARACTA or  
SUFFUSION.

**T**He ayre must be hot and dry. The flesh of Hens, Capons, Pullets, Birds of Mountaines are good. Such things as moisten the body too much, are prohibited. Among pot-herbs, Fennell, Betony, Sage, *Serpillum*, Majoram, Penny-royall are wholesome: hee may drink the decoction of Cinnamon, honyed-water, but by no meanes wine. His exercise must be moderate, and his lower parts often rubbd; his sleep shorter then ordinary, the excrements of the belly must be answerable, perturbation of the mind, and other affections must be avoyded.

Preparers.

*Oxymel simplex*, *Mel rosatum*, *Syrupus Stachados*, Syrup of Hyssop, the water of Fennel, Betony, Hyssop, Majoram, Ey-bright.

Empiers.

The *Cephalica*-veine of that side the disease is, must be opened at the beginning thereof, if the body be full, otherwise not; because hereby the braine is too much coold; whereby plenty of excrements are generated. *Pillul. Aurea*, *Coccia*, de *agarico*. *Lucis majoris*, *Affaieret*, *Masticchina*, *Pillula sine quibus esse nolo*. *Hiera picra*, *Agaricus trochiscatum*. The patient must be often purged of this watery matter which doth cherish the disease.

Averters.

A vein must be opened in the forehead, and bleeding at the nose must be caused. A Clyster of the roots of Fennell, flowers of *Stachos*, Camomile, Mellilot, Centory the lesse, Betony, Anni-seed, Fennell-seed, *Colocynthis*, *Diacatholicon*, *Hiera Gal.* *Hiera diacol.* Oyle of Camomile, Lillies: Sope or bloud-suckers must be laid behind the patients eares; Or in stead of these, a cautery, Frictions and fomentes of the extreame parts with hot-water, as also painfull ligatures thereof: Apophlegmatismes, Masticatories of Cubebs, Fennell-seed, Mastick, Bastard Pellitory. Cupping-glasses with scarification must be applied to the hinder

der part of the head, sneezing medicines. *Sers* fastned to the neck will do much good. A cautery of *Cantharides*, Leaven; Pigeons dung shall be applyed behind the ear, rather than in the hinder part of the head: it shall be made in the coronall seam, because it is neerer to the eyes; and then let the humors runne many months.

A Collyrie with the water of Eye-bright, of Celandine, and Fennel, wherein some Hony, *Pompholix*, *Sagapenum* are dissolved. The conserve of Gall mingled with Honey will avail much; because Gall makes the humors more subtil. The water of Hony distilled. The gal of Swine, and Goats, dissolved in the juice of Fennell. *Sagapenum* dissolved in the water of Hony distilled, or in Rose-water: this may be used for many months. A lotion for the head, of the decoction of the leaves of Betony, Majoram, Worm-wood, Fennell, flowers of *Stechas* in lye. Mithridate, Triacle, *Diamargaritum solidum*, *Diagalanga*, *Diarrhod*. *Abbatin*, *Diamuscum dulce*, conserve of Buglosse. The decoction of *Guaiaecum* with capitall things, or in stead thereof, a decoction of Fennell, Eye-bright, Betony, Cloves, Cinnamon, Cubebs, Mace: drop the water of Hony in the patients eyes. A Collyrie of Hony, the juice of Fennell, Gall. The of stale infants by its drying faculty, doth cure moistnesse which doth nourish the disease. A lotion of the head with the decoction of Majoram, Rew, *Stechas*, Fennell, Betony, Eye-bright, Worm-wood. An oyntment of the gall of a Partridge, the juice of Fennell, Hony: a needle shall not be used, untill the matter be well hardned, and growne.

Strengtheners.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*  
CATARRACTA, or SUFFUSION.

Rx of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ii. of Betony, Eye-bright, Centory the lesse, Fennell, ana Mi.ß, seeds of Annise, and Fennell, ana ʒ iii. of Agarick, ʒ i. ʒ

R 2

cole-



*A Clyster.*

*colocynth.* ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i β, adde to the straying *benedicte laxative*, ʒ vi. oyl of Rew, Lillies, ana ʒ i β, of Salt, ʒ i. once a week before dinner administer this in a Clyster.

*A Julep.*

R the Syrup of Hyssop, ʒ β, syr. of *Stechas*, *Oxymelle simplicis*, *squl.* ana ʒ i, of the water of Eye-bright, Fennel, Betony, ana ʒ iiij. mixe these, and give the patient ʒ iiij. in the morning 4 or 5. dayes.

*Pills.*

R *Pillul. lucis*, *Cochiarum Aurearum*, ana ʒ i. of Agarick made into a Trochiske ʒ β, syr. of *Stechas* q. s. make hereof 8 or 9. Pills, take these after midnight in the pulp of an Apple.

*Pills.*

R *Hiera diacolocynth.* ʒ ii. β, of Agarick made into a Trochiske, ʒ i. of Nutmeg, gr. vj. of the juyce of Centory the lesse q. s. make hereof Pills, and give twice or thrice of them in a month.

*An Electuary.*

R of great Triacle, *aurea Alex.* ana ʒ i. of Nutmeg, Cinnamon, Clove, ana ʒ β, the seeds of Fennell, Ey-bright ana ʒ i β, conserve of Rosemary-flowers, ʒ i. β, syr. of *Stechas*, q. s. thrice in a week the patient may take ʒ i. 4 houres before dinner.

*A Fomentation*

R of the flowers of Camomile, Mij. β, the leaves of Mallows, *Althea*, ana M β, the seeds of Fennel, *Lini*, ana ʒ β, bruise these, and boyl them in water q. s. make a Fomentation hereof for the eye (before the collyries dropped in) with a sponge.

*Another.*

R the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Fennell, Betony, ana M i. seeds of Fennel, ʒ i. boyl these in water and wine q. s.

*A Collyrie.*

R of the decoction of Celendine, Betony, Roses, Tormentill, ana ʒ ii. of the juice of Fennell, Eye-bright, ana ʒ iiij. of Myrrhe ʒ i. *Mellis despumati* q. s. make hereof a Collyrie: sharp Collyrie must be laid to the eye-lids.

*A Collyrie.*

R of the powder of Swallows heads, ʒ β, the gall of a Pike, ʒ ii. *Pampholici*, ʒ i. β, of Myrrh, ʒ β, of the decoction of Tormentill, Fennell, ʒ ii. of distilled Honey q. s.

R of

R<sup>x</sup> of the water of Hony distilled certain ounces, of Sugar-candy & Myrrhe a little, drop a little of this into the eye.

R<sup>x</sup> of Turpentine,  $\text{z ii. } \beta$ , Sulfur<sup>us</sup> vivi  $\text{z iiii. } \beta$ , Mell<sup>is</sup> rosati,  $\text{z vi.}$  of Salt,  $\text{z iiii.}$  of the juice of Fennell, the urine of Infants Ib. i. distill these for a Collyrie. If the eye be pained with the Collyrie, mitigate the pain with the white of an egge beaten, or womans milke, or Rose-water.

R<sup>x</sup> of the water of Fennell, Eye-bright, ana  $\text{z iiii.}$  Virgoli albi  $\text{z ii.}$  Aes,  $\text{z i.}$

R<sup>x</sup> of Centory the lesse, Majoram, Betony, Worm-wood ana M ii. of Fennel, M  $\beta$ , of the flowers of Stachas, M i. twb Nutmegs: boyl these in an equall quantity of wine and water; wash the head herewith.

An Appendix serving for the cure of CATARRACTA or SUFFUSION.

**T**He superfluity of humors must be expelled by a Clyster, the next day a veine shall be opened, if the body be full, and then the offending humors shall be made subject to nature, and at the length driven out by purging medicines, which must often be renewed. A cautery must be made of  $\text{z iiii.}$  of Leaven, of *Cambarides* the head and wings being cut off  $\text{z vi.}$  this must bee applyed to the coronall seam, or behind the eares. Also Figs with Hony may be laid to these places, and then blisters being opened must run. A cautery behind the eare is best: or in stead of this, a seaton may be set upon the neck, then shall the matter be turned away with Ligatures of the extreame parts, sneezing medicines, Errhins, Friction, Apophlegmatismes, Clysters, and sharp suppositors: and lastly, such medicines as will strengthen the head and sight, and dissolve the reliques must bee prescribed, but milder medicines must first be used: for by this meanes the body will the better indure stronger. Such also must be used, which doe allay the heat of the eyes. And seeing that *Suffusion* may be

R 3

caused

Another.

Another.

A Lotion.



caused by consent of the stomach, therefore it is requisite that the stomach be emptied of these crudities. But if the disease be so much increased, that milks do cloud the eyes, then both head and stomach must be purged; then digesters and discussers of reliques which offend the eyes, may be given in collyries. And it shall likewise be expedient to raise a cautery in the hinder part of the head, to keep the humors from running to the eyes, for else the eye would be inflamed. That suffusion which is caused by the default of the stomach, is often cured by a vomit, but care must be had that it be not done when the head is full, lest the matter get into the Optick Nerves. *Pillul. mastich.* are very good, if they be often used. But if the suffusion be at an end, the humor which is before the *Papilla*, must be thrust back with a needle unto the little corner of the eye: also when this is to be done, the humor must be of a meane consistence, for if it be liquid, the needle will not prevaile, and again if it be too thick, the tunicle will sooner be rent, than that can be taken away, and besides, the patient will be put unto great pain.

*A method serving for the knowledge of* OPTHALMIA  
*or Inflammation of the eyes.*

**O**phthalmia is an inflammation of the Tunicle or Membrane growing close unto the eye, spread over all the membrane from the corners of the eyes. This evill oft takes it beginning from the *Pericranium*, from whence veines are conveyed to the eyes thorow the forehead, and temples.

*The part affected.*

It is chiefly the eye, and chiefly the Tunicle growing next the eye, which doth manifestly appear to be affected, because the sight of the eye is offended, and the tunicles near adjoining.

*Signes.*

*Signes.*

There commeth withall a tumor of the eye, rednet, and a loading paine; and it oftentimes so swelleth, that the tunicle, and the parts neer adjoyning are sore stretched; sometime the eye is swollen, to the cheeks, and store of teares fall from them caused by vehement pain, and pricking of the eye, which doth sometime accompany this disease. Such thinne humors do demonstrate from whence this disease did take its beginniug, then doth follow filth, which doth stick in the corner of the eye; and when this filth by degrees grows so thick, that it doth as it were glew the eyes together, then is not only the disease increased, but also it is at full height. In this disease also the arteries about the eye do beat strongly; and the small veines which before did lurke in the white of the eye, are now swollen, and easy to be seen, and that part which was wont to be white, is now red, the affect is answerable to the signs all manner of wayes.

*The Causes.*

There be three causes of this disease: the first by fulnes and great store of blood, wherewith the membrane growing close unto the eye, is filled and stretched. Then the temples beat much, and extreame paine is about the eye. The veines seem broad, the face and tunicle next unto the eye looke red, and the eye-lids are very often closed. Teares gush out of the eyes, which are neither sharp, nor biting. Age, diet, temperatue, the season of the year, the region hot and moyst may cause this disease. All the parts about the eye, as well as the tunicle, are red. If it be caused by phlegmatick blood, these parts are not so stretched. And as it is often caused by blood, so it is often caused by thinne and sharp choler running from the temples and corner veins, secretly into the eyes veins, and then such hot and biting tears gush out of the eyes, that the next parts seem also burnt, and are sometime exulcerate. Dry and rough ex-

crements



crements are gathered about the corners of the eyes. Age, season of the year, a cholerick temperament are sufficient witnesses of these humours, if the patients former diet did breed sharpe humours. Sometimes, though but seldome, it is caused by flatuous spirits, and ventosities; and then the next tunicle is so stretched, that it oft seems to burst, whereby it remains in great pain; and then only small tears run out of the eye; neither is there such a heaviness of the eye, or heat, or gnawing, although rednes doe appeare.

*Prognostiques.*

*Ophthalmia*, oftentimes destroyeth the *uvea*, when as the *Cornea* tunicle is burst by corrosion, or putrefaction, if the disease do last long, and the gnawing matter doth still keep its course toward the eye. *Ophthalmia*, which doth come from the inward tunicles, and from the brain, is worse then that which cometh from the pannicle covering the *Cranium*; and the greater the store of teares be that run, and the sharper they be, the sooner is *Ophthalmia* at his height. But the *Pupilla* is in danger of being exulcerated, if the tears that flow from the eyes be salt and hot. There is danger of blindness, if *Ophthalmia* cause continuall pain. If the patient be loose of body, it is a good sign, also a great dry swelling with little pain is none of the worst signs. But if the humor be great, and dry, and with much pain, the eye is in danger of being exulcerated.

*A method serving for the cure of OPTHALMIA  
or INFLAMMATION.*

**T**He ayr must be cold, dry, and obscure, his meat somewhat cooling, and little nourishing, and he must take but a small quantity in the first days of the cure. His drink must be Barley water, motion must be avoyded, and rest permitted, his sleep must be longer then ordinary, for it doth assuage paine, and hinder the stirring of hu-

humors. The belly must bee evacuated by art or nature. Perturbations of the mind must be avoyded.

*Syrupus rosatus, de rosis siccis.* Syr. of Violets, Pomegranates, Sorrell, water-lillies, *Acetosus simplex*. The water of Sorrell, Endive, Plantane, Roses, and Violets.

Syrup of manifold infusions of Roses, *Diaprunum simplex*, *Diacath Electuarium de succo rosarum*, *Pillule Aureae*, *Aggregari-ve*, *Lucis*, *Hierapiera*. *Hiera Diacolocynth*. *Tamarindi*, *Myrabolani*, *Rhabarb*, *Manna*, *Cassia*, *Diaphanicon*, *Pillule Cocciae*, *Alephangine*, *Hierapiera*, *Agarici*, *Feride*. First let the head veine of the same side be opened; if the body be full, and the affect be great, plenty of blood shall be taken away: for by opening of a veine, this evill for the most part is rooted out, yet if choler more then any other humour doth abound, so much blood must not be taken away, as if the disease were caused by blood, but we wil affect the rest with altering and emptying medicines. Stronger medicines must bee avoyded; lest the humors being stirred up therewith, should runne unto the eye. The former medicines shall bee used if the blood be cholerick: and the latter if it be watery or flegmatick.

The fore-head veine must be opened. A Clyster, a suppositor, friction, ligatures, lotions of the feet, Shoulders, Armes, Hips, and Legs, must be used: Cupping-glasses with scarification must bee applied to the Shoulders, Neck, upper part of the Armes, and beginning of the neck. Horse-leeches must be laid to the veines of the fore-head, or behind the eares, if opening of a veine for some cause be omitted. A cautery must be made in the coronall seame, the haire being first shaved. A garzarisa, a masticatory, a seaton by taking hold of the skin of the Neck, with the Fingers, and a needle having a great thread shall bee thrust through, and the excrements of the head shall run forty dayes like a Fountain, sometime drawing the seaton up and downe; or the skin must be pinched with pincers having two holes, and the neck bee bored with a hot Iron, then a needle shall bee

S

put

Preparers.

Emptiers.

Averters.



*Averters.*

put into this hole, and a thick twist of silke drawn after it, that it rots not too suddainly; this silke must remain in the hole, and bee moved to and fro twice or thrice every day.

A foment of warme water wherein were boyled Roses, Violets, flowers of water-lillies, the leaves and Roots of Plantane, the seeds of white Poppy, Myrtill, Roots of Mandrake, when the disease begins to increase, the leaves of Mallows, Camomile, and Mellilot must be added; and when it is at its full height, the seeds of Fengreeke may be added. Rose-water may be also dropped in the patients eye. A Collyrie of *tragacanth*, *Pempholix*, Gumme Arabick, Mastick, bole-Armoniack, red Corall, whereunto *Opium* may bee added (if the disease be not mastered by those medicines) for this stayeth the flux of humors. The liquor of an Egge mixed with womans Milke, may bee applyed to the eyes; or else the liquor of an Egge mixed with the decoction of white Poppy, or with Rose-water and womans Milke. The water of Roses, night-shade, Plantane, wherein the seeds of Poppy must be boyled, with which the liquor of the white of an Egge well beaten shall bee mingled. The white trochisks of *Rasi* dissolved in Rose-water, if the paine be great, are very good. A Cataplasme of Poppy heads, Roses, the flowers of wild Pomegranates, Night-shade, Plantane, the rinds of Pomegranates, Bole-Armoniack, *Sanguinis Draconis*, must be applyed to the forehead and temples, with the yolk of an Egge. A playster of beane-flowers, Lin-seed, Fen-greeke, Vineger, the white of an Egge must be laid to the brow. If the humours runne through the veines and arteries without the skull, such as are too astringent must not bee used about the eyes, for thereby the matter may be driven back into the hollownes of the eyes and sinews, & so bring a continual catarract and blindnes; but this is more to be feared, if the matter runne through the veines when hereby they congeale the matter about the optick nerves more strongly in the *Cranium*.

Such

Such as bind much, shall be applyed rather to the circle of the eye, or else to the forehead and temples, and by no meanes upon the part affected; if the paine be great, these shall bee renewed twice or thrice every day; and such medicines as may dull the parts, are not requisite for the cure of this disease, because they doe offend the sight. When the disease doth begin to increase, resolving medicines shall bee mingled with repellers, and the more the disease doth increase, the quantity of these medicines shall increase.

*Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, a decoction of *China* roots. The water of Fennill, dissolve a little quantity of Aloes, and it is very good. Womans-milke, or Rosewater, wherein *Sarcocolla* is dissolved. A Collyrie of the water of Eye-bright, Fennill, Roses, *Pompholix*, aloes: a Fomentation of the decoction of the flowers of Mellilot, the seeds of Fengreeke washed is a very good medicine. Fengreek washed twice or thrice in hot water, and then boyld unto the thicknesse of Hony. Also an Egge laid hot unto the eye, when as it is sod somewhat hard

Strengtheners.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
OPHTHALMIA, or INFLAM-  
MATION.

Rx of the roots of Fennill  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Barley, M ij. leaves of Mallows, Mercury, Violets, ana M i.  $\beta$ . flowers of Camemile, Mellilot, ana M i. seeds of Cowcumbers, Melons, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb}$  i  $\beta$ , adde to the straying of the Electuary of the juyce of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. of the oyle of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

A Clyster.

Rx *Oxymellis simp.* Syr. *Siccardos*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Mellis rosati* strained  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , the water of Fennill, Rosemary, Majoram, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

A Julep.



## A Potion.

Rx of new *Cassia* ʒi. Eleſtuary of the iuyce of Roſes, ʒ i. β, ſyr. of many infuſions of Roſes, ʒi. the water of Lettuce, Vi-  
olets, ana ʒ i. β.

## Pills.

Rx *Pillul. ſine quibus eſſo nolo*, *cochiarum*, ʒ i. *Pillul. lucis*, ʒ i. β, of the beſt rubarb, ʒ β, *Diagridii* gr. iiij. ſyr. *Stachados* q. ſ. Give theſe after the firſt ſleep.

## Pills.

Rx *Maſſe pillul. de hiera cum Agarico*, ʒ β, *Pillularum lucis* ʒ ij. *Diagridii*, gr. ij. ſyr. *Stachados*, and water of Eye-  
bright q. ſ. make hereof 6 or 7 pills.

## A mixture.

*Diamargaiti frigidi*, ʒ β, *Diamagacanthi frigidi*, ʒ v. ſyr. *de roſis ſpecis violarum*, ana ʒ i.

## Another.

Rx of Roſe-water, ʒ iiij. *Mucilaginis Fenigraci*. ʒ β, of the white of an Egge beaten, ʒ ij. β, Womans milk, ʒ i. mixe theſe, and lay them about the eyes. This medicine is good in the beginning of the diſeaſe, for it doth not onely miti-  
gate the paine, but alſo ſtop and reſiſt the violent force of the humors.

## An Irrigation

Rx of Roſe-water, of the decoction of white Poppy, ana ʒ j. of the white of an Egge diſſolved in water ʒ i. of Camphire, Saffron, ana gr. iiij. *Opii*, (if the paine be great) gr. i. mixe theſe, and drop them into the eye, and then waſh it with the decoction of Mellilot.

## A Cataplaſm.

Rx of the pulpe of a ſweet and ripe Apple roſted in Cin-  
ders, ʒ iiij. of Camphire, ʒ i. β. Saffron, ʒ β, of Roſe-water, Womans milke, q. ſ. this may be uſed when the eye indures extream pain.

## A water.

Rx of Maſtick, *Olibanum*, ana q. ſ. diſſolve them in the white of an Egge, it is good againſt the humors, running unto the eyes and teeth, apply them to the Temples.

## An Emplayſter.

Rx of Womans-milk ʒ ij. the yolkes of three Egges, of the flowers of the ſeeds of *Linus*, ʒ β, oyle of Roſes, ʒ i. mixe theſe together, apply it in the beginning, it aſſwageth paine wonderfully.

## Another.

Rx of the flower of Barley, *Frankincenſe*, *Olibanum*, ana q. ſ. this doth hinder the falling down of teares into the eyes.

## Another.

Rx of Frankincenſe, the flowers of Pomegranates, *ſanguinis*

*guinis draconis*, Bole Armoniack ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the white of an Egge q.f. to incorporate the aforesaid; when they are to be used, dissolve them in Vineger, q.f. wherein Roses, Mastick, *Olibanum*, and red Sanders have beene boyled, and apply these made into a playster to the forehead, and temples.

Rx of Bole Armoniack, Mastick, *Sanguinis draconis*, Barley-flower ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of red Roses, M i. the white of one or two Eggs, oyle of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , a little Vineger. Apply this to the forehead and temples, if the humors run through the veines without the head, which for the most part happens.

Rx of Mastick, Frankincense, Myrrh, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Bole Armoniack, of Beane-flower, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Saffron,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. with a little oyle of Roses, Vineger, and the white of an Egge, dip a wet wollen, or fine cloth herein, and apply it to the forehead.

Rx of the roots of Mandrake  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. leaves of Violets, of the Black-berry-bush, Willow, ana M i. of Roses, p i. of white Poppy,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the seeds of Flebane, Quinces, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q.f. untill the third part bee consumed: this may be used in the beginning, but when the disease doth increase, adde to the former the leaves of Mallowes, *Althea*, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Fengreek, Linsted, *Sarcocolla*, and increase these latter still as the disease doth increase.

Rx *Tutia præparata*, and beaten into very fine powder,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Camphire gr. x ij. searce these together in a fine cloth. Wet them in  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. of Rose-water, and Wine; two or three drops are sufficient for one time.

Rx Barley-meale,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij of Saffron,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of the water of Roses, the whites of Egges, q. Clay this softly about the eye, it doth much help the inflammation, rednesse, and paine of the eyes.

Rx of Womansmilke warme, the decoction of white Poppy, the white of Egges beaten, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , this stayes the flux of humors, in the beginning, it doth assuage the paine, and induce sleep.

A Cataplasma.

A Frontlet.

A Fomentation.

A Collyrie.

An Emplaster.

A Fomentation.



A Collyrie.

Rx Collyrii albi, ʒ β, Mucilaginis Psyllii, ʒ iij. of Womans-milk, ʒ iij. mixe these, and rub them well about on a painters It one, adding thereto the white of an Egge beaten, ʒ i.

Another.

Rx of Rose-water, ʒ iij. of Eye-bright, ʒ i. Mucilaginis Feni-graci, ʒ ij. β. of Camphire, ʒ i. a little quantity of the white of an Egge, Opii gr. i. Grind these well on a painters stone before the third day, no Collyrie shall be dropped into the eyes.

Another.

Rx of the white of an Egge dissolved in water, ʒ ij. β. of Womans-milk, ʒ iij. the juyce of Cammomile, Rosewater, ana ʒ i. Opii, gr. i. if necessity require, drop it into the eye, but afterward dip a soft linnen cloth therein, and bind it upon the eye: This must be now and then renewed.

A Fomentation.

Rx of the flowers of Mellilot, M iij. Fengreek grossely beaten ʒ iij. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed. Make a Fomentation for the eye, which must be used often every day, with a sponge in the warme liquor; it dispelleth the humor much, without any offence.

A Collyrie.

Rx Collyrii Rubri, ʒ i. β. dissolve it in womans-milke, and drop it into the eye; at the length boyl the seeds of Fengreek in common water, (but the seeds must be very cleane washed that the small sand may be taken away) then wash the eye with the straying, or dip a sponge in the liquor, and sometimes moisten the eye therewith, if by reason of the sharpnesse of the humors, there be any danger of exulceration.

Another.

Rx of the seeds of Fengreek well beaten, ʒ ij. the flowers of Mellilot, M ij. boyle these in water q. s. untill they be soft, use this as the former. Likewise seeth an Egge somewhat hard, and lay it hot unto the eye, for beside that it doth concoct and digest the humors, it doth also take away rednesse.

An Emplaster.

Rx of the crumme of white bread ʒ i. moisten this in Rosewater, adde to this of sweet Apples, ʒ ii. of Womans-milk, q. s.

An appendix serving for the cure of the  
OPHTHALMIA or IN-  
FLAMMATION.

**F**irst the belly must be evacuated with a Clyster; the second day a veine shall be opened. Then such medicines as may drive back the matter running unto the eye, shall be applied unto the forehead, and dropped into the eye, especially when the disease is fresh. In the mean time we must endeavour to make the grosse and windy humors obedient to nature. When wee have effected this, wee will purge the body of them, and if they be so sharpe that they threaten to eate into the eye without the use of preparing medicines, wee will empty the body of them, at the length with frictions, Clysters, and lotions we will turn back the humor running unto the eye. The fift day wee will mixe such, as may resolve the humours, with such medicines as drive them back from the eye, for then the disease doth begin to increase, but first wash away all the scurfe from the eye with Rose-water, and then wee may proceed unto such as doe digest the humours: all which may be effected by these, and the former medicines, so that universals and particulars be rightly applyed. If the former medicines can nothing prevaile, runne a Silke thread twisted through the flesh in the hinder part of the head, so that it may sometime be drawne up and downe. If inflammation be caused by the paine in the head, first this paine must be taken away, for this paine doth stirre up the humour, and thereby caute the disease. If inflammation be caused by a blow, wash it over with Rose-water, and the white of an Egge beaten together, which is excellent good presently after the beginning if the inflammation be not great, it will be sufficient to wash it with Rose-water, the watter of the white of Egges, womans milke, *Psyllii mucilaginis*. Dip a linnen cloth in these, and drop them into the eye, as also lay it unto the eye.

These



these medicines shall be often renewed every day when the disease is at the height, some *Sarcocolla* in the increase of the disease must bee dissolved in womans Milke: for this doth both digest the humours, and drive them back from the eye.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the* DIFFICULTY *of HEARING.*

**S**uch men are said to bee dull of hearing, who cannot heare a low voyce, and scarce understand loud voyces; such men as these wee say are deafe: therefore thicknesse of hearing and deafnesse differ in greatnesse onely.

*The part affected.*

The eares are chiefly affected. Sometime the cause of this affect is in it selfe, when as the chiefe instruments of hearing are hurt. Sometime it is caused by accident when as the braine, or the nerve, through which this faculty is conveyed, is by some meanes offended. If it happens through some hurt from the braine, then beside the brain the other senses suffer. This disease is an affection which shows the faculty of hearing either to be diminished, or taken away. This affection follows the disease at all times.

*The Signes.*

This disease is knowne by the patients complaints and answers.

*The Causes.*

Oftentimes it is caused by a cold distemper of the braine, or from the instrument of hearing: oftentimes it is caused by grosse and cold humours thrust into the eares, and there fastned; for such humours do amaze the senses, with their functions, which the dulnesse of the head, and of the part affected doe plainly demonstrate; also the other senses have hereby been hindred, also cholerick blood ascending upward, doth stop the passage of hearing, because great store thereof falleth upon the chief instrument of hearing, which doth often happen in the time of the *Crisis* in acute Feavers.

It is also caused from much filth in the crooked passages of the ear, from a *Schirrbus*, thick skin about the place, or fleshy bunch, by an ulcer, impostume, and some other outward causes. Also hot vapors in great plenty get up to the head and eares, from the bowels, and stomack, whereby though the sense of hearing remaine perfect, yet the patient doth not heare very well: this is incident unto many, but especially unto such who have a foule body: and even as in the suffusion caused by superfluity of excrements in the lower parts, the patients see not very well; so is it with hearing: the windy spirits do cause great paine by stretching the membranes to get out. Also these are the signes of this disease: a great sounding in the eare, and stuffing thereof without either heate or heaviness.

*Prognostiques.*

Difficulty of hearing is much suspected, especially if it do slowly increase, because in proceſſe of time it doth bring with it a perfect deafnes, but that deafnes that is either absolute from the birth, or afterward, is incurable. And that which is not absolute, if it be of long continuance, wil hardly, or not at all be cured; but that which is caused by grosse humors, if it be neither absolute, nor of long continuance, is curable, deafnes also caused by choler, is cured by such things as draw down choler; and sometimes of its own accord it comes down; if deafnes caused by a blow, remaine many moneths, it is incurable, especially if the sinews which appertain to hearing, be dissolved. Deafnes also caused by a secret impostume hardened within the eare, is incurable.

*A method serving for the cure of the*

**DIFFICULTY of HEARING.**

**T**He Aire must be hot, and dry, he must also use slender diet, and sometime suffer hunger, such meats as doe breed grosse nourishments and vapors, as cheefe, pulse, and fruits,

T



fruits must bee avoided; and his meate may bee seasoned with anni-seeds, Cummin, Carrowayes, and Parsly. His drinke must be small wine and old. He must moderately exercise himselfe, and his bell must be kept loose by Art, or nature.

Preparers.

*Oxymel. squilliticum*, *syc. Stachados*, the water of Elder, Betony, Baulme. The syrup of Violets, water-lillies, Emdive. The water of Sorrel, Buglosse, Succory: when it is caused by grosse and cold humors, those in the first place shall be used; if by hot humors, the latter, and so purging medicines shall be chosen.

Empriers.

The shoulder-veine of the same side shall be opened. The Electuary of manifold infusions of Roses, *Pillule auree*, *Affieret*, *Diapha*, Rubarb, new *Cassia*; the water of Emdive, water-lillies, *Pillul. cochia*, *Arabica*, de *Agarico. Arabic. Diacatholicum Indum majus. Hiera Gal. Agaricus trochiscatus*. Furgers must often be renewed, when as it is caused by grosse and cold humors.

Averters.

A veine mu't bee opened, Apophlegmatismes, of *Pyrethrum*, Maltick, and Peper, tye these in a fine linnen cloth, and let them be chewed every day: Errhines of Mustard-seed, *Pyrethrum*, the juyce of Majoram, with white Wine. A Gargarisme of the decoction of *Stachas*-flowers, Mustard-seed, Origan, Calamint, *Oxymel. squilliticum*: a sneezing-powder must bee made of Ginger, *Pyrethrum*, white pepper.

Strengbners.

*Dianthuscum dulce*, Triacle, conserve of Rosmary-flowers, of *Stachas*, a decoction of *Guaiacum* wood, Honey, wherein white Hellebore, or Beaver-stone is soked; and drop two drops into the eare. The juyce of Rew mixed with Honey. The decoction of *Stachas*, Origan, Majoram, Worm-wood, wilde Mints, the vapor of these shall bee taken into the eare with a tunnell. The eares must also bee fomented with the vapor of Vineger. Oyle of *Petroleum*, bitter Almonds, of Nard, the juyce of an Onyon; one drop of these luke-warme must bee dropped into the eare, morning

ning and evening. Oyle of Bay-berries, wherein some *Aristolochia* hath been dissolved. A naturall bath, the Electuary of *Diatrion sandal*. Conserve of Roses, Buglosse, oyle of water Lillies, Roses, Violets, bitter Almonds, the white of an Egge, with Womans Milke; one or two drops must bee put into the eare. If this disease be caused by grosse humors, wee may use the former: if by hot humors, the latter; but we must not exceed the quantity of a drop or two at a time.

A more particular method, serving for the cure of the  
DIFFICULTY of HEARING.

Rx syr. *Stachados*, ℥iij. *Oxymellis squillitici*, ℥i. the water of Betony, Hyssop, Majoram, ana ℥iij. Give of this ℥iij. in the morning for the space of sixe or seven dayes.

Rx *Disturbith* with Rubarb, *Electuarii Indi majoris*, ana ℥iij. ℞. syr. *Stachados*, ℥j. water of Betony, ℥iij.

Rx *Pilul. Cochiarum*, sine quibus esse nolo, ana ℥i. ℞. *Trochisci albandal*, gr. vi. with the syrup of *Stachados*, make hereof 7. Pills.

Rx *Pilul. assueret*, sine quibus esse nolo, ℥i. *Cochiarum*, ℥j. ℞. syr. *Stachados* q.s. Give these after the first sleepe.

Rx of the best Mithridate, ℥i. of triacle ℥i. Give this after the Pills.

Rx of Staves-acre, bastard Pellitory, Mustard-seed, ℥i ℞. the juce of sweet Majoram, ℥iii.

Rx of bastard Pellitory, Mustard, Pepper, ana ℥iiii. of Mastick, ℥vi. An apophlegmatisme.

Rx of white Hellebore, gr. xii. of Ginger, bastard Pellitory, ℥i ℞. powder these and mixe them.

Rx the leaves of Calamint, Origan, Majoram, flowers of *Stachados*, ana Mi. of bastard Pellitory, Mustard, ℥i ℞. boyle these in water q.s. untill the third part be consumed; adde to the straining *Oxymellis squillitici*, ℥ii. ℞.

Rx of the pulpe of Quinces, ℥vi. of the best Cinamon, ℥i ℞. of

A Julep.

A purging  
portion.  
Fills.

Pills.

An Antidote.

An Errhine.

A Sternu-  
tatory.  
A Gargarism.

An Electu-  
ary.



To drop in-  
to the Eare.

of Annise, Fennell, and Coriander-seeds ʒ ij. *Electuarii anacardini* ʒ ij. ʒ. *Syr. Stachados* q. s. use this after meate.

Rx the oyle of bitter Almonds, Bayes, Beaver-stone, ana ʒ ij. of Roses, ʒ i. of white Hellebore, gr. i. of Wine-vineger ʒ ʒ, boyle them together in an yron-pan, untill the Vineger be consumed, put one drop hereof into the eare, and stoppe the holes with wooll. Or this.

Another.

Rx of the oyle of Nard, bitter Almond, ana ʒ i. of the juyce of an Onyon, ʒ i. ʒ. of Beaver-stone, ʒ i. Drop this into the eare.

Another.

A Cata-  
plasm.

Rx of the oyle of Almonds, Camomile, Roses, ana ʒ ʒ. *Panis Porcini* (Hogs-bread, an herbe so called) ʒ i. ʒ. boyle these a while and drop of the straying into the eare: unto the remainder, adde *Farina Lini*, *Fenigræci*, ana ʒ i. oyle of bitter Almonds, fresh Butter, ana q. s.

Another.

Rx of Onions, no iij. rost them under hot embers, beate them in a mortar, then adde of Saffron, ʒ ʒ, of fresh Butter q. s.

A Fomen-  
tation.

Rx of Bay leaves, of Origan, Hyssop, Majoram, ana M i. ʒ, of Worm-wood M ij. *Mentastri*, M. ʒ, flowers of *Stachas*, M i. ʒ. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, then adde a little Vineger, wash the eare with a sponge dipped herein, and let the vapour be conveyed to the instrument of hearing; by a pipe or quill for that purpose.

A liquor to be  
dropped into  
the Eare.

Rx the roots of Radish, ʒ iij. of white Hellebore, gr. ii. of Beaver-stone, bastard Pellitory, ana ʒ ʒ, boyle these a little in strong Wine, if the disease be caused by a cold humor, one or two drops must be put into the eare with a wooden stick sharpened at the end: if it be caused by hot humors, drop the juyce of Pomegranats, wherein oyle of Roses, Vineger, & the juyce of Lettuce have been mixed: also the oyle of Roses, wherein a little Vineger hath been boyled and consumed in the boyling, put a little of this into the eare, which being

ing done, the patient must rest an houre or two upon his  
sound eare, that the vertue of the medicine may be drawn  
to the inward parts; and then he must rest upon the other  
eare as long, that the excrements may avoide out the better.  
About fixe or seven houres after, cleanse the patients eare  
from all the filth therein gathered together. Let the white of  
an Egge with Womans milke be dropped into the eare  
in an hot cause, or else the water which runneth out of a  
vine which is pruned in its due season.

*An Appendix serving for the cure of the* **DIFFICULTY** *of* **HEARING.**

**T**He raw humors must be brought down with dig-  
estive medicines, and then turned out of the body by  
Pills, & other medicines, which we will endeavour to effect  
twice in every weeke, then must the matter be fetched out  
of the eares by Errhines, medicines provoking sneezing  
and Gargarismes. This being done, againe the braine must  
be purged from their superfluous humors by Pills, and then  
such must be administred as dissolve the reliques, and  
strengthen the braine. All which we may effect by these and  
the former medicines, so that universalls and particulars  
be well sorted. Especiall care ought to be had in the putting  
of hot oyle into the eares, lest that paine and exulceration  
doe follow. Therefore the safest way would be this, to mixe  
a small quantity of these with the oyle of bitter Almonds.  
If there be a filthy ulcer in the eare, somewhat must be  
applied inwardly that may cleanse the part affected. For  
which purpose make a medicine of honey and the juyce  
of wild Cowcumbers, or the gall of the lambe. Then the ul-  
cers shall be made sound by such as have a drying vertue.  
For which purpose *Tania*, the droffe of yron, *Pompholix*,  
white lead, may be boyled in wine, & one drop of the stray-  
ning shall be put into the patients eare; unto this likewise  
one drop of Vineger may be added. And as oyles are dan-  
gerous.



gerous, and enemies to most ulcers, so are they especially obnoxious to the ulcers of the eares: wherefore we must forbear the use of Oyles, when we perceive that there is an ulcer in the eares. We must begin weere with mild medicines at the first, and by degrees proceed unto stronger, and we will rather apply outward medicines then inward; for in these there is lesse danger: if one medicine can do the patient any good, this neither ought to be changed, nor left off, untill it hath effected the cure. But if any shall be put into the eare, the quantity shall be very small, otherwise they will run to the hearing nerve, and unto *os Petrosum*, and by this meanes cause a greater dulness of hearing.

*A method serving for the knowledge of HÆMOR-  
RHAGIA or bleeding at the nose.*

**H**æmorrhagia in this place doth signifie bleeding at the nose, whether it doth come immediately from the nostrills, carried thither by the veins of the palate, through which for the most part nature doth expell the superfluous blood in many; or else whether it comes from veins in the head farther off. But in generall it doth signifie any bleeding; whether it be of Nose, Buttock, or wombe, or any other part of the body. Out of the Nose blood sometime doth gush out with so great force, that the patients for want of that blood which is shed, fall into a swoond, and in this kinde it is alwayes hurtfull: whereas if it moderately doth runne out in the beginning of any Impostume, Pleurisie, Squinancy, burning Feaver, small pocks, and Feaver, it is alwayes for the best; sometimes it doth but droppe out of the Nose, sometimes it runnes out moderately. This bleeding is sometimes criticall in other diseases, foreshewing death, otherwhiles it is a joyfull messenger of life.

*The part affected.*

The nostrills are heere affected, but no alwayes the essence

essence of the nostrils ; but they are affected by the consent of some other part. The veines by which this blood is cast out at the nose, run from the palate and mouth into the nostrills, and sometime from the head. *Hemorrhagia* is therefore such an affect appertaining unto too much excretion; or unto the expulsive; and retentive faculties actions hurt. This followes another disease, viz. the opening of the mouth of the veines, or the division, and corrosion thereof.

*The signes.*

If too much blood be voided, the colour of the face is pale, and the body is of a leaden colour; the outward parts are cold, then followes a swoounding, and many times after, death.

*The Causes.*

Oftentimes bleeding at the nose is caused by nature, which doth by this meanes expell the excrements, and that which is troublesome to the body. This happens often in sharpe diseases, when as there is a great quantity of corrupt matter, and when it doth boyle up like new wine having no vent. Sometime it is caused by the evill affection of the veines wherein the blood is contained; and the blood runnes out of the veins, first because the veines are open, which is caused by such a plenty of blood, that the veines cannot containe it, and then rushing violently to the mouth of the veines, make a passage; sometimes, because the blood hath some sharpe quality in it, or else is some other way putrified, vexing the mouth of the veine, at the length it opens them. Sometimes the veines bleed, because they are divided either by a bursting, wound, or bruise. Again, the veines bleed, because some gnawing humor hath got thereinto, or else because some strong outward medicine hath bene applied to them; then may such things bee applied as may cause an incrustation. Lastly, they bleed, because the blood is too much attenuated by exercise, or some other cause, &c. the  
veines



veines tunicles are thinner, and rarer, and so they bleed by way of straining. Here those things are good which do thicken the veines, and blood, and do purge waterish humors.

*Prognostiques.*

If bleeding at the nose have continued long, swoounding, weaknes, and too much cooling of the liver, *Cachexia*, or the dropie is to be feared. Bleeding at the nose with coldnes of the outward parts, is mortall; if the patient by bleeding be eased of paine, it is a good signe. If such as bee newly taken with a Feaver, bleed on the fourth day, it is suspicious: if it come after head-aches in the time of *Crisis* in Feavers, it is good; and if it be not immoderate, the Feaver shall need no other cure. If in bleeding, either doeing or convulsion happen, this is a very bad signe: for a convulsion by emptines is deadly: if the nose bleed in suppression of termes, it may very well be permitted to bleed a while, for nature being hindered, doth cast them to the upper parts, which otherwise would have offended the lungs and liver. All superfluous bleeding, in what part soever, doth offend the liver. From whence *Cachexia*, swoounding, and the dropie, sometimes death it selfe seizeth on the patient.

*A method serving for the cure of HÆMORRHAGIA  
or bleeding at the nose.*

**T**He aire must be somewhat cold, his meate must be such as doth nourish well, and easie of digestion, as Chickens roasted, or boyled; but let them be cold when hee doth eat them; among Fruits, Quinces, Wardens; amongst herbs, the two kinds of Endives and Lettuces are good. His drinke must bee red thicke wine, but he must abstaine from white and chiane wine. In stead of wine likewise hee may drinke water, wherein Cinnamon hath been boyled; he must avoyd all motion and exercise of the body, and speake very little, and the part underneath the head must bee

layd

laid higher than his head: so that the head may hang downward. For by this means it is driven into the contrary side of its former motion: He must avoid all passions of the mind, especially anger.

Syrup of Myrtle, water-lillies. Of Roses, Pomegranates of the juice of Sorrell, Quinces, Poppy. The water of Sorrell, Plantane, Purslane; these assuage the heat of the blood, sharpenesse and biting thereof, and also somewhat coole it, and by this means make it more unmeet to passe or runne up and downe in the veins.

Let the *Basilica*, or *Cephalica* veine of the same side be opened, if the patient be not faint or spent, and by degrees be renewed, that is, twice or thrice in a day, especially if blood do abound, and the disease be caused by the sharpnes hereof, and then no medicine is better for this doth bring the blood back again the contrary way most effectually: yet this shall not be used until a sufficient quantity of blood be gone. Painfull ligatures of the extreame parts must be used, cupping-glasses after the ligature or binding, shall be applyed to the shoulders and neck, and to the *Hypochondrii* with scarification. Strong frictions of the armes and hands downward. Horse-leaches shall be applyed behind the eares, or to the fundament, if the *Hemroides* cease which were wont to flow. The extreame parts must be fomented, and suppled with clothes dipped in warme water, sodain fear and sodain casting water upon the patient, is sometime present remedy: For the blood together with the heat and spirits is recalled back from the Circumference as to the Center. In these consist all the hopes of the cure of this disease.

Syr. of manifold infusions of Roses, infusion of Rubarb. A decoction of Rubarb, *Mirabolani*, *citrini*, *Manna*. A potion of the decoction of *Epithymon*, *Polyphy*, *Sene*, *Mirabolani Indis*, the flowers of water-lillies, Violets, the seeds of Plantane, Melons, Quinces, syr. de *Epithymo*, *Fumitory*, *Agarick*, *Sene*, *Mirabolani Kobuli*: and a veine must be opened as was before prescribed, if the

V

bleeding

*Preparers.*

*Averters.*

*Empriers.*



bleeding at the nose be staied, and if it doth appeare somewhat corrupt, wee shall use these purging medicines, after the use of such as stop and mite away the blood; or else this should have been the first intention or course, because it was caused of sharpe blood. If this blood be cholerick, the former medicines shall bee used; if watery and melancholy; we will use the latter.

Stoppers of  
the blood.

*Trochisci de terra sigillata*, drunke with the water of Plantane; or else laid to the Temples, with the white of an Egge, and juice of Plantane. *Trochisci de succino, de Spodia*. Conserves of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies, Quinces, whereto adde *Bole Armoniack*, Corall, Hart's-horne burnt, the seeds of Plantane, Syr. of water-lillies, dry Rotties, Quinces, Poppy, Lemmons, Sorrell; Pomegranates, Mycils, then the waters of all these. A potion of Plantane-water, Parslane, Shepheards-purse, *Cande equina*, *Bole Armoniack*, *Terra sigillata*. A decoction of Lettuce, *Mali-coria*, *Balaustiis gallis*, *Athanasia recens*, *Mydera*, *Philonium Romanum*, with the juice of Plantane doe procure sleep, and stop the fluxe of blood. *Opium*, Poppy, Camphire, the seed of House-lecke, and Lettuce do thicken and congeale the blood. The roote of *Equisetum* beaten, and put into the nose; or the juice of *Porru*, Nettle, Plantane, *Cande equina*, *Basilici*, shepheards-purse, *Millefolii*, *Sanguinaria*, dip a sponge in these, or in the best Vineger, and put it unto the nose; or the vapor of sharp Vineger, received up into the nostrill; for this purpose sprinkle some Vineger upon a hot stone, and let the patient hold his nose over. Irrigations of the face & forehead with Rosewater, or cold water. Or wash the forehead with a sponge dipped in Vineger. Moisten a sponge very wel with the strongest and sharpest Vineger, & then daub it over with melted pitch, & burn it in an earthen vessel, until it doth wax smal like a powder: this may either be blown into the nostrils, or else given in

almost medicine. *Najals* and *Anacollema* of *Aloes*, *Frankincense*, *Bole Armoniack*, the dung of an Asse burnt, the shells of Eggs, and threads of cloth burnt, dry Mints, *Gypso*, old cheese, *Sanguis Draconis*, the juice of *Polygonium*, *Plantane*, the white of an Egge, make pencils of the haire of a Hare, and put them into the nostrills, being first dipped in the aforesaid. *Escariotica* must be made of *Chalcantibum*, *Tartar*, *Chalcitis*, *Calc viva*, whereunto some astringent medicines should be added, and so it will better stick. An ointment of the oyle of *Roses*, *Violets*, *Water-lillies*, *Vineger*, *Cerato*, *sandalino*. A Cataplasme must be made of *Bole Armoniack*, *Cauda Equina*, Shepherds putse, *Purslane*, *Terra sigillata*, *Hous-lecke*, *Hematite*, *Rose-water*, *Vineger*, and white of an Egge. This must be made for the forehead and temples. These present remedies shal be applyed to the sides of the neck, to the forehead and temples, and to the remote veins from whence the blood principally issueth; but first the blood must be turned back againe to its proper and peculiar place, and by no means use them at the beginning of the *Hemorrhagia*, for there is danger of the bloods running into the Head, Arteries, Lungs, or Ventricle. And so the patient be either stifled, or assaulted by a convulsion. Some of these formerly mentioned do stop the blood running at the nose, by their astringent virtue: for they doe thicken the blood, and by that means hinder the speedy motion thereof. Others by a cold property do the like; as *Lettuce*, *Poppy*, *Opium*. Others do glue together the gaping orifice of the veines, as *Frankincense*, the white of an Egge, *Gumme Arabick*; some by a secret property they have, as the juice of *Porrus* and Mints. Some do effect this by binding a kind of scabbe upon the place, and by cauterizing; as *Arnick*, *Calc viva*, *Vitriolum*. By these five kinds of medicines, extream bleeding at the Nose may be stayd. Those medicines which are astringent, and do coole very much, may be taken in at the mouth, or put up into the nostrills, or else cloaths dipped in them



may be laid to the neck, forehead, crowne of the head and loynes.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*  
**HÆMORRHAGIA**, or bleeding  
*at the Nose.*

*A Julep.*

Rx Syr. of Violets, Water-lillies, Myrtill, Quinces, Poppy, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the water of Plantane, Shepheards-purse, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of Sorrell, Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , mixe these and give  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of it for the space of three dayes morning and evening.

*A Potion.*

Rx of the roots and leaves of Plantane M i.  $\beta$ . of red Roses, Shepheards-purse, ana M i. the seeds of Lettuce, Purslane, Plantane, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. boyle these in water, untill the third part be consumed, then adde to the straining of the Syrup of water-lillies, Quinces, Poppy, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Give  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of this with  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of *Trochisces de terra sigillata*.

*A Potion.*

Rx of the roots of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. *Mirebal. Indorum.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. white and light Agarick,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , *Epithymi*, Fumitory, ana M i. *Polypodii quercini*, *ser. & Alex.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of the best Rhubarb,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. *S. besten*, *amarindorum*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii,  $\beta$ , boyle these in water, q. s. untill the third part be consumed, adde to the straining syr. *rosacei Laxativi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.

*A draught.*

Rx of water,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of Vineger,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of Sugar, Rose-water, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of this make a draught to be drunk at two severall times.

*A mixture.*

Rx of conserve of Water-lillies, Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Trochis de spodio, de terra sigillata*, Amber, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , of Eole Armoniack, the seeds of Plantane, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Sacchari rosacei*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , syr. of Poppy, Water-lillies, ana q. s.

*A Powder.*

Rx of Blood-stone, red Corall, *Gummi Arab. assati*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of

of red Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$  *rhabarb.* indifferently well heat or toasted at the fire.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Diarragacanthi frigidi*, the weight of all these. Give  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of this with the syrup of Quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Plantane water,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.

Rx *Athanasia Nicolsi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Sacchari rosacei*, conserve of Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

A mixture.

Rx of the water of Roses, Purslane, Plantane, Sorrell, Endive, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of the seeds of Purslane, Sorrell, Endive, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, of the trochiskes of Camphire, *Sandal. citrinorum*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. a little Vineger, make an Epitheme for the liver, for cold medicines being warily applied to the liver, doe soone stay the force of bleeding at the Nose, if so be the blood did come from the liver: as much may be said of the spleene.

An Epitheme.

Rx of the roots and leaves of Plantane, of Shepheards-purse, *Poligonii*, ana M iii. boyle these in water q s. unto  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. adde unto the straying of the best Vineger,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , wash the palms of the hand, and the soles of the feet, and the liver with a sponge dipped therein, likewise wet cloaths herein, and apply unto the veins of the throat, the temples and forehead.

A Fomentation.

Rx *Trochisc. de carabe*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the root of the hearb Horsetaile  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , Bole Armoniack, *Sanguinis draconis*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Frankincense,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Aloes,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ . incorporate these in the white of an Egge, make small pencils of the finest haire of a Hare. Which dip in the aforesaid ingredients, and put them into the nostrills. This must bee used after that a veine is opened, and after Cupping-glasses and ligatures of the extreame parts. For otherwise it is to be feared, that the blood will run to the *Aspera Arteria*, into the stomach, or into the inward parts of the head.

A Nasale.

Rx Aloes,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of Frankincense,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of Camphire, gr. v. *Opii* (if necessary require) gr. ii. Incorporate these with the white of an Egge, and after the former manner put it



into the nose: or the powder of an egge-shell may be blown up into the nose.

Rx of Horse-taile, M ii. of Shepherds-pouch, Plantane, ana M i. beate these, and adde unto them *Bole Armoniack*, ʒ i. ʒ. of Rose-water and Vineger a little, wrap this up in a cloth and lay it to the temples.

*A Cataplasme.*

Rx of the ashes of an Egge-shell, ʒ iii. the flowers and rinds of wild-Pomegranats, of *Bole Armony*, of Oake apples ana ʒ ʒ, seeds of white Poppy, ʒ ii. incorporate these with a little Vineger and the white of an Egge. Apply this unto the forehead, temples, and the veines of the throat.

Rx of the Blood-stone, *Bole Armony*, *terre sigillata*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of the juice of Horse-taile, Purslane, *Polygoni*, of House-leeks, ana ʒ ʒ, the whites of two Eggs, a little Rose-water, and Vineger, apply this unto the forehead, temples and eads.

*An Unguent.*

Rx of oyle of Roses, Quinces, Syrup of Quinces, ana ʒ i. *Bole Armony*, the flowers of wild Pomegranates, ana ʒ ʒ, of Galls, ʒ i. a little Wax and Vineger, make an oyntment for the veines of the throat, forehead and temples: boyle the oyles and juices together with a very gentle fire untill the juice be consumed. Otherwise they cannot be made up into the forme of an oyntment by reason of the watriness of the juices which never agreeth with oyle.

*An Appendix, serving for the cure of the*  
**HÆMORRHAGIA,** *or bleeding*  
*at the Nose.*

**O**pen a veine at the first: but if blood do run so fast out of the nose, that it will be both dangerous, and needlesse to open the cubit vein, Then Cupping-glasses shall be fet to the shoulder, and neck, and sides of the patient: also Ligatures and Frictions shall be used: and by washing the feet

feet in hot water, the course of the blood will bee turned another way: at the length we will stoppe it from going further, and strengthen those parts from which the blood did first of all come: and these we will apply unto the nose, forehead, liver and spleene; neither medicines which are called *Narcotici* or *Escharotici* must bee used; unlesse great necessity doe require; but we will give *Athanasia*, ℥ii. ℥. or else we will make a powder of *Vitriolum*, playsterring-Morter, Mastick, and snuffe this up into the nose. In all fluxes of blood out of the nose, moderate moistning medicines must be applyed to the liver. But it is best if an Epitheme bee made for the liver of the seeds of Endive, Sorrell, *Sandals*, Rose-water, Succory; or to a Cerate of *Sandals*, some oyle of water-lillies may be added; and a soft Liniment shall be made hereof.

*A method serving for the knowledge of CATARRHUS, or RHEUME.*

**C**atarrhus is a distillation commonly taken, and is a deflux of humours and excrements from the head or braine into the other parts of the body: and because the braine is of a cold and moist nature, and doth want plenty of nourishment, by reason of the largenesse thereof: so likewise it doth breed many excrements, and the slight distemper being cold and moist, will further it: for first vapors sent from the lower parts, get up thither, and these being thickned, by reason of the brains thinness, are entertained; and even as these superfluous excrements are sent back againe to some one or other part of the body, so likewise doth the disease alter its name, for such excrements sometime enter into the inner receptacle of the braine, oftentimes in the first ventricle (if so be that they doe not offend much in quantity) and then they are soonest purged by the palate. Sometime they are spread thorow divers places of  
the



the brain, when they flow too much, and then are they voyded partly at the nose, partly at the palate, some at the eares, some at the eyes, and they doe often fall into the inward parts of the body, as stomack and lungs, whereof come these diseases, viz. an impostume of the lungs, and *Asthma*, otherwhiles they fall downe upon *Arteriam asperam*, and the jawes, whereof commeth hoarsnesse; sometime they doe fall upon the stomack, and then the nourishment that was but lately received, is corrupted, the appetite and concoction quite overthrowne. Sometime they doe cause a lientery, when as they doe fall into the bowels, wherof commeth a laxe. Sometime such excrements are gathered on the outside of the skull, under the skin of the head, and that is often perceived in the crown, where the ends of the veines creeping along the face and temples, doe meet; for if these vessels be laden with needlesse store of excrements, they do often unload themselves in these places for the space of many dayes; whereas by degrees, because of their thinnesse, they find some way out of the parts of the body, yet it does softly thicken, by reason of the heat of the part wherein it is harboured, from whence come the paines of the Sides, Loynes, Armes, Shoulder-blades, Eye, Teeth, Shoulders, Kernels, Hips, Legs, and sundry joynts. But chiefly in this place we doe treat of that flux which doth fall upon the Lungs.

*The part affected.*

The brain is most affected, as may appear by the actions and faculties which are offended; as also by those things, that are voyded at the mouth, nose, and palate; and then it is a more continuall disease, neither is any hurt of any other part perceived, whereby it may be cherished, but while it is caused by other parts of the body, it will the better bee knowne by its proper signes; this is an affection, which appertains unto immoderate excretion.

*Signs.*

*Signes.*

If the excrements of the head fall into the Lungs, it doth cause for the most part hardnes of breathing, and a great cough, and a certaine tickling is felt in the throate, and some portion of the humors fallen down, is cast up in spit-  
tle, and in time faintnesse of body, heavinesse of the head, heate and thirst commeth withall, the urine for the most part is of a high colour. If it do fall into the throat, or wind-pipe, it doth bring with it a cough and hoarinesse, and bringeth pain and soarnes to those aforementioned places.

*The Causes.*

Sometime the hot distemper of the braine is the cause, which dissolveth, and maketh thin the humours in the brain, and doth draw more vapors from the lower parts, then it can concoct, or expell by breath; that there is this same distemper in the brain, age, region or place, season of the year, a hot temperature, a red nose and face, the parts of the head being hot, the temples and arteries beating very much, a sharp or thin humor voided at the mouth or the nose, a Feaver oft comming with it, and a loathing of meate, do all signifie and declare. But the great weaknes of the brain is often the cause of a Catarrhe, so is its cold and moist distemper, for then nutriments conveyed to the brain, are not well digested, whereby many superfluities are gathered, and store of excrements are lodged in the brain. The signes of this constitution are, age, the season of the yeer, diet, cold temperature, the voyding of phlegmy and grosse humors at the nose, and of those in great plenty, also sleeping, stretchings, heavines of the head, and forehead, palenesse of the face, thick obstructions in the passages of the nostrills. His former diet was too moist and distempered. This is caused by ill vapors that fill the head, for



vapours being thickned, are thrust down into the lower part. Surfeit likewise, & too much fulnes, especially of wine, increase this evill. It is also caused by too much sleep; also by reason of the weaknesse of the digestive and expulsive faculty of the brain, whether it were so from the patients birth, or by some long disease of the braine: for the nutriment brought thither, is left raw, and is in the body, because of the weaknesse of the expulsive faculty.

*Prognostiques.*

If the humour fall from the head to the nose, it is but a small grief, if unto the throat, a worse, if to the lungs, worst of all; for the lungs are in danger of being exulcerated, from whence commeth a Consumption. Short rheumes, if they be let alone at the first, will at the length prove tedious; they are not free from danger, who are very much troubled with rheum. It doth threaten Apoplexy, Phrensie, Bindnesse, Tooth-ach, Consumption, Palsey, Deafnesse, Quinancy, sudden death, Impostume of the Lungs, Bladder, Kidneys, Liver, Eys, pain and weaknes of the stomach, the *Sciatica* Gowt, flux of the belly, and Chollick; such who have a cold and weak brain, are most subject to rheum: also rheume accompanied with the pain of the head, is hardly to be cured. The winter season is very obnoxious to this disease, because of the uncertainty of the weather.

*A method serving for the cure of CATARRHUS  
or RHEUME.*

**T**He aire must be moderately hot, rainy weather, and northern, & southern blasts must be avoided. His meat must be easie of digestion, and such as may breed good bloud, viz. rear Eggs, the flesh of Hens, Pullets, Capons, Partridges, Veal; but he must eat moderately of these, and he must be more sparing of his diet at supper than dinner. After meat give him some pretty portion of Quinces, or mermalade, for it doth hinder the rising of the vapors to the

the head. Amongst Fruits Prunes, Raisins, and sweet Almonds, are good: his drink must be water and wine, or else honyed water, or els water wherein Cinnamon and Licorice were boyled: he must drink but a little of this, & sometime he must indure thirst. His sleep must be moderate, and not in the day time, his head must be so covered, that neither too much cold, or too much heat offend it; both heat and cold cause this disease; his body must dayly be emptied of the excrements either by art or nature: too much motion of the body & perturbations of the mind must be avoided.

Syrup of Violets, Licorice, *Ziziphi*, of dry Roses, Poppy, water-lillies. A decoction of the foure common cold seeds, of the cordiall flowers, and white Poppy, water of Violets, Succory, Roses, Barley boyled in water, *Melrosatum*, *Oxymel simp.* *Squillit.* *Compositum*, syr. of Betony, *Stachas*, Maiden-hair, Hyssop, Licorice, Horehound. A decoction of the Roots of Licorice, Fennell, *Acorus*, *cyperus*, Cinnamon, Betony, Hyssop, Majoram, Maiden-hair, Sage, Rosemary, Buglosse, *Serpillum*, flowers of *Stachas*, Nutmeg, and Figs. The water of Mayden-haire, Hyssop, Scabius, Sage, Betony, and *Adiantum*; the former of these must be used, when the humor is caused by heat, the later, when by a cold.

The shoulder or median veine shall be opened, if there be any danger of a Plurisy, Feaver, suffocation, or squinancy, or if there be plenty of blood, and the strength of the patient wil permit. *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, *Diaprunum*, *scammonium*, *Diaphenicum*, *Pillul. Aurea*, *Aggregat.* *Assaiferet*, *Mastichine*, *Cochia*, *de agarico*, *de sarcocolla*. *Agaric trochisc.* *cassia*, *rubarb.* *Polypodium*. Syrup of manifold infusion of Roses. *Elect.* *Indum*, *Diacath.* a strong Clyster is good, if there be great plenty of rheum, which doth threaten suffocation, make it of the decoction of flowers of *Stachas*, Majoram, Sage, Calamint, Origan, Mallows, Barley, *Hiera pica*, *Adel rosatum*, and Oyle of Violets. We must here forbear strong purging medicines, lest we

Preparers.

Emptiers.



## Averters.

should cause the surcharging matter to flow.

A veine must be opened; the former Clyster must be used: also medicines that do evacuate. Cupping-glasses must be fastened to the Armes, Shoulders, and Buttocks. A sweat must be caused with the decoction of *Salsa parilla*. Frictions of the extreame parts, but especially of the head and feet; also continuall motion of those parts; for by these meanes the humour offending falls down: painfull ligatures, a sneeze of hell-bore, *Castoreum*, and Pepper. Yet this is not good at the first; for hereby the decoction of the humours is hindered. Apophlegmatisms of bastard Pellitory, Pepper, Hyssop, Mastick, the rinds of the Roots of Capers, Cubebs, Rayfins. A gargarisme of Majoram, Hyssop, and Origan; but if the humours runne unto the brest or Lungs, or if it be thinne and moveth very much, gargarismes are dangerous; Nasals of the juice of flower-de-luce, Beet, Sow-bread, bastard Pellitory, seeds of *Nigella*, in a cold matter; but in hot, the juice of Violets in Barley-water. Lotions of the Legs, and Arms. The Nose must be often cleansed by blowing; for hereby thick and thinne humours are more safely purged then by spittle; a cautery must be made in the coronall seame, the head being first shaved, or else behinde the eare, and the sore shall be long kept open; for which purpose hot Cabbage-leaves and Swines grease shall bee laid upon it. These averting and locall medicines purging the braine, shall not be applied, untill the matter be well digested and emptied; otherwise the rheumatick matter should onely bee stirred up.

Stayers of the  
rheume.

*Philonium Mesue* with the decoction of *Olibanum*, *rob. nucum*, Conserve of old Roses, *Saccharum violatum*, *Dianucum*, *Diaodidum*, *Diapapaver*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, & *calidum*. Pills of Hounds-tongue, a loch of cole-worts: a loch of Poppy, bole-Armony, the juice of Licorice, a trochiske of Foal-foot, Mastick, syr. of Violets, Poppy.

Poppy, Licorice, julep of Violets. A decoction of Plantane, Purslane, Barley, white Poppy, Roses, Bole-Armony, Gumme of the Juniper-Tree, whereunto adde *Diacodium*, Pills of dry Roses, seeds of Poppy, Camphire, *terra sigillata*, they must be held in the mouth. Spike-head in the mouth at night time is good. *Cumin* and *Nigella* fried and tied in linnen cloth, hereof make an odor: a fume with *Nigella* onely made into powder, and burnt. An oyntment of the oyle of Roses. An Emplayster for the head being first shaved, of red earth, Roses, Plantane, Bole-Armony, unlesse great paines urge, we will not use these medicines, untill the humors be purged and turned away. But if the humors runne too fast unto the Lungs, so that it doth threaten a troublesome cough, or a long waking, or dreantes, or danger of choaking, or excoriation by reason of the humours sharpenesse, wee will immediately use these medicines that doe hinder the matter going any further, not waiting untill the humors be purged and turned aside; neither can it bee expected that a thinne rheum falling upon the Lungs, in such plenty and with so great force, can be fetched out by purging medicines, or else be turned aside: for purgers and averters doe rather increase the motion of humors. At that time a veine shall be opened, and Cupping-glasses applyed to the shoulder-blades. Therefore if great pains doe follow the rheumes, such medicines as may thicken the blood, and hinder the rheumes shall be given, though they hinder spitting, else there would be danger of choaking.

*Diamuscum dulce & amarum, diambra*, Triacle, Mithridate that is not too old, *Plirisarcoticum*, Conserve of Sage, Betony, Rosemary, *Acorus*, Orange-pills preserved, Nutmeg, Cubebs, *Nigella Romana*, the roots of *Cyperus*, Cloves, Mace, *Stachys*, *Gallia moschata*, *Lignum aloes*; *Ladanum*. A sweet ball of Cloves, *Gallia moschata*, Nutmeg, *Syrax*, Cala-



Calamintb, *Ladanum*, *Cutebs*, *Tragacanth*. water of Majoram. Make a cap of the leaves of Bayes, Origan, Sage Betony, Majoram, seeds of *Nigella*, Camomile, Mellilot, *Stechas*, Frankincense, Maltick, Cinnamon, Mace, Nutmegge, Cloves, red Roses : wash the head with the decoction of the former things, in Malmsey. Make a perfume of Cloves, Cinnamon, Aloes, Rosemary, Sage, Bay-leaves, Majoram, Mastick, Frankincense, *Gallia moschata*, Muske, A Quilt with Salt, Millet, Branne, Sage, Majoram: an oyntment for the head being shaved, with the oyle of Rew and Dill : for the brekt, oyle of Lillies, Camomile, sweet Almonds, *Lini*, fresh butter. Frictions and Foments of the head, with a rough linnen cloth hot, which shall be perfumed with the vapors of Frankincense, Maltick, Storax, and *Ladanum*. A cautery shall be made in the hinder part of the head, of Leaven, and *Cantharides*, if the disease be not cured by these former medicines.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*  
CATARRHUS, or RHEUME.

*A Clyster.*

Rx of Betony, Majoram, Sage, Rew, ana M i.  $\beta$ , flowers of Rosemary, *Stechas*, Centory the lesse, Camomile, ana M i. of Origan, Calamint, ana M  $\beta$ , of Branne, M ij, boyl these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb i. } \beta$ . Adde to the strayingning *Electuarii Elefcopti*,  $\text{3 i.}$  *Hiera picra simp.*  $\text{3 i.}$  *Disurbithb*, *cum rhubarb.*  $\text{3 iij. } \beta$ , *Mellin rosati*,  $\text{3 i.}$  oyle of Rew,  $\text{3 iij.}$  of Salt,  $\text{3 i.}$

*A Julep.*

*Mellin rosacei*, *Oxymel simp.* syr. *Stechados*, Licorice, ana  $\text{3 i.}$  water of Rosemary, Betony, ana  $\text{3 iij.}$  of Hyssop,  $\text{3 ij.}$  mixe these.

*Pills.*

*Pills de Agarico*,  $\text{3 } \beta$ , *Cochiarum*, *Fetidarium*, ana  $\text{9 i.}$  *Diagridii*, gr. iij. syr. of Violets, q. s. make hereof 7. or 8. Pills.

Rx Dia-

Rx *Diaturbith cum rh. barb.* ʒ v. *Electuarii Indi*, *Diacathobolice* ʒ i. *fyr. Stachados*, ʒ ʒ, water of Majoram, Betony, ana ʒ i. ʒ.

A draught.

Rx of Majoram, *Nigella*, Nutmeg ʒ i. ʒ, Bastard-Pellitory, white Hellebore, ana ʒ i.

A sneezing powder.

Rx of the juice of the Colewort, Beet, ana ʒ i. ʒ, juice of *Cyclamen*, ʒ ʒ, of white Pepper, *Nigella*, ana ʒ i. mingle these together, & apply them as a liniment to the nostrils, when there is fear of the Catarrhe falling upon *Aspera arteria*.

A Nasal.

Rx seeds of Staves-acre, Mustard, bastard-Pellitory, ana ʒ i. ʒ, *Acori conditi*, of Cubebs, Mace, ana ʒ i. *Nigella Romana*, of Rayline, Maltick, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Hony, q. s. mixe these and put them into a fine cloth.

A Masticatory.

Rx of Mustard-seed, of Pepper, ʒ ii. roots of bastard-Pellitory, ʒ i. Ginger, ʒ ʒ, boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed. This doth bring back the rheume descending to the lungs to the mouth.

A Gargism.

Rx *fyr. derosis sicci* ʒ iii. of Roses, Myrtle, ana ʒ i. of the water of Violets, Plantane, Hyssop, ana ʒ iii.

A Julep.

Rx of red Roses, M i. seeds of white Poppy, *Olibani* ana ʒ i. ʒ, boyl these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. adde to the straining of the Syrup of Poppy, ʒ iii. of Licorice, ʒ i.

Another.

Rx of the conserve of old Roses, ʒ i, *Diacodii*, ʒ ʒ, *Diatragacanthi frigidi*, ʒ iii. *fyr. of Roses*, q. s.

A Nasal.

Rx *Olibani*, of Mastick, ana ʒ ʒ, of the pulp of Quinces, ʒ i. ʒ, Let him take ʒ ii. hereof when he goes to bed, and after it drinke one draught of wine.

A draught.

Rx of Bole Armoniack, of *Terra sigillata*, of Mastick, ana ʒ ii. the juice of Licorice, ʒ ʒ, conserve of Roses, ʒ ii.

A mixture.

Rx *Diacodii*, ʒ ʒ, Syrup of Poppy, ʒ i. water of Betony, ʒ iii.

A draught.

Rx *Diacodii* ʒ vi. *fyr. of Poppy*, ʒ ii. of Bole Armoniack, ʒ ii. o Camphire, ʒ i. Let him take one spooneful hereof in his mouth.

Rx of the seeds of white Poppy, of Lettuce, ana ʒ iii. amyli,



*amyli, Diatrageanthi frigidi, ana ʒ i. Gummi Arabici, tragacanthi, Bole Armoniac, ana ʒ ii. Opii ʒ i. ʒ. Sacchari rosati, juice of Licorice, ana ʒ i. ʒ. mixe these, and make a lump hereof with the juice of Quinces, and water wherein Gumme tragacanth hath been infused. Let the patient hold a little of this in the mouth: this hinders the fluxe of the rheum.*

*A Gargarisim.*

*Rx of the rinds of Pomegranates, ʒ ʒ, of Knap-weed, M ii. the roots of Plantane, Dane-wort, ana M j. of Pine-apples, Frankincense, Mastick, ana ʒ i. of Roses, M i. the seeds of Purslane, ʒ ii, boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. ʒ, adde to the straining of the Syrup of Myrtle, Stechados, Diamori, ana ʒ i.*

*A Nasale.*

*Rx of Bole Armony, Sanguinis Draconis, Frankincense, ana ʒ i. of Storax, Mastick, ana ʒ ʒ, boyle these ʒ ʒ of the water of Honey, put some of the straining into the nose.*

*ACap.*

*Rx of Frankincense, Olibanum, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of red Roses, ʒ ii. the seeds of white Poppy, ʒ ʒ, Sandarace, Mastick, ana ʒ ii. with a little wine, make pills, that must be burnt to procure a smoaking. Let the patient hold the cap that he is to weare over these, and having well smoaked it, he must put it upon his head.*

*An Electuary.*

*Rx of the conserve of Rosemary, Betony, Sage, ana ʒ vi. Sp. Diamusci dulcis, ʒ iiij. of ancient Triacle, ʒ ij. Diambræ, ʒ i. Nutmeg, ʒ i. ʒ, tyr. Stechados, q. s.*

*Lozenges.*

*Rx Sy. Diamusci dulcis, Diambræ, ana ʒ ii. ʒ, of the best Sugar dissolved in Rosemary, and Betony-water q. s. make hereof an Electuary in Lozenges.*

*APowder.*

*Rx of the roots of Aristolochia rot. bastard-Pellitoyr, Spike, ana ʒ ʒ, of Aloes, Frankincense, Cloves, ana ʒ ii. of Mastick, ʒ i. ʒ. Make a powder hereof, and cast this upon the fire, and receive the smoake of this as was shewed before.*

*A Qui.*

*Rx of the flowers of Betony, Roses, Stechas, Camomile, Mellilot, M j. of Frankincense, Mastick, Nutmeg, Mace,*

Mace, Cloves, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , the leaves of Bayes, Origan, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$   $\beta$ . make a Quilt for the coronall seame.

R of Branne, Miller, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i. of Salt beaten very small  $\mathfrak{z}$  i  $\beta$ , fry these in a pan, make a little cap of this, and lay it unto the coronall seam: this doth strengthen the brain, and dryeth up the humours.

R *Nigelle Romana* fried,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , root of *Cyperus*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , flowers of *Stechus*, Roses,  $\mathfrak{M}$   $\beta$ , Nutmeg, Cloves, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiii. cast this upon the hinder part of the patients head, when he doth goe to bed.

R *Nigelle* fried,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Mustard-seed fried, Frankincense, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. of Mastick,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiii. of Pigeons-dung, Barley-flower, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Oxymellis squillæ*. q. s. apply this to the coronall seame.

A Cap.

A Powder.

An Emplaster.

An Appendix serving for the cure of  
CATARRHUS or RHEUME.

**T**He body shall be first emptied by a Gentle Clyster, and the humours made obedient to nature, then we will purge the body of these loading & oppressing humors. The head shall be purged by Errhins, Apophlegmatismes, and Masticatories, actual & potentiall cauteries shal be made in the hinder part of the head, and when the blisters arise, they shall be opened, that the watery humors may run out, for which purpose lay cabage-leaves upon the broken blisters. And then such are good that doe stay the flux of the humors, which may be used at the first, if there be any danger of choaking by the vehemency of the Rheume. After all these, such things ought to be appointed that may strengthen the brain, and consume the reliques, which shall bee effected both by outward and inward medicines. There is danger in delay, therefore pills shall be given at the first, to prevent danger of suffocation. If the watery substance distilleth down into the nose or unto the mouth, mingle the dried powder of red Roses,

Y

with



with rose Vineger, which being sprinkled upon an hot iron, or a red hot Brick, and so take the fume up into the nostrills.

*A method serving for the knowledge of*

### ANGINA, or SQUINANCY.

**T**He Squinancy is an inflammation of the throat, or of the highest parts of the Gullet, hindering breathing, and swallowing, when as the fault is neither in the breast nor lungs. This disease doth threaten present danger by strangling, because the upper part of the Wind-pipe or Gullet is closed up, whereby a man is deprived both of breath and sustenance. This disease doth usually come suddenly, for the most part it is also caused by a flux in that passage.

*The part affected.*

The inner muscles of the throat, are oft affected, and then the patient is in great danger; these signes goe along with it, viz. vehement paine in the throate, sometimes a very strong Feaver. When the patient breathes, he doth hold his face upward, also there is a defect in his voice. No signe of heat or swelling doth appeare either in mouth or throat, or neck, but great straightnesse is felt in the throat; they doe breathe with their mouthes open, and are refreshed with cold aire. Sometime they thrust out their tongues, their eyes are red, and stick out of their head; the drinke that they take, runnes out at their Noses: in brieft, they are sundry wayes disquieted. Sometimes the outward muscles of the throat are affected, and this of all other is the milder kind of Squinancy: for then the paine about the throate is not so great, neither doth the patient breathe with such difficulty. But if the Jawes and the place where the *Aspera Arteria*, and the excream

parts

parts of the throat doe meet, be affected, then the patient breathes with more ease. Moreover heat, swelling, and pain is more felt in the throat, and sometime these may be plainly discerned if the tongue be kept down; this is with lesse danger than the former; sometime both inward and outward muscles are affected, then the pain is more vehement.

*The Signes.*

They breathe with difficulty, besides, the pain is sharp; and the face and neck is red. They swallow with pain all their meate, and that which they drinke, doth run out at the nose, oftentimes the patient hath a Feaver, and desires to draw fresh aire. Sometime when the disease is very great, they thrust out their tongues.

*The Causes.*

For the most part it is caused by blood, which is carried thither from the jugular veines, for in these veines there is plenty of blood. The pulse will be full, and beating wavelike; Oftentimes it is caused by their former diet, which was such as did beget much blood. A temperate spring, hot and moist also went before. If it bee caused by cholerick blood, a sharpe ague, and great burning, hardnesse of breathing, and swallowing doth concur, yet there is lesse straightnesse: there is a bitternesse of mouth; diet, age, temperament, region, all these concur, because they doe generate cholerick blood. If it be caused by a flux or cold tumours, it is then a bastard squinancy. Then his mouth is very moist and slymie, the Feaver either comes not at all, or else it is very gentle, the paine is lesse, the swelling not so hard, neither is his face and other parts very red; these things went before, that did breed phlogmy blood. This disease doth alwayes take its beginning from fluxes, which descend thither from the head and jugular parts.



*Prognostiques.*

If the inflammation bee in the inward muscles, within three or foure dayes it will kill the patient; and that squinancy is most dangerous, when as no inflammation doth appear; when the pain is great, the Feaver vehement; and the patients tongue is thrust out, when the passage is so stopped, that he cannot swallow, and when the drinke runnes out at the nose, when the eyes are turned like unto them that are strangled, when they stick out of the head, also when his spittle is foamy, the lips looke black; and he strives to leap out of his bed, and when his sight, hearing, and wit is so dull, that he understands not what is done about him, he dyes by a swoond and strangling: yet there is some hope, when rednesse and a tumour doe appear, and as these accidents are diminished, so is the disease more mild, and the stronger these accidents are, the greater is the danger. It is no good signe, if the tumours are suddenly gone without any manifest cause: if there be paine in the sides, numnesse of the whole body, and feeblenesse, death is certainly neer at hand, and although the patient do think himselfe well, yet he is taken away suddenly by a suffocation, or else it is turned into an impostume.

*A method serving for the cure of* ANGINA  
or SQUINANCY.

**T**He air must be bright, temperate, and free from winds; his meat must be liquid, and soft, as reare Egges, Frumenty, the broth of Pullets, Hens. For the three first dayes his fare must be slender, he must shunne those things that may heat his blood, viz. Pepper and other spices. His drink must be ptisan with Sugar, or the broth of a Chicken, and honied water: but he must abstaine from wine, he

must

must no way exercise himselfe, and speake very little; his sleep must be shorter then ordinarily it was wont to bee, and sometime they that stand by must awake him out of it: for by too much sleep this disease doth become worse; for then the humors doe increase in the part affected; his head must be meanly covered, but by no means rubbed in the beginning of the disease. His belly must be kept loof by art or nature. Perturbations of the mind must be avoided, & those means used which may procure mirth and delight.

At the beginning of the squinancy a vein must be opened on that side the pain is; when he doth perceive difficulty of breathing or swallowing, even untill he doth swoond, if there be great store of blood in the body, and the patients strength is able to indure it, otherwise the blood shal be taken away at sundry times. A woman with child shall bee thus dealt with, if her strength be not too much decayed; the *Cephalica* vein shall be first opened, and then the vein under the tongue, when the humor leaves running: but if this be opened at the first, inflammation will be increased, because the matter is drawne to the part affected. In great fulnesse the *Saphena* veine shall be first opened, and whilst the vein under the tongue is opening, the tongue shall be turned up to the palate of the mouth. *Elixuarium Eleuscopi*, syr. of the manifold infusions of Roses, *Diasatholicum*, *Hiera picra*, *Pillule Auræ*, d. *Agarico*, *Cassia*, *manna Tamarindi*. The matter of the disease must presently be drawn out, especially if it be cholerick, for that swelleth: for this cause, not expecting digestion, it must presently be evacuated. Since this disease evermore threatens danger. Moreover liquid medicines are more proper than pills, seeing the patient for the difficulty of swallowing is not able to take them. Beside we must here abstain from strong purging medicines in the beginning of the disease, for hereby the humors will be exasperated and stirred, and so take occasion to fall the sooner upon the part affected.

A veine shall be opened as was formerly prescribed; and

*Emptiers.*

*Averters.*



Cupping-glasses shall be first applied to the lower parts, then unto the upper. Horse-leaches shall with great good be fastned to those places. The feet and Hands must bee washed with hot water; also painfull ligatures of the extreame parts must be used, as also strong frictions of those parts. A strong Clyster shall be then given; if the patient have not a Feaver, and a vein shall not be opened; first the excrements must be brought down by a gentle Clyster, even on the first day, although the patients belly were loose before: the use of *Hiera picra* is much commended for this intent.

*Repellers.*

A Gargarisme of the decoction of Plantane, Roses, of the rind and flowers of Pomgranats, Lettuce, Lintels, Rosewater, the juice of sowre Pomegranats, *Diamorum*, *Diacodium*, syr. of the juice of Sorrell, Pomegranats, Roses. Syrup of Poppy, the juice of Poppy, *Diacodium*, *Diamorum*, syr. of the juice of Sorrell, Pomegranats. The juice of Lettuce, Roses, Plantane, Pomegranats, Night-shade, Mulbery, Sorrell. Water of Roses with the decoction of Sumach and Vineger. Repelling oyntments of the Oyl of Roses must be applied outwardly to the part affected. In the beginning of the disease gargarismes may be used. He shall hold it so long in his mouth, untill it be hot, and shall wash the inward part of his throat as far as may be, it is good for this purpose, viz. that the humors run not too fast unto the part affected; the wayes by this means being made straighter, and the substance of the parts strengthened, we may not so freely use the former repelling oyntment, nor any other outward repelling medicine, except it were in the beginning of the disease; for it is to be feared, that it will strike the matter of the disease inward. Neverthelesse the places round about, and especially the parts shall be anoynted therewith.

*Strengtheners.*

A Gargarisme of the decoction of Figs, Licorice, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Hyssop, Betony, Fengreeke, dogs-tooth, Rayfins, *Diamore*, albo græco, *Adelle rosato*, syr.

*syr. of Roses, Oxytel, squillit.* A Gargarisme of water wherein a small quantity of white bread is boyld, and then strain it. White Dogs-turd, and young Swallows burnt, and mixed with Honey, and scattered upon the affected places of the throat. Let him drinke the drinke *Lupi Gutturis*: a thred burnt to ashes untill it be white, shall be laid unto the part affected: an oyntment of the oyle of Camomile, Lillies, sweet Almonds, wherewith the forepart and hinder part of the neck shall be anointed, and then covered with fat wool. A Cataplasme of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, leaves of Mallows, roots of *Aliba*, Barly-flower, Lin-feed meale, Fen-greek, Dogs-turd, a Swallowes nest, with the dust thereof, oyle of Lillies, *Lini*, Camomile, sweet Almonds; an emplaster of Mellilot, and the *Mucilages*. The matter of these after the first day shall be abated, even as the disease doth increase; in stead of which some resolving medicines shall be administred, which are best if they be outwardly applyed; for it is the best course to draw the matter outward. If the cure of the Squinancy be wrought by resolving medicines, presently all the symptoms following this disease, are without any more trouble, asswaged and taken away. On the contrary, accidents doe increase, viz. a Feaver, and the paine and difficulty of swallowing.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*  
ANGINA, or SQUINANCY.

Rx the seeds of Fennell, Smallage, ana ʒ v. of Sage, Betony, ana M i. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i. β, white and light Agarick, ʒ i β, *Pulpa colo.ynth.* ʒ i. boyl these in water q. s. unto ℥ i. adde to the straining of new *Cassia*, of red Sugar ana ʒ i. oyle of Lin-feed, Violets, ana ʒ i. β, of Salt, ʒ i.

*A Chyster.*

Rx oi



A Potion.

Rx of new Cassia,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Diaphenicum,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. water of Scabius  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. Give this the next day after the opening of a veine.

Rx Syrup of Scabius,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. Mellis rosacei,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , water of Scabius, Wood-bine, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. drinke this at three times.

A Potion.

Rx Diatrbith cum rhubarb.  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. Diacath.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ . Electuary of the juice of Roies,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , syr. of Violets, Stachados, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , the water of Betony,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.

Another.

Rx of the Syrup of manifold infusion of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. Sp. Diatrbith, cum rhubarb.  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . Water of Betony,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.

A Potion.

Rx Syrup of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. Diarodii, Syrupe of Licorice, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , the water of Scabius and Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.

A Gargarism.

Rx of Hyssop, Knap-weed, ana M i. of scraped Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of the rinds of Pomegranates,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i. adde to the straying of burnt Allome,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , Mellis rosati,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ .

A Gargarisism.

Rx of the rinds of Pomegranats,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , flowers of Roses M i. Sumach, of the yellow that growes in the middle of the Rose, Plantane, Barberies, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of burnt Allome,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the flowers of Pomegranats,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i. adde unto the straining of the Syrup of Myrtle, Diamori,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. Let him hold this in his mouth untill it be hot in the beginning of the disease.

Another.

Rx of the water of Plantane, Roses, Wood-bine, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii  $\beta$ , Diamori,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. syr. Acetosi simp. Oxy mellis simp. ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ .

A Potion.

Rx of the decoction of the yellow that growes in Roses, Roses, the flowers of Pomegranats, Pomegranats, Sumach, Plantane, Night-shade, Oak apples,  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i. of Rosewater,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of Vineger,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of the finest Sugar,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ . And with the same liquor you shall make a most excellent gargarism.

Rx of

# The Physicians Practice.

167

R<sup>x</sup> of the aforesaid liquor,  $\mathfrak{z}$  viij. bruis<sup>e</sup> Poppy-seeds and put them therein, strain them out and give the patient this.

A Potion.

R<sup>x</sup> of the flowers of Pomegranats,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. the seeds of Roses, plantane, the seeds of Sumach, Barberies, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. of Gumme, Tragacanth,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *salis Ammoniaci*, Camphire, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. put a little of this into the throat, also of these Pills may bee made, one or two whereof may bee kept under the tongue; also with the water of Roses, *Oxymel simp.* Vinegar, and *Diamorum*, a Gargarisme may bee made.

A Powder.

R<sup>x</sup> syr. of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. *β*, *Diamori*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j, *Diannem*, loeb of Poppy, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Sacchari violati*,  $\mathfrak{ss}$ ij. dippe a Licorice stick-beaten at the end in this, when the disease doth first trouble the patient.

A Loche.

R<sup>x</sup> oyle of Lillies, Camomile, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the fat of a Goat  $\mathfrak{D}$  ij. a little Wax: anoynt the neck herewith, and cover it with wooll.

An Unguent.

R<sup>x</sup> Unguent. *Dialtheæ*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j,  $\beta$ , oyle of Camomile, sweet Almonds ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j oyle of Violets, fat of a Hen, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , use this as the former.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M j. leaves of Origan, Betony, Hyssop, ana M  $\beta$ , of Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, seeds of *Linu*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. Fengreek  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{f}$  i  $\beta$ , adde to the strayingn<sup>e</sup> syrup of Roses  $\mathfrak{z}$  liij.

A Gargarisme.

R<sup>x</sup> oyle of sweet Almonds, fresh Butter, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  liij. of Wax<sup>e</sup> q. c.

A Liniment.

R<sup>x</sup> of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M  $\beta$ , roots of Lillies, marsh-Mallows, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Fengreeke, and Linseed, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. boyle these untill they bee soft, then bake them, adding first unto them a little Beane-flower, and flower of Barley, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. Butter, oyle of Lillies ana q. c.

A Cataplasme.

Z

R<sup>x</sup> of



A Cata-  
plafme.

Rx of the flowers of Camomile, of Mellilot, ana M ij.  $\beta$  of Hyffop, M i. of the meal of Fengreek, Barley ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Lin.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , leaves of Mallows, M ij. *Albi graei*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. roots of *Althea*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Figs,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. x. oyle of Lillies, Camomile, fat of a Hen, ana q. s. this may bee used when the disease doth begin to increase.

AGargari-  
fme.

Rx of red Roses, M i. of Barley, M i.  $\beta$ , of Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. of fat and moist Figs,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. vi. boyle thele in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{f}$  i.  $\beta$ , adde to the straining *Mellis rosaei*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ .

Another.

Rx of the water of Wood-bine, of Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.  $\beta$ , *Diamori*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Oxymellis fmp. Mellis rosati*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the ANGI-  
NA or SQUINANCY.

MEanes must bee used that the imposthume increase not, for when it is come to its full ripenesse, it doth choak many men, for this cause at the very first wee must apply the best medicines: then the belly must be emptied by a gentle clyster, afterwards by a stronger. Then shall a veine be opened without any delay, for this is a soveraign remedy against this disease. The next day after the vein is opened, if there be plenty of humors, a gentle purge shall be given, neither in this case the concoction of the humors should bee expected. And if the patient be not able to receive any medicine in at the mouth, then shall a stronger clyster bee made. At the beginning of the disease we must endeavour to drive back the humors from the part affected, rather by medicines inwardly taken, then outwardly & applyed; yet outward in stead of repelling medicines: dippe new thorne wooll in the oyl of Camomile, and lay it on the affected part, and the more the disease encrease, the lesse use there will bee of repelling medicines. After the third day such medicines as doe resolve shall be applyed, which may dissipate the matter that was cast upon the part affected, viz. *Dianucum*, *Diamorum*, a decoction of Licorice or Figs. Then also

also shall such things bee prescribed as may mitigate the pain, for great pain draws the humors to that place where the pain is. For this purpose milke without any thing else is very good. In the mean time we will avert the humors by Ligatures, Cupping glasses, Foments, Frictions, & such other instruments. Then a vein under the tongue may be opened, and the matter of the disease be subject unto nature: it by these remedies we cannot dissolve the matter, but that it will rather turn into corrupt blood, such things must be given as may generate pure blood, and unto such, bastard Pellitory, Mustard-seed must be added, if the imposthume be broken, and the matter doth run. This likewise shall be cleansed by a Gargarisme made of *Hydromell*. Lastly, the ulcer shall be consolidated by such medicines as can close it up, all which things with those medicines spoken of now and before, we shall performe with happy successe if that universals be judiciously considered and compared with particulars.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
**COUGH.**

**A** *Cough* is a violent breathing, whereby plenty of breath or spirit speedily breaking forth, endeavours by its force to discharge sharpe excrements, which doe molest the lungs, and hinder the passages, or which doe any other way offend the body. This motion is caused by nature, which doth force the instruments of breathing by some violent course, from whence the cough is caused, and yet so gentle, that although a man do cough often, yet may it be stopped from coming out. It is often cured by heat, which is stirred up in the instruments of breath, by holding of the breath which runs thorow the narrow passages. The beginning of the cough comes for the most part from the lungs, whereby the muskles of the brest are stirred up, and the chest is vehemently pressed; by which means all things that are in



the way, are expelled, when as the breath breaks out so strongly. The lungs have this passion following it, even as sneezing followes cold in the brain; and to bring this motion into act, first the lungs become wider, then againe they are shrunk; the midriffe also is an helpe to this motion.

*The part affected.*

The lungs are affected; and the cause of this is either, in and from it self, sometime the cause is in some other part, as midriffe or stomack, sometime the liver. For when the lungs feel the other parts to be offended, presently they doe bestir themselves for the expelling of that which was noxious & hurtfull: it is a sufficient argument to prove that the lungs are affected, when as the breathing is offended. The cough is an accident appertaining to the hurt of the lungs: for neither the brest in the plurisy, nor the liver can any wayes beget a cough, unlesse also the lungs by their meanes are hurt. Sometimes a cough followes the stopping of the passages through which breath is moved.

*Signes.*

The signes of this disease are manifest: for this cough is so strong, that doe what a man can he cannot forbear coughing; and it happens sometimes that there is a paine in the chest. This is the best way to purge the body of excrements, by reason of the seates of those parts which serve for breathing. Oftentimes there is a kind of tickling in the inward part of the mouth.

*The Cause.*

It is oft caused by humour which falls from the head into the wind-pipe and lungs, which if it do run abundantly and with great force, the patient doth breath with great difficulty. There is a kind of loading paine in the brest, and back, whereto the lungs are fastned by fylmes, but these symptomes will bee light, when as the excrements that flow from the brain are few. If the distillat. on be fresh, both the sides of the palate are tickled, and the throat is

gald, and mixed with the sharpnesse of humours, and often a cough comes withall, whereby very little is cast up, and that little is thinne. But if these humours bee thinne, and often runne up and down, then they doe delude nature, which is forced to stir up a cough, and though the patient cough strongly, yet doth hee void very little by spitting. Those men are deceived, that think the cough to be then caused, rather by a dry distemper then humours, because that by often coughing they voyd nothing, supposing that there is no surcharging matter but this, as it doth happen when the matter is very thinne. In like manner it is when the matter is slimy, and glutinous, so that it cannot bee voyded. Wherefore we shal stand in need of such medicines as are refining, when the matter is grosse and slimy, which is in the brest and lungs; otherwise we shall have need of such medicines as will thicken the humours. In both causes the surcharging matter deludes nature, by his thicknesse and thinnesse, whereby there commeth great feeblenesse of strength: for weak strength takes great paines in voyding the matter that is within, that the breath may have a passage to and from the heart, and at the length they cannot prevail. Sometime the humours are mixed, which come thither from the head, or are detayned in those places, which is very frequent in pluries, consumption and inflammation of the lungs, & the cough is the symptome of these foresaid diseases, as may be perceived by their proper signes. Sometime it is caused by wormes, hurting the stomach, or by a cold and dry distemper of the ayre, and then the cough is small, and very little is voided by spitting. Sometime this is a symptome of the liver, stomach or spleen, to wit inflammation or hardnesse of those parts, whereof ariseth a dry cough, whereby nothing is voyded.

*Pregnotiques.*

If the cough hinder sleeping, it is an ill signe, also a continuall and vehement cough with distillation, is accounted very bad, because by it is there is some danger of a con-



sumption : sometime also it makes a rupture in the brest, and causeth spitting of blood. A cough with much ease, and quick expulsion, is without danger ; if the contrary happens, it is dangerous. Also a cough caused by an ulcer, or impostume of the breathing parts, is most dangerous, and that cough is dangerous, which was once moist, and is suddenly made dry, a loading or heavy pain stil remaining in the brest, for it threatens exculceration of the lungs. A continuall cough is caused by an old obstruction, or corruption of the lungs, not by rheumes; for when these stay, the cough in like manner stayes.

*A method serving for the cure of the*  
COUGH.

**T**He aire must be temperate, and inclining rather to drines. His meat must be easy of digestion, & the quantity of meat and drink must be moderate. Roasted Veal, Pullets, Hens, Hares, Birds of mountaines are good. Amongst fruits, Raynsins, sweet Almonds, Figs, and Dates are permitted. The patient must avoid such things as are sharpe, salt, and bitter; with his bread annise and Fennill seeds may be mixed; for his drink, Barley-water, *Hydromel*. His exercise must be moderate before meat, long and day sleepes are hurtfull. His belly must be kept loose by art or nature. Hee must avoid wrath, feare, and other perturbations of the mind.

*Preparers.*

Syrup of Hyssop, Hore-hound, Licorice, and Mayden-haire, syr. of Calamint, *Stachados* is good against an old cough; *Oxymel. Compositum*, *Squilliticum*, syr. *Acerosus*, *Mel rosatum*. A decoction of Figges, Raynsins, Licorice, Maidens-haire, Hyssop, Hore-hound. The water of Scabious, Hore-hound, Maiden-haire, Hyssop, Fennill. Syrup of Violets, Poppy, *Jujubinum*, of water-lillies, Violets, Myrtle. Barley-water also is very good. Those medicines which

which are set in the first place, are extenuating, cutting, and wiping medicines, and may be used if the cough be caused by grosse, cold, and slimy humors; if by a hot and thinne humour, these in the second place shall be used: for thinne matter, if it be made thick, will be sooner voided up. They shall rather bee given by themselves, and againe hee shall rather lick them up, then drink them, for else they will not be carried so directly to the lungs.

*Diaturbirb cum rhubarb. Hiera Diacolocimb; Electuarium Indum majus, Diaphenicum, Electuarium rosatum, Hiera picra, Pillule Cochie, Anlephang. Auree, Assieret, de Sarcocolla, de Agarico, Mastichine, Agaricus Trochiscatus, Manna, Cassia.* A decoction of the roots of Fennil seeds, of Annise, Smallage, Nettles, Licorice, Hyssop, Hore-hound, flower-de-luce, Dates, Mayden-haire, Scabious, Elicampany, Raysins, Agarick, *Sal gemma*, Ginger, *Diacath. Electuario Indo, Melle rosato.* A Vomitt. Although *Avicenna* would not have purging medicines used, because there is no direct way through which the medicine should bee conveyed to the lungs; yet purging medicines are very good, because they doe purge the head, from whence this matter did runne into the lungs. Lastly, if the lower parts be purged of the corruption, the head will sooner unload it selfe of the superfluities therein contained.

The *Cephatica* vein shal be opened, whether the matter be hot or cold if the body be full, though the flux of humors be so troublesome, that the brest and lungs have no liberty to stirre; otherwise if cold matter abound, we may forbear opening a vein. Clysters must bee made stronger or gentler as occasion shal serve. Errhines must be made of Hony, juice of Majoram, Bete, Ginger. A cautery is also good, if the disease be violent. This cautery must bee made either on the shoulder, hinder part of the head, or shoulder-blades.

Syrup of Licorice, juyce of Licorice, *Diatragacanthum*

Emptiers.

Averters.

Provokers of  
spittle.



ibum *Loboch* sanum, of a Foxelights, *loboch* of Pines. *Loboch* de pilulis bechicis, *Diatragacanthos*, juyce of Licorice, syrup of Violets, *Saccharo violaceo refacto*, dry Roses and Myrrh, *Diaphenidium sine Sp.* *Diaireos*, *Nicholai*, juyce of Licorice, *Elicampany*, Flower-de-luce, an oyntment for the brest, of the oyle of *Linus*, Flower-de-luce, fresh butter, oyl of sweet Almonds, Mucilage of *Linus*, Fengreek, Saffron.

## Strengibners.

Triacle, Mithridate drunke in Wine twice every weeke, *Diaireos* *Solomonis*, *Loboch* sanum, de pino. *Diaireos simplex*, *Diamuscum dulce*, *Diatragacanth. calidum*, *Diacalamynthum*, *Diaphenidium*, cum speciebus: conserve of Mayden-haire, B. tony, Hyssop, Baulme, *Loch ad Asthma*: a decoction of the wood *Guaiaecum*. An oyntment for the Brest of the oyle of Dill, Camomile, sweet Almonds, Flower-de-luce, Butter, Saffron, Goose or Hens-grease. An oyntment, of oyle wherein the roots of *Elicampany*, Flower-de-luce, Hyssop, the seeds of *Linus*, Fengreek were boyled. A Cucuta of Roses, Cloves, Mace, *Nigella Romana*, *Cyperus* roots, Orange-pills, *Ladanum*, *Storax*, and Calamint.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the COUGH.

## A Clyster.

R<sup>x</sup> the roots of *Elicampany*, *Angelica*, ana  $\text{ʒvi}$ . of cleansed Barley,  $\text{Mij}$ . of Horehound, Hyssop, leaves of Nettles, ana  $\text{Mi}$ . of white and light Agarick,  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana  $\text{Mj}$ . seeds of Annise, Fennill, ana  $\text{ʒi}$ . boyle these in water q.s. unto  $\text{ʒbj}$ .  $\beta$ , adde to the straying *Disturb. cum rhabarb.*,  $\text{ʒvi}$ . oyle of *Linus*, Rew, sweet Almonds, ana  $\text{ʒi}$ .

## A Julep.

R<sup>x</sup> syrup of Hyssop, Licorice, ana  $\text{ʒi}$ .  $\beta$ , syrup *Stechados*,  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ , water of Scabious, Hyssop, Horehound, ana  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . Give  $\text{ʒiiij}$ . for the space of foure or five dayes, in the morning.

R<sup>x</sup> of

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Licorice,  $\frac{3}{4}$  l. of Scabius, Hyssop, Colts-foote, Mayden-haire, ana M i. of Rayfins, M ii. of Damaske Prunes no x. of the best Figs, no vj. of Dates no iii. boyle these in water q. s. until the third part be consumed, adde unto the straining syrup of Licorice  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii. *Diairios simp.*  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , of the finest Sugar,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij.

A Syrup.

R<sup>x</sup> Syrup *Injubini*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  ii. of Licorice, *Mellis rosati*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. of the best Sugar  $\frac{3}{4}$  vj. water of Horehound, Violets, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  v.

A Julep.

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Elecampane,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.  $\beta$ , of cleansed Barley, M ii. of Horehound, Hyssop, Betony, ana M i. of Scabius, M  $\beta$ , of Licorice,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. seeds of Annise,  $\frac{3}{4}$  vj. of Rayfins the stones being taken out M i. of Figs, no x. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\frac{1}{2}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Sugar q. s.

A Potion.

R<sup>x</sup> *Oxymellis squillii*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.  $\beta$ , syr. of Licorice,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i, of the former decoction,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of Fennell, Parsley, *Draguntæ*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. of the roots of Elecampane, Flower-de-luce, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij. Mayden-haire, Hyssop, Horehound, ana M i.  $\beta$ , seeds of Annise,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii. of Rayfins,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.  $\beta$ , of white and light Agarick,  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , of Ginger,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. *Salis gemme*,  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , *sine Alex.*  $\frac{3}{4}$  vi. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\frac{1}{2}$  i.  $\beta$ , addeto the straining syr. of Licorice  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij.

A Potion.

R<sup>x</sup> *Diatrib. cum rhabarb. Electuarii Indi*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii. syr. of Licorice, of Horehound, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , of the decoction of Agarick, Hyssop, Fennell,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> *Pillul. de agarico, aureæ cochiz*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. *Rhab. electi*,  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , syr. *Stechados* q. s. make hereof 7 or 8 pills, and let him take of them about the middle of the night, and the next morning take of great triacle  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. with the water of *Draguntæ*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii.

Pills.

R<sup>x</sup> Syrup of Hyssop, *de jububis*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , *adanthi*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. *Loboch sani*, of Pine, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  v. *Sacchari violati*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iii. mixe these.

A Loeb.

R<sup>x</sup> *Mellis rosati colati*, *Oxymellis simp.* Licorice, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. syr.

Another.



- syr. of Violets, ʒ β, of fine Sugar, ʒ iii. Diatrageamibi frigidī, ʒ ii.*
- A Gargism.** R of the flowers and rinds of Pomegranats, ana ʒ iii. of Roses, M i. β, *Jujubarum sebesten*, ana ʒ β, boyle these in water q. s. unto 1b i. β, adde to the straining syrup of Poppy, ʒ ij, Myrtle, ʒ β, mixe these.
- A draught.** R *Diacodii*, ʒ ii. of Frankincense, ʒ i. β, mixe these, and give ʒ β, thereof with ʒ iii. of the decoction of Barley, syr. of dry Roses, ʒ i.
- Pills.** R *Diatrageamibi frigidī*, ʒ i. β, pills of Hounds-tongue ʒ β, *Diacodii*, ʒ iii. Bole Armony, juice of Licorice, ana ʒ i. β, *Amyli*, syr. of Roses, Poppy ana q. s. hold one of these in the mouth.
- A Perfume.** R of red Roses, M β, *Sandalorum citrinorum*, Mastick, Frankincense, ana ʒ ii. β, *Labdani*, Storax, ana ʒ i. β, morning and evening the patient must receive some of this in his cap.
- A Potian.** R syr. of Poppy, ʒ i. β, of Roses, Myrtle, ana ʒ j of the water of Violets, ʒ iii. of the decoction of Barley, Rayfins, the 4. greater cold seeds, ʒ vj. mixe these, in a hot matter, take of this.
- An Ointment** R of the Oyle of Violets, ʒ i. β, of sweet Almonds, ʒ j. oyl of Flower-de-luce, May butter, ana ʒ β, of Saffron, ʒ β, of Waxe, q. s. anoint the brest herewith, also shave the head, and anoint it with the oyle of Camomile, Roses, Dill.
- A Potion.** R of the best Mithridate, Triacle of *Andromachus*, ana ʒ i. β, of the decoction of Licorice, rootes of Elecampane, Maiden-haire, Hyssop, ana ʒ iiij. syrup of Licorice q. s. for an old Cough this is good.
- Pills.** R of Myrrh, ʒ iii, *Sagapeni*, ʒ i. β, of Hony and *Aqua vite*, q. s. each pill must be ʒ j.
- An Electuary.** R of the roots of preserved Dragant, ʒ ij. roots of *Aristolochia rot.* ʒ j. seeds of *Linus*, Saffron, Frankincense, Mastick, ana ʒ i. β, syr. of Licorice q. s.
- A Suffumigation.** R *Diasulphuris mesue*, ʒ j. ʒ j. must be cast upon the coales that

that it may smoake, by this the reliques of the offending matter may be taken away.

Rx of dry Roses, M i.  $\beta$ , flowers of Camomile, M ii.  $\beta$ , of fryed Branne, M i. for the same purpose as the former was.

*A Quilt.*

Rx of the seeds of Cresses scorched, 3 i. Pigeons-dung, 3 i.  $\beta$ , of Cypresse nuts, 3 v. with the water of the decoction of Cypresse and Staves-acre, make an emplaister for the head, this doth comfort the braine, and takes away superfluous humors.

*An Empla-  
ster.*

*An Appendix serving for the cure of  
the COUGH.*

**A** Cough comes by a matter which doth stop the passage of the lungs, whereto also some flux is joyned, whereby it is distinguished from *Asthma*. First we must make the superfluous humours obedient to nature: when we have effected this, then they must be turned out by purging medicines, and turn that matter aside that is running to the lungs, with Clysters, opening of veines, cauteries, bathings both of hands and feet. Then we may use such medicines as stay the matter falling from the head unto lungs: if this accident concur (yet it is not necessary that this must alwayes cause a cough.) Last of all, such medicines as bring the matter out that is in the lungs, must be prescribed. But if a cough be caused by a pleurisy, or inflammation of the lungs, or a suppuration, or bursting some veine in the lungs, that it cannot well be cured, unlesse these diseases be first cured. And therefore unlesse the cough doth very much paine the patient, the cure of those parts shal be first sought after. How this shall be effected, hath appeared. The decoction of Barley with a great quantity of Sugar is very good, if the cough be caused by tickling in the throat: likewise that a cough may be stayed, some stupefactives must be mixed with detergent medicines. Rx of the juice of Li-

*corice*



corice ʒ ii. β. *Farina amyli* ʒ i. β. of Saffron, Myrrhe ʒ i. β. *Opii. gr. iiii.* of Storax, Calamint ana ʒ iij. syr. of Violets, q. s. make Pills hereof; when the patient goeth to bed, give the patient ʒ i. Or else *Diacodii* ʒ i. But when the matter is riper, and thinner, a decoction of Figs, Raylins, Licorice, Hyssop, Violets, seeds of Quinces, roots of wild Mal-lows. Then R<sup>x</sup> oyle of Violets, ʒ i. β. *Mucilaginum seminum Lini*, *Pssylli*, ana ʒ β. of Waxe q. s. an unguent for the breast.

*A method serving for the knowledge of ASTHMA,  
or shortnesse of breathing.*

**A**sthma is a thick or fast breathing without a Feaver, such as is common unto them that run. There be three kinds of shortnes of breath, for when it doth trouble us so mildly, that there is no noyse of panting, and is without a Feaver, it is called *Dyspnea*, Purlesesse. But when the patient cannot breath without a noyse & panting, it is called *Asthma*. But if it so distresth the patient, that he cannot breath unles he hold his neck streight up, it is called *Orthopnea*, or straightnesse of breathing. The patient is as it were choaked by this latter, if he doe lye down. For the passages of breath in the lungs, the Wind-pipe, and all the inner parts become straighter, & narrower, then when they sit upright, because the whole breast links as it were to the back bone. These three kinds are all contained under a thick and quick breathing, which is caused by grosse and tough humours stuf with the laprets of the lungs. We do not here speake of that difficulty of breathing which is caused by weaknes of body, and strength, for though all the breasts muscles do then move, yet it is done very softly, for if the strength be deficient, the patient neither breathes thick, neither is there great wildnes, and the breath doth rather goe and come thorow the nose. And this is a manifest signe whereby we may know that the

strength

Strength is decayed, when the gristles of the nose are shrunken by drawing breath. Neither do we here treat of that shortness of breathing which is caused by the great heat of heart and lungs, although the breath be necessarily hot, great, frequent, and swift. So in a pleurisy, or squinancy there is both thick and quick breathing, and all these kinds, as they do require a different manner of cure, so they cannot be brought under *Asma*, even as that shortness of breathing which is caused by the greatness of the spleen, or by plenty of water contained in the belly, and the reason why by these shortness of breath is caused, is this, because the midriff is crushed.

*The part affected.*

The windpipes branches, scattered into the Lungs substance are here affected, for being made narrower by this disease, they are sooner offended by humors falling down into them; by which means a great straightness is caused, whereby the quantity of aire which is drawn in, is not answerable to the widening greatness, although the breast be much widened; by this means they are forced to breath thick and quick, because a small quantity is drawn in again: but the contrary happens, when as the wind pipes, and branches belonging thereto are no way offended. This shortness of breath which we do here treat of, is an accident which doth follow the offended action of a voluntary faculty, viz. breathing, which is weak, and depraved. This accident follows as a disease incident to the passages of breathing, viz. straightness and stopping of the passages thorow which aire is drawn.

*Signs.*

Great and thick breathing without a Feaver, sometime with panting and a noyse, which doth happen unto them rather lying then sitting: the breast is heavy, they do feel a



(traightnes and shrinkings. They cough often, but void nothing. This disease sometimes is grown so farre upon the patient, that they are forced to breath with their neck straight upwards, that they may save themselves from choaking. Palenes of face growes in time, and their shoulders ake. These accidents goe and come againe at certaine seasons.

*The Causes.*

The some of quick-silver and the aire of mines from whence metals are digged, do cause this disease, for by these vapours, the lungs are too much dried, distempered diet, grossenes of body, whether it be procured by idleness, or is naturall, causeth short windines. But for the most part it is caused by grosse and flymy phlegme, which doth stick in the wind-pipes passages, or comes thither from some other place; at which time shortnes of breathing is caused: for the instruments of breathing, by reason of superfluities generated in them, have the beginning, and cause of this disease in themselves; for these superfluities by heat are changed into phlegm, like unto glasse or mortar. It is sometime caused by a raw bunch growing in the lungs, neere unto the windpipe, or its branches, and these men, when they doe exercise themselves in the time of their health, are shortwinded, and yet spet very little; this shortwindines comes upon them sodainly, and without a kind of wheesing, or ratling. Sometimes it is caused by the brests narrownes, or Conformation and evill shaping.

*Prognostique.*

*Asthma* in old men is never cured, and hardly in young men. *Asthma* by a dislocation of the joynts of the back-bone, is never or hardly cured, unlesse they be set in their places againe. This affect is oft sharpe, and by distances of time goes and comes again, and by his most vehement fits doth sometime strangle the patient, which then especially doth happen, when as some rheum doth fal from the head

upon

upon the lungs being before straightned; but especially this happens, if the aire be cold and moist, or if by many crudities, the matter be moistned, and spread abroad; for these concurring in an old *Asthma*, the fits are more dangerous, for hereby the stopping is doubled; but a cleare aire, sober life, rest of body cooles this disease. He that hath a straight brest, and little lungs, by nature is continually short-winded. A swoounding with softnes of pulse, unequall, inordinate, and slow is the worst. A kind of trembling breathing is dangerous, especially if the shoulders and shoulder-blades with the muscles between the ribs, by breathing out and receiving breath in, be lifted up, and fall downe againe, but especially if the strength doth begin to fail.

*A method serving for the cure of ASTHMA,  
or short breathing.*

**T**He aire must be hot and dry; his meat Hens, Patridges, Chickens, birds of mountaines: he must forbear eating of such meats as may breed grosse and slymy matter. Amongst Pot-herbs, Fennill, Thyme, Hyssop, Calamint may be allowed. His drink must be small wine, or honied water, wherein Hyssop, or Hore-hound have been boyled; his exercise must be little, as walking a little before meat; the lower parts must be rubbed. Sleep in the day time must be avoided, and in the night it must be moderate. All perturbations of the mind must be avoided.

Syrup of Maiden-hair, Hore-hound, Licorice, Hyssop, of the two roots of Violets, Calamint, *Stachas*, *Adel rosatum*, *Oxymel sim*, *Compositum & squillit*, *Acetum squillit*. A decoction of the roots of Elecampane, *Epithymon*, *Aristolochia rot.* Barly, Linseed, Fengreek, Quinces, Nettles, Fennell, Annise, Maiden-hair, Hyssop, Hore-hound, Scabius, Betony, Rayfins, Figs, Dates, Barley-water with Sugar. The water of Hore-hound, Betony, Hyssop, Barley, Fennell, Violets, A decoction of *Guaiaacum* wood. Very hot things here are not very good, because they doe consume  
that

*Preparers.*



Emptiers.

that which is thin, and leave that behind which is grosse; and because the disease is long, and will scarce be cured by medicines, therefore they must often be changed, for seeing there is no sense of accustomed things, at the last, nature will not care for the continuall use of them. To these before mentioned syrup of Poppy, Quinces, Bole Armony must be added, if we doe intend to stay the rheum.

*Agaricum trochiscatum, diatribum cum rhubarb. Diaphenicon, Diacath. Electuarium Indum majus. Hiera colocymb. Hiera simplex & composita, Pilula de hiera cum Agarico, Pillule mstichine Aggregative, Assaieret, Cebia, Alaphangine, Aromaticae, Agaricum, Cassia, Colocymbis.* Vomit also shall be caused, for that is better then a clyster, because it abides neerer the lungs, and emptieth the stomack of phlegme. If clysters be used, make them of the pectorall decoction of *Cassia, Hiera pira, Diapheniconis*. A vein shall be opened if the body doe abound with blood. Or if the months, and Hemroides be stayd, otherwise this labour shall be spared. In this disease pills are best, because they draw the offending matter from the remote parts: purging medicines in time of the fit must not be used. For it is to be feared, that the matter beeing stirred up too violently, should run unto the lungs; also when the fit is past, purging medicines shall be very seldome used, because the matter that stops the passages, is grosse and vicious. But the matter shall first be made fit for expelling, before purging medicines be used.

Averters.

Nasals shall be made of *Nigella Romana, Cubebs, Nutmegs, the juice of Majoram, Beete, Honeyed-water, Wine.* A Masticatory. The feet must be washed in the decoction of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Betony, Sage, Majoram, leaves of Bayes, of Rosemary. Vesicatory medicines shall be applyed to the coronal seam, if the disease be increased by rheum. Frictions & Ligatures of the extreame parts must be used, especially if there be any danger of suffocation. When the disease doth begin to increas, the brest shall be

well

well rubd with a coorse cloth, that the passages of those parts might be opened, and the vertue of the medicines may be better received into the parts affected. Cupping-glasses shall be laid to the shoulders, if there be danger of suffocation without scarification, or when the Patient doth breath very short; also Cupping-glasses shall be laid unto the reins, unto that place whereon some portion of the lungs doth rest: this must be done in the morning very often.

Syrup of Licorice, *de Iujubis*, Hyssop, Hore-hound, *Di-hyssopus*, *Diapenidion*, *loch sarum*, of Cabages, of Pine, *Diarris*, *Diatrageanthoua*, with the oyle of Annise; Conserve of Elecampane, the broath of an old Cock with the Syrup of Maiden-hair. The lungs of a Fox dried, Syrup of Licorice. *Ericinus Sylvestris*, *Milpeda*, certaine creatures which lie under watery vessels. *Squilla*, Licorice, *Brassica*, *Allium*, Hyssop, Elecampany, *Aristoetichiaroi*. The root of *Serpentaria* laid in hot Embers, with the Syrup of Licorice, Loch of the lungs of a Fox, of Pine, Rayfins, dry Figs, Linseed, *Iujuba*, Scabius, Licorice. A Decoction of Figs, Hyssop, Fengreeke, Licorice, Rayfins, Hony, Saffron. An oyntment for the brest of the oyle of *Linus*, of sweet Almonds, Dill, Rew, Flower-de-luce, Lillies, Camomile, fresh Butter, Hens-grease, the mucilage of Fengreek, *Alhee*, with Saffron, and the roots of Flower-de-luce. The oyntment of *Agrippa*. A Cataplasme of Barley-flower, Figs, Flower-de-luce, Hony and Rayfins. The humors shall be emptied out of the passages & spongy matter of the lungs, by these present remedies, rather then by purging and vomiting medicines, and we wil the rather use these, because the humors doe abound in the body. Also with these we will endeavour to open the pores of the brest with gentle frictions, and then anoint the brest with these oyntments, and afterwards use Cataplasmes.

Triacle with old white wine, *Alex. aurea*, *Diaireos simp.*  
Mithridate, *Diamuscum dulce & amarum*, *Plirisarcoticum*,

Bb

Provokers of  
spittle.

Digesters.

Loch



*Loch ad Asthma, Loch d squilla.* A decoction of Wood *Guaia-  
cum, Meliceratum*, powder of Beaver stone. A suffumiga-  
tion with Brimstone, Frankincense, Mastick, Juniper,  
Turpentine: an oyntment of the oyle of Rew, Flower-de-  
luce, Dill, roots of Flower-de-luce, Elecampane, seeds of  
*Linus*, Hens grease.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of  
short windinesse.*

*A Cyster.*

Rx of the roots of *Aristolochia rot.* Flower-de-luce, ana  
℥ β, of Centory the lesse, Hyssop, Calamint, ana M i. of  
white and light Agarick, ℥ v. boyle these in water q. s.  
until the third part be consumed, adde to the straying, *Sp.  
biera diacolocynth.* ℥ j. β, *Diaturbit rhab.* ℥ v. oyle of Lillies,  
Camomile, Rew, ana ℥ j. of Salt, ℥ j.

*A Julep.*

Rx of Licorice, Horehound, ana ℥ β, of Hyssop, ℥ j. β, *Oxy-  
mellis squillit.* ℥ j. of the water of Horehound, Hyssop,  
Coltsfoot, Scabious, ana ℥ iiij. Give of this ℥ iiij. in the  
morning after which he must take one morsell of *Diaireos  
simp.*

*A Syrup.*

Rx of the roots of Elecampane, Flower-de-luce, ana ℥ ij.  
of Hyssop, Coltsfoot, ana M ij. β, of scraped Licorice, ℥ j. β,  
seeds of Annise, ℥ j. of Rayfins the stones being taken out  
℥ iiij. of the seeds of Fengreek ℥ j. flowers of Violets,  
Thyme, ana M i. of Figs, no vj. boyle these in water q. s.  
untill the third part be consumed, adde hereto a little Ho-  
ney, whereof a syrup must be made, and he must take half  
a spoonefull hereof in his mouth.

Rx *Oxymellis squillitici*, ℥ j. drink this with the former  
decoction.

*A Potion.*

Rx Elecampane, Coltsfoot, Hyssop, Maiden-haire, Hore-  
hound, ana M i. of scraped Licorice, ℥ j. seeds of Annise,  
℥ β. Let the Patient take in the morning, ℥ iiij. of this de-  
coction

tion if the disease wil give any ease or respite to the Patient, with  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the former syrup, afterwards when the former decoction is boyled, *sene Alex.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $j$ . of white and light Agarick,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $iiij$ . seeds of *Carthamus*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , must be added, whereof a purging potion shall be made, which may serve for two or three times.

Rx of Agarick made into a trochiske, *Hiera diacolocynth.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ .  $\beta$ , *Pillularum Elephanginarum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $j$ . *Oxymellis squillitici* q. s. make hereof Pills n<sup>o</sup> 8, and they must be given after the first sleep.

Pills.

Rx *Pillul. cochiarum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $ij$ . *Pillul. de Agarico*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $ij$ . *Rhabarb.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ .

Pills.

Rx *Diapheniconis*, *Cassia*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Agarick made in a trochiske,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the finest Sugar q. s.

Bolus.

Rx of the roots of Radish,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $ii$ . of Betony,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ . *Seminis nasturtii*, *Atriplicis*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $ii$ . boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, unto  $\mathfrak{z}$   $v$ . of this straining, adde *Oxymellis squillitici*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ .  $\beta$ , *Succi cepa domestice*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . Give this after dinner, and the Patient must walke after it: also a vomit may be made with the decoction of Radish root and white Hellebore.

A Vomit.

Rx Conserve of Violets, roots of Elecampane, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $vi$ . conserve of Rosemary flowers,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Sp. Diatreos Salomonis*. *Diatragacanthi frigidis*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $ii$   $\beta$ , syr. of Violets, Maydenhaire, ana q. s.

A Lohoch.

Rx syrup of Hyssop, of Horehound, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ . *Loboch scylla*, of a Woolles lungs, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , the roots of Elecampane,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $ii$ . juice of Licorice, Sugar-candy, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ .  $\beta$ .

A Lohoc.

Rx syr. of Hyssop, of Horehound, Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ . *Oxymel. simp.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ .  $\beta$ . take one spoonefull hereof with a draught of Barley water.

A draught.

Rx syrup of Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Oxymellis simp.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $i$ .  $\beta$ , *Loboch.* of the lungs of a Fox,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $vi$ . of Gumme Armoniack  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ .



A mixture.

Rx of the roots of Elecampane preserved, Dragant, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , *Loboch* of the lungs of a Fox, *Loboch sani*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\text{v}$ . roots of Flower-de-luce,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{ii}$ . Syrup of Hyssop q.f. mixe these, and the Patient must take hereof very often.

An Electuary.

Rx of the roots of Elecampane, *Gentiane*, Lungs of a Fox ana  $\mathfrak{z}\text{ii}$ . *Diaireos*  $\mathfrak{D}\text{iiij}$ . *Mellis squillitici*, q.f. give  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . hereof unto the Patient in the decoction of Scabious, Hyssop, Mayden-haire.

A Powder.

Rx of Licorice scraped,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{ii}$ .  $\beta$ . of Hyssop,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . of Saffron,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{i}$ . the roots of Colts-foot,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}\beta$ , of Mace,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{ii}$ . season the meat with this powder.

An electuary.

Rx *Loboch* of the Lungs of a Fox,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{i}$ . *aurea Alex.* of the best Michridate, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . *Squilla asæ*,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . Conserve of the roots of Elecampane,  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , give twice in a week  $\mathfrak{z}\text{ii}$ . hereof in white wine.

Another.

Rx preserved roots of Elecampane,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{ii}$ . preserved roots of Flower-de-luce,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . juice of Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ .  $\beta$ . juice of Hyssop,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . of Pepper, seeds of Nettles,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{iiij}$ , of Rayfins, the stones being taken out, of bitter Almonds, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , Syrup of Hyssop q.f.

Pills.

Rx of Bay-berries,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{vi}$ . roots of Dragant,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . Bole Armony,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{ii}$ . juice of Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}\beta$ , Syrup of Hyssop, q.f. Let the patient take three or foure of these when hee goes to bed.

A Suffumigation.

Rx of Frankincense, Mastick, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}\beta$ . of Brimstone,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{ii}\beta$ , of Juniper,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{ii}$ . of Storax,  $\mathfrak{D}\text{i}$ . of Turpentine q.f. when there is any occasion for the use of this, cast a piece of this lump upon live coales, and the smoake must be conveyed unto the mouth by a Pipe, also a cap must be smoaked herewith, and put upon the Patients head; this doth dry the superfluous humidity.

An Ointment

Rx the oyle of Cammomile,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}\beta$ , of Dill,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{vi}$ . of sweet Almonds,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{iii}$ . *Sp. Diaireos*,  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , roots of Elecampane, and Dragant, ana  $\mathfrak{D}\text{i}$ , of Waxe and Vineger a little.

Rx of

R<sup>o</sup>f oyle, white Lillies, sweet Almonds, *Lini*, ana ʒ ʒ, oyle of Bayes, Cammomile, ana ʒ iij. of fresh Butter, Hens and Ducks greafe, ana ʒ iij. juice of Hyssop, Elecampane, ana ʒ ij. roots of Dragant, ʒ ʒ, of Saffron ʒ ʒ, of Wax q. s. an oyntment for the brest.

An oyntment.

R<sup>o</sup>f the roots of Flower-de-luce, Elecampane, ana ʒ ʒ, *Farina bordeaceæ*, *Oleaceæ*, seeds of *Linus*, ana ʒ j. of Figs, n<sup>o</sup> x of Rosin, Turpentine, ana ʒ j. ʒ, *Mellis destu-*  
*mati*, q. s.

A Cataplasme.

An Appendix serving for the cure of ASTHMA  
or short windinesse.

**F**irst, the belly must be purged by a convenient Clyster, the use of these is approved to be good for this disease. And then if the disease will permit, the humors that offend and presse too much upon the Lungs, shall be made obedient unto nature. Then we must turn aside the humors that are running unto the brest, with Errhines, Sneezing medicines, Apophlegmatisms, Cupping-glasses, one shall bee placed upon the back neer unto the heart, if the matter be windy. Also the matter shall be brought back with Frictions, warme Bathes, wherein the thighs shall be bathed. At the length we will administer such things as will bring out the corrupt matter lurking in the lungs. Therefore such as doe procure spittle, amongst which, such may be added that will dissipate the reliques, and strengthen the lungs. But a care ought to be had that such medicines be not given that heat and dry too much. For els the humors would with more difficulty remaine. For seeing the humors are grosse and viscos, and remaine longer in the Lungs, if then the humor be exposed to heat, it would be as it were baked, and so wax hard; therefore they that

Bb 3

heat



heat and moysten moderately, shall be mixed with cutting medicines, abttergings, and allayers of paine. Againe, medicines too cold must be avoided as well as too hot, unlesse that there be danger of suffocation, and exulceration by rheum. And here, as in other dayly diseases, the medicines shall be changed, because too much use of one sort of medicines doth but dull the Patient.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
**PLEURISIE.**

**A** Pleurisie is an inflammation of the thinne and small skinne which clotheth the ribs on the inner side, called in Latine *Pleura*, from whence the disease doth take its name: whereby it appears that every paine of the side is not the Pleurisie, for there be many paines of the side; yet in this place we treat of that paine that doth follow a sharp disease by the inflammation of that thinne skin: for if the inflammation be in the outward muscles, or if the pain be great, because of windinesse, this is a bastard Pleurisie, then are they without a Feaver, yet feel a pain in the brest, which only by touching is very much exasperated; nevertheless this is not so constant as the other, but will be mitigated if such things be applyed as will disperse windinesse.

*The part affected.*

The part affected, as was declared, is a thinne small skin, and the signes hereof besides difficulty of breathing, and a vehement cough, there is likewise a kind of pricking pain, which plainly doth demonstrate, that the membranes, and some other tender parts are affected.

*Signes.*

*Signes.*

There is a pricking paine very troublesome wick doth spread it selfe over the sides and breast; for this dilatation by crushing, stretching, and violently moving the breast, doth augment the paine. Sometime the pain spreads it selfe even unto the short ribs, sometimes to the channell bone of the throat, necessity doth compell him to breathe short and thick, yet it is small in regard of that paine which doth hinder the instruments of breathing to be lift up, and yet this is necessary by reason of great inflammation, whereby he is forced to double his breath, that by this means that heat might be refreshed, which before was over-heated. Also there is a continuall Feaver, because the inflammation doth border upon the heart. The pulse is thick, not too great, hard and unequall, and by that means rough and like unto a Saw. A cough also commeth withall, at the first day, and then nothing is voyded, at the length spittle comes up coloured according to the nature of the excrements, and it is also moister. Then he begins to void greater store, and sometimes it is red, and bloody, sometime yellow, at the length when the Impostume is ripe, the spittle is mattery: the Patient finds greater ease when he lies on the sick side, then on the other. But the patient must rather lye on his back, then on that side, for if he lye on that side, the pain is increased, because the matter is more spread abroad by reason of their crushing: but if he turn himselfe upon his sound side, the film affected is more stretched, and the humours bend towards the sound part. This pain for the most part is not irksome toward night. Sometime this disease is at an end, if the matter by sweating fall upon the lungs, for then it will be driven out with a cough, which is most to be desired. Sometime it gets thorow the pores, but this is but seldome. Sometimes the matter is ripened & turned into corrupt blood, and when the impostume is opened, unless it be avoided by cough the Patient



ent within forty days doth spit corrupt blood: but when the matters doth begin to bee corrupted, paine and Feavers are encreased, he breaths more hardly, hee voyds little or nothing by cough, a great rednesse breaks out in his cheeks, watchfulnesse and thirst do much oppresse him, when the matter is ripe, paine and Feavers are slackned, he coughs more, and doth cast up little. But when the impostume is ready to breake, paine and Feaver again encrease, he breathes with more difficulty, his strength failes, and he quakes and trembles with cold: but if at that time the Patient is not weake, and his spittle is good, the best is to be hoped, and the greater that the Feaver, paine, and hardnes of breathing is, that the impostume will sooner break, if these symptomes be milder, the longer it will be before it doth break. We say that it is but the beginning of the disease, when he spits little, and that is undigested: but if it doe appeare reddish, then is the disease past the beginning: when it is changed from rednesse to white or leaden colour, and is voyded in great store, and the symptomes encrease, the mischief doth then encrease, but spittle equally white, and the symptomes slackned, signifie that the state is come. When spittle with other symptomes are abated, then the declination of the disease is expected. And sometime after the matter is digested, it is conveyed by veines to *Chilus* and the guts, and so is voided by a stoole, or els it is conveyed from thence to the urine pipes, and so it goes away with the urine. Sometime it is conveyed to the throat, braines, eares, and sinews, from whence impostumes of the throat and eares, phrensie and palsey are generated. Sometimes it falls downe into the joynts and flanks, when the paine rather tends to the outward parte, the paine is duller, not pricking, and it is a bastard Plurisy, and al the symptomes are milder. Also the pain doth grow greater by crushing, lying on the sound side is lesse troublesome, his pulse is neither stretched nor hard, unequal or thick,

chick, he is free from a Feaver. Yet sometimes outrageous pains are stirred up by windiness, and bring a true plurisy, also there is pain in the side when the liver is inflamed, but it is not pricking; and the cough caused by the inflammation of the liver, is ever dry and little.

*The Cause.*

The cause for the most part is blood, running from the hollow veines into the ribs thin veines; and sometimes it is simply good, which is signified by red spittle, the season of the year, youth, dyet, breeding much blood, hot and moist temperament, and temperate region. Sometime it is caused by phlegmy blood, and then the disease is of longer continuance, and the spittle is frothy, and white. The season of the year which is Autumne, the cold constitution, and region of the aire, doe signifie this, as also diet generating phlegmy blood; sometimes cold doth draw the blood out of the veynes, or too much heat will doe as much, too much drinking of cold water, a fall, the over-loading with a burden, suddaine cold after a sweat; sometime the blood is cholerick, and then a sharper disease is caused. Also suppression of the Hemroids or monethly tearms will cause a plurisy.

*Prognostiques.*

The Plurisy is dangerous unto old men, women with child, and such as have been sick twice or thrice of it. It doth vex the patient more in the night then day. Whosoever is sick of a plurisy, and are not cleansed in xiiij. dayes they turne to suppuration. In that plurisy wherein somewhat is voyded by spittle, and it doth then cease, the breast being pained, and heavy: in these there is great danger; for this is a crude disease, and doth either kill the patient presently, or else it will sick by their sides a long time. Spittle bloody and yellow is bad; but much bloody at the first is not dangerous; for all spittle, the more humours are mixed with it, the greater the danger is. In a plurisy, if the pulse be little, very swift and hard, doth presage death; and



seeing that the disease is known by its proper symptoms, and the greatnesse of the disease is weighed by the greatnes of the symptoms, therefore we say a pluryly will be mild enough, if pain, difficulty of breathing, and the Feaver doe not much molest them, as also if any coloured spittle bee voyded by cough, & if lying on both sides be suffered with ease; in like manner the contrary will prove dangerous. It doth kill by choaking, or too much pain, or by some other great symptoms, or by the translation of the matter into the lungs, whereby the consumption of them is caused, and also ulcers.

*A method serving for the cure of the*  
**PLURISY.**

**T**He aire must be temperate, and somewhat inclining to heat. His meate of easie digestion, viz. Hens broth, Prisan, Almond Milk. In the beginning of the disease, a little nourishment is sufficient, afterwards greater plenty may bee permitted. Rayns, Almonds, sweet apples are good, amongst Pothearb; Endive is good. His drink must be prisan, the decoction of Cinnamon, Licorice, flowers of Violets, he may not drink wine untill the disease be slaked, rest of body, and longer sleep then usuall, may be permitted, and the belly must be kept loose.

*Averters.*

A vein must be opened, and if necessity require, at mid night. For a sharpe Feaver, difficulty of breathing, and extremity of pain doe threaten death. When the patient is somewhat amended, the *Basilica*-vein shall be opened; and if that doe not appear, the median opposite to that side that is affected: for this drawes back, evacuates, and diverts the matter another way: if strength do fail, and the body bee not full of blood, the blood shall be taken away at sundry times; gentle Clysters shall be given if the belly be bound, or in stead of them a suppositor. Ligatures, frictions, & hot

fomen-

fomentation of the limbs. Cupping-glasses shall be fastned to the ribs, and flanks, then unto the shoulders, for old men & children this is better than opening of a vein, unlesse the patient be strong. If a vein doe not appear, Horse-leaches, shall be laid unto the patient, and their tails shall be cut off, that they may draw the more blood.

Syrup of Violets *Injubes*, Mayden haire, whereunto some *Saccharum violaceum* must be added, for this is good to cause spitting. Syr. of Licorice with barley-water, water with Sugar, whereto a little Cinnamon may be added. Water of Endive, and sod barley. A decoction of Barley, Violets, Licorice, *Jusjubes* *Sebesten*. *Cardum benedictum*; and if it shall be used for the slaking of thirst, the former syrups shall be mixed: it is also good to cleanse the body, and dissolve corrupted matter.

Preparers.

*Diaprunum*, *lenitivum*, *Diacatholicum*, *Diaphenicum*, *Syr. Rosarum laxativum*, Agarick with a pectorall decoction, Rhubarb with Manna, and syr. of Licorice, new *Cassia*. A Clyster is better then a purge: the Clyster must be made of the common decoction, Oyle of Violets, Cammomile, *Cassia*. If any other matter beside blood doe offend, it must be cast out by a convenient medicine. Yet here care ought to be had, that the purging medicines (if any be administered) be not too strong: especially, if we can guesse by any signs, that the matter runs. Also such medicines as are mixed with hellebore & scammony, must be forbidden: for too many by these and such other strong medicines, have beene deprived of life, the strength being by them weakned, for by these purging medicines the blood is more stirred up. If the disease be caused by rheume, or if the paine tends unto the short ribs, or lies in the bowels and stomach, and other neer adjoyning parts, wee may easily perceive that the humours bee at a stand, which cause this disease, and then these parts must bee emptied by a Clyster, or some other convenient medicine; nevertheless a medicine that turnes away the humours, shall

Emptiers.



not be used untill 7. dayes be expired, for hereby we may hinder spitting, which by all meanes must bee provoked. Neither at the end of 7. dayes we will admit of that medicine if the body be much abated, and the Feaver vehement, for it will more consume the body, than it can any other way doe good.

*Provokers of  
spittle.*

Syrup of *Iujuba*, Licorice, Violets, with twice as much Barley-water, shall be given untill the fourth day, then the quantity of the syr. of Violets shall be lessened, and the syr. of Licorice increased. Syr. of *Iujuba*, *Saccharum*, *Violarum*, *Candum*. White Pills, *Diapenidium*, *Diarragacanthum frigidum*, with Tuber of Violets, whereto a little *Diatreos Salomonis* shall be added. *Loboch de pino*, *Loboch sanum*. A decoction of Figs, Barley, Violets, *Iujuba*, Licorice and after the third day some syrup of Licorice shall bee added. *Diabuglossatum* shall be mixed with the former, because it doth comfort the heart. An oyntment of the oyle of Violets shall bee prescribed against the fourth day, wherewith the brest shall bee anoynted, then the Oyle of sweet Almonds, Lillies, Camomile, shall be added; or else onely the Oyle of sweet Almonds may bee used. At the length, unto the former the powder of flower-de-luce, or Hyssop shall be added. From such medicines as bind too much, we must abtaine, and in stead of them, wee may use such as doe digest and loosen the hard parts. The best for this purpose is the Oyle of Violets; and besides, this qualifies the sharpnesse of the heat, but wee will vary these medicines, according unto the variety of time.

*Digesters.*

*Diabyssopus*, the former provokes off spittle. A fomentation of white wine, wherein are boyled the flowers of Camomile, Mellilote; the roots of wild Mallows, Linseed, Fengreeke, Bran, Dill, Hyssop, leaves of Violets, garden-Mallows. Fill a bladder halt full of this decoction: being rightly applyed, it is good against windines. If this disease were caused by blood, it will rather increase the disease, than diminish it. Wherefore in the beginning it must bee used.

used with caution, afterwards more freely. The ointment of *Dialbea*, whereunto the powder of flower-de-luce must be added. An ointment of the oyle of Camomile, Hens fat, oyle of sweet Almonds, Violets, the root of Flower-de-luce. The leaves of Cabage dried against the fire, and layd upon the side, but first butter must be layd upon the place. Make a Cataplatine or Emplayster of oyle of sweete Almonds, Lillies, Linseede, and Camomile, the mucilage of Linseede, Fengreek, wild and garden Mallows, amongst which the powder of Mustard-seed may bee added, as also of Cresses make this soft, and apply it hot unto the side, and when it is cold, it must be removed.

*A more particular method serving for the cure  
of the PLURISY.*

R of cleansed Barley, M i. leaves of Mallows, Mercury, Violets, ana M i β, of Damaske Prnnes, x. xij. boyle these in water q. s. unto t̄b i. β, adde unto the straying of new Cassia, or course Sugar, ana ʒ i. oyle of Violets, Lini, ana ʒ i. β, the yolke of an Egge: administer this every other day.

R syr. de *Injuba*, Licorice, ana ʒ i. β, syr. of Violets, ʒ i. water of Colts-foote, ʒ v. a decoction of Barley, Figs, Mayden-hair, ʒ vi.

R syr. of Violets, Licorice, *Acetosi compositi*, ana ʒ i. water of Scabious, Colts-foote, A decoction of cleansed Barley, ana ʒ iij.

R of cleansed Barley, M iij. of Rayfins, ʒ ij. of scraped Licorice, ʒ i. of Hyslop, Coolts-foot, ana M i. seeds of Annise, Lini, Melons, ana ʒ i. flowers of Wood-rowell, p i. boyl these in water q. s. unto t̄b ij, adde to the straying syr. *violati*, ʒ iij.

*A Clyster.*

*A Julep.*

*Another.*

*A Pissan.*



A Lobach.

R<sup>x</sup> syr. of Violets, Licorice, *Oxymellis simp.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Diatragacanthi frigidi*, Sugar-candy, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> of *Cassia*, *Diacath.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . of the common decoction q. s. Give this in the morning.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> of *Cassia*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. *Diapruni solutivi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Rhabarb. electi*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , syr. of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of the decoction of Barley,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> of white and light Agarick,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Rhabarb. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij.  $\beta$ , of Spike. gr. xij. infuse these in  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. of flesh broth, adde unto the straining *Diacath.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. syrup of Violets  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

A Loeb.

R<sup>x</sup> *Sacchari violati*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *manus Christi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. Sugar-candy,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Sp. Diatragacanthi frigidi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij.  $\beta$ , syrup of Violets, q. s. lick this up with the tongue, or else the patient may hold Sugar-candy, and *Saccharum violaceum* in his mouth, or else *Diapenidion*.

A Lobach.

R<sup>x</sup> syr. *de Iujubis*, Violets, Licorice, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Mayden-hayr,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Sugar-candy,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> syr. of Licorice, Hyssop, *Aetiosi simp.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Oxymellis squilli*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. this may be used, if the spittle be so thicke that it cannot be voided. Also give flesh-broth, wherein a little Sugar must be put: for this is good likewise for the same purpose.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> *Diaireos simp.* *Pillularum bechicarum*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . *Diatragacanthi frigidi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. Sugar-candy, Juyce of Licorice, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , syrup of Violets, q. s. dip a Licorice-stick herein, and lick up the mixture from the stick.

An Oyntment.

R<sup>x</sup> oyle of Violets, Sweet Almonds, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. a little Waxe, and Saffron, when it is fit time to resolve the matter, the roots of white Lillies, Hyssop, and oyle of Camomile may be added.

A Liniment.

R<sup>x</sup> *Unguenti pectoralis*, oyle of Linum, Sweet Almonds, and Capons-grease, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. oyl of Camomile,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. of Saffron, gr. ij. of Waxe q. s.

An Oyntment.

R<sup>x</sup> oyle of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Sweet Almonds,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , dip a linnen cloth in these, and anoynt the affected part herewith,

then

then bind the cloth upon the place.

R of oyle of sweet Almonds, Lillies, *Keirini, unguenti dialtheae*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  of Capons greafe, fresh butter, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. of Vinegar and Waxe, a little quantity.

R of the roots of Lillies, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, red Roses, leaves of Mallowes, Scabious, ana Mi. of Branne, Linseed, Fengreke, ana M.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. f. dippe a sponge in it and wash the affected side herewith, but first a linnen cloth must bee put upon the place, that it bee not too much moistened.

R of the oyle of Violets, sweete Almonds, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , of Camomile, May-butter, *Unguenti dialtheae*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. oyle of Dill, Lillies, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij, roots of flower-de-luce,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, of Wax, a little quantity.

R of the roots of flower-de-luce, Elicampany, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. roots of *Althea*  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. of Thyme, Colts-foote, Sage, Betony, Hyssop, ana M  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. f. untill the third part bee consumed, adde to the straining, *Mellis dispensari* q. f.

R of the seeds of Cummin,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Rosemary, Hyssop, Origan, ana Mi. of fryed Salt, Mi.  $\beta$ , of fryed Branne, Mij. sprinkle white Wine upon these in the frying. Put these in a bag and lay them unto the affected side, and when it doth beginne to waxe cold, wet it againe in hot Wine, and so apply it again. After this, keep it warm by applying hot cloathes thereto, for it must neither bee laid cold unto the side, neither should remain long cold when it is upon the side.

R of Mallowes, water-Mallowes, ana M i. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Mug-wort, ana M  $\beta$ , of Hyssop, p. ii. of Worm-wood, p. i. roots of *Althea*,  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ . Boyle these in water q. f. unto a thicknesse, beate it in a mortar and adde of Barley-flower,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of the flower of Lin-seed,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Capons greafe, fresh Butter,  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , oyle of Camomile q. f.

A Liniment.

A Fomentatio.

An Ointment.

A Julep.

A Bagge.

A Cataplasme.

R of



*Another.*

R the roots of *Althea*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. flowers of Camomile, Dill, ana M i. of Barley-flower, Lin-seed, Fen-greek, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. seeds of Annise  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. unto a softnesse, bruise them well in a mortar together, and adde of the oyle of Camomile. q. s.

*A Syrup.*

R syrup of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Poppy,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the decoction of Barley  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. Give this in the night time, if the patient cannot sleep well: make also an oymtent for the brow and temples, with the oyle of Violets and Poplar.

*An appendix serving for the cure of the*  
PLURISY.

**F**irst, the belly must be evacuated by a Clyster, after this a vein shall be opened, for this doth hinder the diseases perfection. Then againe gentler Clysters, Cupping-glasses, Frictions, Ligatures, Suppositors, shall be used for the turning away the matter from the affected part, and the diseases perfection bee hindred. And if plenty of matter doe surcharge the body, or if it rage much, or if it be not as yet come to the part affected, neverthelesse doth rage, and the pain inclines unto the lower parts of the brest; some gentle purge shall be given even before digestion, that the diseases increase may be stopped, and also its perfection, which by all meanes must bee sought; then the matter of the Plurisie that sweats into the lungs, shall be made obedient unto nature, by such medicines as provoke spitting. If by those meanes formerly recited, corruption of the matter cannot bee hindered, such medicines must be prescribed as may bring down snot. viz. The decoction of Figs, Dates, Barley, Lilly-roots, Mallows, seeds of Cresser, lin-seed, Fen-greek, Mustard-seed, Licorice, Raisins. Also a Fomentation may bee made of the decoction of Mallows, *Althea*, seeds

seeds of Fengreek, Linseed, quinces, Figs. A cataplasme with Mallows, *Althea*, Linseed, Fengreek, Quinces, Dates, Figs, Buster, Hony, Hens, Duckes, and Swines-grease. After wee have perceived by the agues paines asswaging, and by increase of heavinesse about the place affected, that the matter is ripe, then he shall endeavour to cough much, and shall lye on his sick side rather than on his sound, and then the lower part of his throat shall be tickled with a feather, to provoke vomiting, and yet he must not vomit. When the imposthume is broken, the patient may drink honyed, or sugard-water, Barley-water, with syrup of Hyssop. To cleanse the body, the part affected shall be washed with the decoction of Hyssop, or Calamint. The brest shall bee annoynted with Oyle of Camomile, Lillies, and powder of flower-de-luce, the broth of an old Capon, wherein Hyssop, and Mayden-hair have been boyled, shall be given. Then the patient may drink goates milk, and such things as shall be spoken of in the next chapter. If it be a bastard plurisie, then shall they be prescribed that do mildly resolve, for which purpose receive of the flowers of Camomile, Miß, Leaves of Rew, Dill, Violets, Mallows, ana Mi. Let them boyle in water, untill the third part be consumed; dip a sponge in the hot liquor, and lay it to the pained side with a hot cloth between, that heat may the longer be kept; this shall often be renewed, continuing the first course still. If there be no fulnesse of body, and if the matter causing pain be windy, and doth consist of small quantity of humours, and thin, a bag shall be layed to the side, wherein salt, *Milium*, and bran shall be put; Or else a cataplasme of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana Mi. of the leaves of Rew, Majoram, wild Penny-royall, ana pi, seeds of annise 3 i, Bay-berries 3 ii. Boyle these moderately, beat them all together in a mortar, and adde as much Hony, as is sufficient. Make also an emplaster of the Oyle of Camomile, of Pitch; also Cupping-glasses are good to fetch out the matter of the disease.



*A method serving for the knowledge of the Disease,  
which is commonly called, Spining  
of Blood.*

**S**pinning of blood is any voiding of the blood at the mouth: this affect is oftentimes the cause of most evill and long diseases. Blood is voided from many places of the body, as shall appear by that which follows; and here care ought to bee had in observing whether the patient was wont to bleed at the nose or no, for from thence it doth fall into the stomack and throat, and sometime into the lungs, but for the most part it doth turn and harden into a cold; if then one spit blood, and yet did not bleed at the nose formerly; then it doth come from some inferiour part, which shall be known by peculiar signes.

*The part affected.*

Blood is oft voyded from the gummies, and mouth it self, and then the spittle is of a bloody colour, & very little is voyded out, and that without cough, if it do come from the throat or weezell-pipe, then it is voyded by hemming, not by cough, and the continuat parts of those places do appear loosened if the tongue be thrust down. But if it did come from the head, a pain of the head with heavines went before: and a noyse in the eares, the forehead veins rise, they have a kind of sense of heat and blood in the mouth, and a tickling is felt in the palate: if it doth run into the throat from whence by often hemming it is cast out, oftentimes, the patient hath a desire to cough, and cannot. But if the blood doe come from the lungs, then the blood is foamy, and is voyded by frequent coughing, and without pain, and at sundry times. And as oft as blood is voyded, because some great veine is burst, then plenty of blood is cast up, no cause except that known, it is as it were cast up by vomit,  
and

and whole basons full are voyded; <sup>A</sup> cast  
up, because some veine in the lungs is gnawn, which is oft  
caused by a sharpe humour falling down, then is it voyded  
by degrees a little now and then, unlesse some great vein be  
fretted asunder: for then it runs out in great abundance, &  
this is most dangerous: For then comes a dry cough, the  
spittle is mattery or bloodish, of an ill colour and sent,  
which is never without a Feaver, sometimes some part of  
the lungs being rotted is voyded up by cough, and this is  
the surest sign of the lungs exulceration. Sometime blood is  
spit out onely by opening a vein, as may happen, if the diet  
be too hot and moist, and then at the first it is voided up in  
a small quantity, and is both thinne and red: but if it bee  
voyded from the brest, then it is not foamy blood, but black  
and thick: sometimes it is mixed with matter, and comes  
up with a stronger and frequent cough, because it must  
needs be drawn up to the lungs before it can be driven out  
at the wind-pipe, and it is voyded in small quantity, and  
not without pain of the brest. If it comes from the wind-  
pipe principally, it is voyded with some paine, and little  
blood, and this is red and hot with a little cough. If it  
come from the stomach, it will be voyded without cough-  
ing, or vomiting, neither will there be any great quantity  
hereof, because the veines in the stomach are but small. But  
if it be brought from the liver, spleene, or belly, a loading  
paine doth disturbe the parts, and the blood is voyded by  
vomit, and the other parts doe bestow a greater quantity  
upon the stomach, it will be of a darkish colour inclining  
unto blacknesse, it will also bee clodded, if it be voyded  
from the spleen, therefore before any peculiar remedy is set  
down, every one of these peculiar manners of voyding  
blood must be marked. Spitting of blood is an accident  
appertaining to any thing issuing out, which is changed in  
kind besides nature.



*The Signes.*

The signes of this disease and of the part affected appear by that which was said before.

*The Causes.*

It is often caused by fulnesse, and by a great quantity of Blood which doth offend the body, & some peculiar parts of the body more particularly; for hereby the vessels mouths are opened; the signes of this is a good habit of body, immoderate use of hot nutriments, and wine, suppression of tearms, and then there is no pain, but rather a light-somenesse of the body, which before was dull, and then also there is but a small quantity hereof, and it is not very foamy or red. Women without any danger of consumption have been eased by this shedding of blood in the suppression of their tearms. Oftentimes a vein in the lungs is burst by a fall, or labour, or some lowd out-cries, from hence blood issueth out: sometimes it doth happen by corrosion of the vessels, and the blood is then voyded by little quantities, & at sundry times a sharpe rheum went before this. If the blood be mattery, it is a sure sign that somewhat is putrefied in the lungs, as if some part of the vein or arteries in the lungs be voyded. But it is certain that some part of the lungs are eaten away.

*Prognastiques.*

If the lungs be ulcerated, there is danger, for then there is danger of suppuration, and of a consumption; for by the reason of continual motion, the lungs cannot be hardened: also in spongy substances blood will sooner stick, & will with great difficulty be cast out, whereby a greater sharpnes is caused, which doth exulcerate the lungs; also hereby the breathing is hindered, the heat in the body is increased & the body consumed. When a vein in the lungs is opened or burst, yet there is some hope, if the substance of the lungs be sound: yet a consumption signifies danger, if the blood

which

which comes out of the rupture of a vein falling upon the lungs, be there detayned, by which means the lungs are inflamed and putrefied; for at the length the substance of the lungs will be corrupted, and exulcerated. Also there is danger when either a great vein bee opened, or broke; for then the heart may be suffocated; for sometime such plenty of blood hath been voyded from thence, that hath fild whole basons. Spitting of blood if it be caused by a corrosion of the lungs, is incurable. If it come from the breast, there is lesse danger. And when spitting of blood doth succeed spitting of matter, this is a sign that the lungs are exulcerated. Spitting of blood, if it doth continue long, wil at the length be turned into a consumption. They which spit blood whilest they lye on their sick side, doe it more pleasantly. Yet spitting of blood is not alwayes dangerous, for by this means an imposthume of either liver or spleen, is cured.

*A method serving for the cure of spitting*  
**BLOOD.**

*The course of Diet.*

**T**He aire ought to be somewhat inclining unto cold and dry, and the patient must avoyd the sunshine and a bright fire; his meat must be such as doth coole, dry, and bind, and they ought to be of a slymy substance. If it bee caused a burst of any of the veines of the lungs, viz. Milk, Feet of Calves, Hogs, or Kids, the gelly of fishes. Also the flesh of Hens, Pigeons, Conies, Fawnes, Partridges, Pheasants, Larkes, fishes that lye in stony places, and fresh-water Crabs. Also the patient must eate sparingly. He may drink wine and water mixed together. Sometimes he may bee permitted to drinke red wine, if that strength should begin to faile: and also goates milk is good for the patient. Hee must shun all exercise, and give himself wholly unto rest. He must breath very gently: For violent breathing is offensive. He must not sleep in the day time, and at night



his sleep in the night must be moderate, not in the day time. His belly must be kept loose by art or nature. Perturbation of the mind must be avoyded, but especially anger.

## Preparers.

Syrup of the juyce of Sorrell. Syr. of Violets, Roses. Syr. of myrtle, Quinces, juyce of Pomegranats, *Omphacini*, water of Sorrell, Roses, Night-shade, Plantane, Purrlane. These doe allay the heat of choler, and by their astringent faculty, doe hinder the flux of blood.

## Emptiers.

*Rhabarb.* with the water of Plantane, *Mirabolani Citrini*, *Chebuli*, *Cassia*, *Turbith* with Ginger. These purge the phlegmy humours mixed with blood, as also sharpe cholerick humours, by which sometimes the veines are burst or else gnawn asunder, and by consequent it doth also purge spittle of blood.

## Averters.

The inner or median vein shalbe opened twice or thrice in a day, and if the blood be pure, the lesser quantity shall be taken away. On the contrary, if the disease hath but newly seized upon the patient, or if the vessels be full, and but a little blood voyded, and the patient also be free from an ulcer, greater store shall be taken away. But a veine shall be opened on that side wherein we shall thinke the disease to be, whether the effusion of blood be caused by opening of a vein, or rupture. If it be caused by the suppression of moethly tearmes, the veine of the ankle-bone shall be opened. Cupping-glasses shalbe fastened to the Buttocks, Hips, Flanks, short ribs, and region of the liver. Painfull frictions, of extreme parts and ligatures somewhat above the knee or ankle, as also the Armes and Elbowes. Also those parts shall be bathed with hot water; for heat doth as well draw as pain: blood-suckers must be laid to the brest, the hemroids must be provoked, and the tearmes brought down. Whether the vein be opened or burst, especial care ought to be had, that present remedies be sought for the turning away the current of blood.

Stanchers of  
blood.

*Trochisci de terra sigillata* with the water of Plantane, de  
*spodio* with the syrup of Quinces, *Athanasia*, *Philonium*,  
*Persicium Romanum*, Syrup of Pomegranats Myrtle, Quinces,  
Roses, *Saccharum rosatum*, Conserve of old Roses. *Diagdo-*  
*nium*, Harts-horne burnt, white Corall burnt, *Terra Lem-*  
*nia*, *Sigillata*, seeds of Quinces, Myrtle, Bole-Armony, the  
rinde and flowers of Pomegranats, juyce of Goose-berries.  
Maltick, *Tragacanthum*. Gumme Arabick. Plantane and  
Purflane are very good against this disease. Knot-grasse, the  
 decoction of Barley with the syrup of Roses, Quinces, dry  
Roses, *saccharum rosatum*. Wine wherein Sage hath been  
steeped, also Purflane chewed, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*.  
*Loche lapide hematite*, Bole-Armony, the flowers and rinds  
of Pomegranates, Myrtles, Maltick, *Dragacanth*, Corall,  
Gumme, Arabick, Harts-horn burnt, *Amylum*, *terra Lemnia*,  
Conserve of Roses, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, Syrup of  
Violets. A Fomentation with the water of Scabious and  
Wine, Oyle of Roses, Quinces, Myrtle. An oyntment of the  
oyle of Quinces, Myrtle, Roses, Sweet Almonds, Camomile;  
all these stanch blood by their astringent virtue, and  
assuage choller, and if they be used, they will consolidate  
an ulcer, and thicken the thin rheum. They shall be some-  
while continued, although the flux be stayd; for otherwise  
it will quickly come again. They must all bee administred  
very cold. Also some things must be added that have very  
thin parts, because the force of the other is not so piercing.  
Medicines too much astringent and cooling, must bee  
avoyded, because they drive the blood into the lungs,  
whereby the lungs are putrefied, and ulcers are bred in the  
lungs. But before the use of averters we will not use these  
outwardly, for it is to be feared, that they will drive the  
blood into the lungs, from whence comes great fulnesse,  
and swelling of the internall veines.

*Oxymell simp. Compositum*, *Squillit*, *Oxyeratum*, or water  
so mixed with Vinegar that it may be drunke, at the first it  
is

Correctors of  
accidents.



is very good, if clods of congealed blood stick upon the lungs. *Diacureuma*, Triacle with water of Scabius, *Coagulum leporis* of a Stag, or Kid, is a Coveraign medicine, *Mumia*, juyce of Sage *cum Saccharo rosato*, water of Sorrell, Sage and Scabious. Triacle of one yeare old, *Philonium Romanum cum succo polygonii*, syrup of Poppy, Violets, seeds of white Poppy, the rinde of the roots of Mandrake. Flesh-broth that is strayned. *Diarrhodon abbatis*. *Aromaticum rosatum*. The former of these doe increase the hardning of blood comming out: the latter doth helpe the cough, and procureth sleep. If they be duly administred, they doe restore the strength.

*A more particular method for the cure of the  
bleeding at the mouth.*

*A Julep.*

Rx syr. of Myrtle, purslane, Quinces, Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Boole Armony, Blood-stone burnt, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of the water of Purslane, Plantane, shepheards-purse, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. mixe these, and give it unto the patient.

*A Potion.*

Rx of cleansed barley, dry Roses, ana M ij. seeds of Plantane  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part bee consumed: unto  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. of the straying, adde *Sacchari rosacei*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , syrup of dry Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the patient may drinke of this very often.

*A Julep.*

Rx of the syrup of Poppy, of dry Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the water of Shepheards-purse, Plantane, Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij.

*A draught.*

Rx of the roots and leaves of Plantane, ana M i. of scraped Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Rhabarb electi*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part bee consumed, take of the straying,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. and adde of new *Cassia*, syrup of Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

*A Potion.*

Rx of the juyce of Plantane, Purslane, Shepheards-purse, *Mil-*

*millefolii*, ana  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , syr. of Violets,  $\text{ʒi.}$  of Myrtle  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ , Bole Armony, Blood-stone, ana  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ .

Rx *Sacchari rosacei*,  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ , juice of Plantane, Sage, ana  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , Bole Armony, *Philonii Rom.* of new Triacle, ana  $\text{ʒ}\beta$  mixe these, and in stead of these the patient may drinke Triacle, if this Triacle be old, a little *Opium* shall be added.

Rx of the roots of Plantane,  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , of Purslane, *Polygonii*,  $\text{Mi.}$  of unripe bramble-berries, towre Grapes, ana  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , of the flowers of Pomegranats,  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ , of scraped Licorice,  $\text{ʒi.}$  boyle these in water q.s. untill the third part be consumed; adde to the straining of the finest Sugar, q.s. boyle it again unto the consistence of e syrup, whereof the patient may take  $\text{ʒii.}$  with the juice of Plantane and Purslane.

Rx *Diatragacanthi frigidi*, *Sacchari rosacei*, ana  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , *Rob. berberorum*,  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ , Pills of Hounds-tongue,  $\text{ʒii.}$  syr. of Violets,  $\text{ʒii.}\beta$ , lick this up with the tongue and use it often every day.

Rx *Sacchari rosacei*,  $\text{ʒi.}$  *Terre sigillate*, Bole Armony, *Mumie*, red Roses, *Rhab. tosti* ana  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , the powder of Foxes-lungs dried, Cinnamon, Blood-stone, ana  $\text{ʒi.}$  seeds of Plantane, Poppy, Roses, ana  $\text{ʒ}\beta$ , drinke  $\text{ʒi.}$  hereof in water wherein hot iron hath been put.

Rx of Bramble-berries not ripe and dried  $\text{ʒii.}$  Harts-horne turnr,  $\text{ʒii.}\beta$ , Bole Armony, seeds of Plantane, ana  $\text{ʒi.}$  *Trock. de Carabe*,  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , of Frankincense, Myrrhe, Mastick, ana  $\text{ʒi.}$  of Licorice,  $\text{ʒi.}$  Give of this  $\text{ʒi.}$  in red Wine.

Rx *Trock. de terra sigillata*,  $\text{ʒii.}$  *de Carabe*  $\text{ʒi.}\beta$ , of Hounds-tongue  $\text{ʒi.}$  with the syrup of Violets, make Pills, Give hereof in the morning  $\text{ʒi.}$

Rx of dry Roses  $\text{Mi.}$  of the fruit of Sumach, Myrtle, *Hypocistidos*, ana  $\text{ʒi.}$  *Sandalorum ruberorum*, the rinde of Pomegranats, ana  $\text{ʒiii.}$  boyle these in a sharpe Wine, untill the third part bee consumed: wash the brest herewith.

Another.

A Syrup.

A Powder.

Another.

Pills.

An Epitheme.



An Ointment

Rx oyle of Roses, Quinces, ana 3 v, Bole Armony, 9 i. Troch. de carabe, 3 β, of the flowers of Pomegranates, 3 i. for the breſt.

A Cataplaſm.

Rx of Barley-meale or flower, Lentiles, Radicum ſimphiti, ana 3 i. of the flowers of Pomegranates, 3 β, of the leaves of Blood-wort, Purſlane, Plantane, ana M i. boyle theſe in ſharpe wine to a ſoftnes, then adde of Frankincenſe, Allome, 3 i β, Bole Armony, 3 ii. β, of red Corall, 3 i. oyle of Roſes, Myrtle, ana q. ſ.

An Emplaiſter.

Rx of Maſtick, Frankincenſe, ana 3 i. Bole Armony, 3 iii. β, Mummi, 3 β, of Pitch and Waxe q. ſ.

*An Appendix ſeruing for the cure of ſpitting blood.*

**T**He internall vein ſhal be opened, and thoſe things which were formerly mentioned muſt be obſerved. Then the motion of the blood may be turned away with Cupping-glaſſes, Ligatures, Horſe-leaches and Frictions. Then medicines may be applyed that do ſtaunch blood; but the beſt remedies are given in potions, rather than in locall medicines: After theſe, ſuch muſt be given as glutinate, and congeale the parts ſeparated, eſpecially if the flux be cauſed by the burſting of the ſinew in the lungs, before the lungs be corrupted. For then the cure will aſke more labour, and beſides it will be very hardly cured. Water mixed with Vineger is a known and approved medicine for this diſeaſe, for it doth coole and thicken the blood, and ſo hinder the flux; and yet it muſt not be drunk alone, becauſe it cauſeth coughing, therefore ſuch things ſhall be mixed with it as doe hinder coughing; ſtupeſactive medicines ſhal not be uſed at the firſt, but when we have uſed ſlighter remedies in vain, and ſtill the diſeaſe perſiſts, then we ſhall have need of them. If it may be diſcerned that a blackiſh blood is fallen from the head unto the lungs, aſtringent medicines ſhal not inwardly be given.

A method serving for the knowledge of PALPITATIO, or Panting of the heart.

**P**alpitation is a panting or an immoderate rising & falling of the heart, is troublesome, and beside nature, stirred up by the expulsive faculty, which strives to expell that which is hurtfull. The heart naturally doth move, and of it selfe: but here though the heart doth move, and of it selfe, yet this motion is unnaturall, stirred up by expulsion, by which motion the heart in a manner doth quake and tremble, sometimes extending it selfe, and then shrinking together again, that it might be freed from such hurtfull vapors as are offensive unto the heart. This affect took the name from the part affected, and the accidents that follow the disease. It doth differ from *Cardiaca passio*, for this is an affect of the mouth of the stomach, and not of the heart, whereof we now speake.

The part affected.

Is the heart with the membranes inclosing it, which either is primarily, or in it selfe, or else is affected by the stomach, wombe, bowels, spleene, liver, or some other parts, which happens, because ill humors and vapors lurking in them get into the heart: at the length, it is known either by the hurt of the parts now present, or else that were affected before the hearts panting. This panting of the heart is an accident, which doth appertaine unto the depraved motion of the heart, because it is moved unnaturally here-

Signes.

• He breathes little and seldome, the pulse doth beat unequally, the heart as if it were strooke, trembles and pants, and so violently that the Physician may perceive it at the



first, if he but lay his hand upon the hearts region, and can easily discern that motion from the naturall motion of the heart. The arteries of the whole body, especially they by the throat, beat very strongly, and in some there is such a trembling of the heart, that the cloths which shield the brest from outward injuries, are perceived by the standers by to rise and fall, even as the heart doth, and sometimes they hear a manifest noyse.

*The Causes.*

It is often caused by windy, fummy, maligne and grosse vapors and spirits for the most part inclosed within the filmes of the heart, and sometime within the hearts corners, which are either generated therein, or else are conveyed thither from some of the parts formerly recited. Sometime it is caused by watery and putrefied humors, like unto urine, from whence an ill smell is sent, which hath so filled the films, that the heart cannot freely widen it selfe. This disease is sometimes caused by anger, venery, surfeits, windy meats, frequent bathings, and violent labour; and the heart is freed from it by rest. For when it beats, there is a striving to expell that which is hurtfull. The disease may likewise be caused by some watery blood, or fleshy tumour in the films. Also the hot or cold distemper of the heart is the cause of this disease, sometimes sodain evacuation, and breeding of child bring this inconvenience.

*Prognostiques.*

Though some have been free from this symptome by opening a veine, and slender diet, and helpe of medicines, yet very many of them are troubled with it againe after some few months, and are brought unto their graves here by, before they are come to perfect age: but some of them being taken with a sharp Feaver, others with a swooning, have departed this life; so great is the danger of this disease, that it will kill the Patient on a sodain, if it doth

often

often come upon him. This disease hath some affinity with swoounding; for it doth usually goe before it, and sometime turns into it. It is also incident to those whose spleen is swoln with black and dreggish blood: they also that are troubled with the hypocondriall melancholy, are usually troubled with this disease.

*A method serving for the cure of the panting  
of the heart.*

**T**He aire must be somewhat hot and dry, and have a pleasant savour, he may eat Chickens, Partridges, Capons, Hens, Veale, and these may be seasoned with Cloves, Peper, Cinnamon, Fennell, Hyssop, wild Betony, whether they be sodde or roasted: Among Pot-herbs, wild Betony, Hyssop, Majoram, Borage, Fennell, Savory, Baulme, Penny-royall, are good. Hee may drinke wine mixed with water, wherein Borage, or Baulme is boyled: his exercise must be moderate, as also his sleep. The excrement of the body must be voyded in due season. He must not be any way disturbed in mind, either by anger or sadness, and besides over-joying is not good.

Syr. *Acetosus simplex & compositus de duabus Radicibus*, of Buglosse. Syr. *Byzantius*, of Licorice, of Horehound. *Mel rosaceum. Oxy-mel simplex, compositum & Squilliticum.* Syr. of Hyssop, *de duabus & quinque radicibus*. Water of Betony, Hore-hound, Scabious. A decoction of Betony, Annise, Fennell, Galingale, Baule, Hore-hound, Scabious, rock Fennell, Cloves, Mace, Syr. *de Epithymo*, of Hops, sweet Apples. Syr. of Fumitory, the juice of Borage, the water of Buglosse, *Scolopendria*, Borage, Fumitory, Baulme, and Fennell, Syr. of Violets, *Acetosus simplex*, Syr. of Succory with rhab. Of the juice of Almonds, of the juice of Sorrel. The water of Lettuce, Violets, Buglosse, Roses, Succory. The former may be used, if it bee caused by grosse and phlegmatick matter, the latter may be used, if it be caused by melancholy. The third shall be used, if it be caused by heat.

Ee 3

Agaricus

Preparers.



## Empsters.

*Agaricus Trochiscatus, Electuarium Indum, Diaphenicum, Mirabolani Kebuli.* Pills of Agarick. *Diacoth. confectio bamech, Diasena, Pillule Indi, de lapide Lazuli, Aurea Aggregativa, sine quibus esse nolo. Hiera simplex. Mirolalani Indi, Sena, Epithymon.* Syr. of manifold infusion of Roses. *Myrobalani, citrini. Rhabarb.* If the body be full, or that there be any danger of an impostume, or if it be caused by the suppression of Hemroids or monthly tearmes, or by many watery humors inclosed in the films of the heart, the *Basilica* veine shall be opened in the right arme; for so the patient may be freed of the disease. If the disease be caused by melancholy, or melancholy vapors, a vein shall be opened in the left arm. But if the cause of the disease doth come from the lower parts, the ankle vein shall be opened. The latter medicines shall be given, if the disease be caused by hot humors, if by cold and phlegmy humors, those in the first place, if by melancholy humors, they that are in the middle. These purging medicines shall be used, if the body be ill juiced; and if necessity require, they may be used before the preparing medicines. And when it is caused by malignant humors conveyed from the other parts, or else there bredde, or when much matter runs sodainly to the heart, then we must prepare humours, and empty them againe with stronger Clysters.

## Averters.

The ankle-veine shall be opened, Clysters, Cupping-glasses, painfull ligatures in the time of the fit; frictions with sweet linnen cloaths.

## Strengthners.

*Diambra, Confectio de granis Tinctoria. Diarrhod. Abbatin, Aromaticum Rosatum, Triacle with Buglosse water.* The great conserve of our description is very good. *Mithridate, confectio de ligno Aloes, electuarium de Hyacintho, de Gemmis, sp. letifcantis Gal. Diacinnamum, Diamuscum dulce, Dianisum, Diabuglossatum, Diaboraginum, Diamargarinum calidum, Pluriscarcoticum, Hippocras, juice of Buglosse, the rinds, & seeds of preserved Citrines, Zedoaria, Deronicum. Muske, Amber, Cloves, Nutmeg, Galingale,*

Ams-

*Anomum*, Cinnamon, Mace, Mints, Rosemary. Thinne plates of gold often heat, and then quenched in strong wine, an epitheme of Borage-water, Baulme, Majoram, *sp. Diambra*, *Diamuscum dulce*, wood of *Aloes*, Orange-seeds, Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmeg, *Vinum aromaticum*. *Diarrhod. abbatis*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *diatrion sandal*. Syr. of the juice of Pomegranats, Sorrell, of Peach blossomes, the juice of Respis-berries, Camphire, *Sandalis*, prepared Coriander, juice of Pomegranats, Lemmons, Apples, Quinces. An epitheme of the flowers of Water-lillies, Roses. A bag of the same: whereunto adde Muske, Amber, and Buglosse-flowers. A Pomander of the same: whereunto adde waxe and *Libanum*. An oyntment of the oyle of Lillies, sweet Almonds, Spike, Saffron, *Lignum aloes*, Mace, *Alipta moschata*, and waxe. Baulme, Buglosse, Borage, Corall, *Margarit*, and Emerald, *Hyacinth*, Gold, Harts-horne, Unicornehorne, Ivory, the bone of the heart of a Hart. They in the first place shal be used, if the diseases cause shall be a cold distemper; if the disease bee caused by a hot distemper, they in the middle: for both these distempers, Baulme, *Carduus benedictus*, and Buglosse, and they in the last place may be used.

*A more particular method serving for the cure  
of the pawing of the heart.*

Rx of the Roots of Angelica, ʒ iii β, of Buglosse, ʒ i β, of Majoram, Baulme, Hyssop, ana M i. β, seeds of annise, Fennel, ana ʒ iii. *Carduus Benedictus*, ʒ i. β, of the rinds of Oranges and Lemmons, ana ʒ i. flowers of *Carduus Benedictus*, M β. *Sene Alex.* ʒ i. *rhob.* ʒ ii β. *Mirebal. citrinorum Indorum*, ana ʒ i. β. of Cloves, ʒ β. boyle these in flesh-broth unto ʒ i, adde unto the straining of the Oyle of sweet Almonds, of Lillies, ana ʒ i β. of the powder of *Diasena*, ʒ i.

*A Cyster.*

Rx of



A Julep.

Rx of the Syrup of sweet Apples,  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , of Buglosse, of the rinds of Citrons, *Oxymel squillit.* ana  $\text{z i.}$  waters of Bugloss, Borage, *Carduus Benedictus*, ana  $\text{z iiij.}$  make hereof three draughts for one morning.

A Syrup.

Rx of the juice of Borage, Apples, Quinces, Sorrell, flowers of Persia, Pomegranats, ana  $\text{z ii.}$  of fine Sugar, q. s. Give  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , hereof with  $\text{z iiij.}$  of the water of *Carduus Benedictus*.

A Potion.

Rx of the roots of Fennell, Parsly, ana  $\text{z i.}$  of Wormseed,  $\text{z iiij.}$  of Rosemary, Mints, ana *Mi. Florum cordialium*,  $\text{M } \beta$ . seeds of *Carduus Benedictus*,  $\text{z i.}$  of Annise,  $\text{z i. } \beta$ . of white and light Agarick,  $\text{z ii.}$  of Ginger,  $\text{D i. } \beta$ , *Polypodii quercini*,  $\text{z vi. senæ Alex.}$   $\text{z i.}$  boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\text{fbi. } \beta$ . adde to the straying, *Diaturb. cum rhabarb*  $\text{z vi.}$  syr. of the juice of Sorrell,  $\text{z iiij.}$  Give hereof  $\text{z iiij.}$  in the morning.

Pills.

Rx *Pillul. coctiarum*, *Agarici trochiscati*, *Pillul. de Rhab.* ana  $\text{D i. Trochiscorum albandal. gr. iiij.}$  syr. of Pomegranats, q. s. make hereof 7. or 8. pills, and give of them after the first sleep.

A Potion.

Rx of the roots of Angelica, Galingale, ana  $\text{z ii.}$  seeds of Annise  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , *Carduus Benedictus*,  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , *Rhab. electi*,  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , infuse these in water of *Carduus Benedictus*, Fumitory, Buglosse q. s. and put them upon hot embers for the space of 24 houres: then straine them forth very hard, and adde unto the straying. syr. of manifold infusion of Roses,  $\text{z iii. Diacath.}$   $\text{z vi.}$  drinke this at twice.

A draught.

Rx *Consect. hamech*, *Electuarii Indi majoris*, ana  $\text{z iii. } \beta$ , *coricum myrabol cbebulchrum*,  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , syr. de *Epithymo*, *Byzantiis*, ana  $\text{z } \beta$ , water of *Carduus Benedictus*, Borage, ana  $\text{z ii.}$  Give this 6 houres before dinner.

Another.

Rx of the best Mithridate,  $\text{z i.}$  of roots of Angelica, Triacle of Andro. ana  $\text{D i.}$  roots of Zedoaria,  $\text{D } \beta$ , of Hypocras,  $\text{z iiiij.}$  Give this the next morning after the patient is purged.

Another.

Rx the roots of angelica,  $\text{z i.}$  of cloves,  $\text{z i.}$  of cinamon,  $\text{z ii. } \beta$ , infuse these in strong wine for some few hours adde to the straining

straying of the best Sugar. q. s. drinke a draught of this at supper and dinner time.

Rx *Sp. Aromatici rosati*, *Diacinnamomi*, ana ʒ β, *Sp. Diamusci dulcis*, *Diambra*, ana ʒ ij. *Dianisi* of the best Sugar dissolved in Borage and Buglosse-water, ana q. s.

Lozenges.

Rx Conserve of Buglosse, Violets, ana ʒ β, *Sp. Diamusci dulcis*, old *Triacle*, *electuarii de gemmis*, *Diarrhod. abbatis*, ana ʒ i. β, *Dianisi*, ʒ i. of Cinnamon, ʒ i. *Sacchari rosati* ʒ i. syr. of the rinds of Citrons q. s.

An electuary.

Rx of sweet-wine, ʒ iiij. dissolve herein of Muske, gr. iiij. of Amber, ʒ β, draw up a little of it into the nose.

A Nasal.

Rx of the water of Sorrell, Majoram, Rosemary, Borage, Buglosse, Baulm, ana ʒ iiij. of strong wine, ʒ iiij. *Sp. Electuarii de gemmis*, *Diamusci dulcis*, *Diambra*, ana ʒ i. β, *Sandalorum*, ʒ i. wood of Aloes, Mace, *Doronici*, Saffron, ana ʒ β, of Muske gr. ij. some few drops of Vineger, wash the region of the heart herewith.

An Epitheme.

Rx of the flowers of Baulm, dryed red Roses, Lavender, Rosemary, Buglosse, Borage, Majoram, ana M β, Bay-leaves, n<sup>o</sup> ij. *Saudal. citrinorum*, Cloves, Mace, Orange-pile, Cinnamon, wood of Aloes, the bone in the heart of a Hart, *Gallie muschate*, ana ʒ ij. of Amber, Muske, ana gr. i. sew all these in a bag, which must be made in the forme of a pyramit; when the patient must use it, moisten it with Rose-water, the water of Buglosse, and sweet wine, apply this unto the region of the heart, to conserve the strength thereof.

A Quilt.

Rx of the oyle of Nard, Lillies, Baulm, ana ʒ β, of Roses, ʒ iiij. seeds of Sorrell, Nutmeg, Cloys, *Doronicum*, Wormseed, Mace, ana ʒ i. β, of Saffron, gr. iiij. of Waxe q. s. anoint the heart herewith, after the use of the Epitheme.

An Ointment

Rx the oyl of white Lillies, ʒ i. oyle of Bricks or Tiles, ʒ i. roots of Angelica, ʒ i. *Aqua vite*, and waxe q. s. anoynt the whole length of the back-bone herewith, and rub it in with hands well warmed.



*An appendix serving for the cure of  
paining of the heart.*

**F**irst, a veine shall be opened, if the strength will permit, & if the disease be caused by mixed humors or vapors, as commonly it doth happen; then if the body be evill juyced, humors must be made obedient to nature, and then expelled, but strong purgations must be here avoyded. Then the offending matter must be brought down to the ignoble parts, which may be effected by Clysters, Cupping-glasses, & Frictions. Afterwards the heart must be strengthened, and the distemper amended. If the disease be caused by Worms kill them, or expell them, as shall hereafter be declared. If by moisture in the hearts case, he must use such meanes as will breed good blood. If it be caused by the stomach, twice in every week hee must take *Hiera picra Gal.* ʒi.ß before Supper. If it be caused by consent of an other member, the parts affected must first be cured, then these medicines must be administred which doe strengthen the heart and brain.

*A method serving for the knowledge of SYNCOPE  
or S WOUNDING.*

**S**yncope is a sudden failing of the strength, & it is a disease in a manner deadly, because it is the beginning of natures dissolution; faintnes of heart goes before swoounding, which is called in Latine *Lipobymia*, with which faintnesse there is no sweat, but the extreame parts of the body wax cold with a sudden failing of strength; and then either the spirits are dissolved, or by some other means hurt, but the vitall spirit is not altogether dissolved. But beside the animal faculties, sometimes the heart, and the vitall faculties are hurt, the heart cannot bee primarily said to be hurt, although the other forces and faculties of the body are

are hurt hereby. For all the parts of the body doe sympathize with the heart, and by the hearts peculiar temper, or distemper they doe perform, or else fail in their actions.

*The part affected.*

Here the heart is affected, as may appeare by the sudden failing of all the strength of the body; finalnesse, & weaknesse of the pulse, and coldnesse of the extreme parts. It is an accident belonging to the action of all the faculties hurt, and chiefly the vitall faculties. The heart sometimes is affected by it self, when as no other affect went before, nor any signe of any other affected part could be discerned; which doth happen either in regard of the great distemper thereof, or else by reason of some venomous humors, sometime by an inflammation or tumour raised by some humor, and then for the most part they die suddenly therewith; sometime it is caused by the consent of some other part, as the stomach; and then it is called the stomach swoounding: the like may be said of all the other parts

*The Signes.*

The patients face looks as though he were dead, because the blood flies inward: the extreme parts of the body, by reason of faintnesse, and loosnesse of the body do wax cold their sweat is ill savoured by reason of the dissolution of the solid parts. Anxiety of mind and perturbation thereof arises; and then the heart failes in so much that the body being fast asleep, is deprived both of sense and motion, and not one part hath so much force, as to perform any action. Visions appear before their eyes, when the fit doth seize on them: they are suddenly speechlesse, and their breath is almost stopped, their ey-lids fall, their pulse is thin, obscure and almost extinct.

*The Causes.*

It is caused by great watching, anger, sadness, vexation and grief of mind, great feare, bitter pain, sharp and long Fea-



vers. Too much emptines of the body by fasting, sweating, labouring, vomiting, emptying the belly by stools, or sudden evacuation of water in a dropsy, for hereby immoderate evacuations, and resolutions of the spirits are caused, by which means the heart cannot but be greatly overthrown. Also it is caused by plenty of grosse, raw, putrefied, sharpe & biting humors: the latter of these do pinch and bite the stomacks mouth, and the former doth stop the spirits wayes, so that their passage is intercepted. Neither may it seem strange that the spirits can bee intercepted; for great plenty of humors is contained in the pipes of the lungs, so that the patient cannot draw breath. Sometimes it is caused by the corruption of the aice without us, and venemous humors within us; also inflammation, or many things which may corrupt and alter the temperature of the heart, stomack, or spirits, and by that means cause a swoounding, because the whole life and strength of the body doth consist in the perfect constitution of those parts. The spirits being after the former manner hurt, doe hurt likewise the other principall parts, and all appertaining thereto, and by that means vitiate a good and wholesome temper, whereby a swoounding very dangerous, and sometime mortall, followes, and that for the most part with great sweat. And this accident doth as it were intwrap the most of the parts a dying. Also those forces doe suddenly fail which had dependence on the spirits, & temperature of the solid parts. In conclusion, either the want of spirits, or their alteration and corruption, or the destruction of the solid parts temper, also long and sharpe diseases, doe cause swoounding.

*Prognostiques.*

If when they are in a swoound, the head doth fall upon the shoulders, or breast; & they neither breath, neither doth their pulse beat, & the face appears green, or of a leaden hew, and if a sneezing medicine will no whit prevail, present death is at hand. They who oft and suddenly swoound, are in danger to die suddenly when the causes of swoounding are not strong

strong, they often cause but a quaking; if very strong, then a swoounding; and if they grow stronger and stronger, they kill the patient. A swoounding procured by the affections of the mind, is not mortall, if the strength doe not fail. And even as swoounding caused by the brains distemper, is more dangerous then that which is caused by the distemper of the liver; in like manner, if it be caused by the distemper of the heart, it is more dangerous then if it were caused by brains, or stomachs distemper.

*A method serving for the cure of* SYNCOPE  
or SWOUNDING.

**T**He aire must be temperate, for hot or cold aire doth offend; his chamber must be somewhat lightsome; and his meat easy of digestion, as flesh-broth and pisan; his drink must be small wine, and Barley-water with a little *Oxymel* in the beginning of the disease for some few dayes: honied water may be given, wherein one or two handfulls of Hyssop have been boyled. Exercise and motion must be avoyded, and rest permitted. His sleep must be no longer then usually it was wont to be. If swoounding be caused by great pain, or labor, too much hunger, or of sore accidents of mind, he may sleep longer. But a care ought to be had that a Physitian stand by, and observe the patient in his sleeping and waking; for if while he wake, his pulse, colour of his face, and breathing be better or settled, his sleep shall be broken: but those accidents being beter while he sleeps, he may continue sleeping; all perturbation of the mind must be avoyded, and he should give himself unto mirth, and to have merry company about him.

Syrup of Citron-pile, syr. *Byzantinur*, syr. of the juyce of Pomegranats, syr. of Apples, *Oxymel. simplex & Compositum*. *Oxy saccharum*, *Acetosur simp.* syrups of Violets, Lemmons, Roses, Peaches, Quinces, the juyce of Endive, *de acetiflate citri*, *de pomis*. Water of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, Roses, Sorrell. In a cold cause the former shal be used, in hot the latter.

*Averters.*



## Emptiers.

If swoounding be caused by plenty of blood which is a present remedy, a vein shall be opened, *Manna, Agarick, Cassia, Diaphenicum, rhab, Pillul. Alkaphaz, Tamarind.* A gentle Clyster. A vomit with hot water, syr. *Acetoso simplicii*, common oyle: when it is caused of slimy phlegm, or rotten humours inclosed in the stomach, or when there is suspicion of poison, the vomit shall be given the second time and provoked with a finger or a feather. Strong purgers are not here fit, neither is opening a vein.

## Averters.

A vein shall be opened. Frictions as well in the time of the fit, as out of it, from the shoulder downward with a rough linnen cloth, & also the back-bone shall be so handled. The tongue shall be rubd with Mithridate, and Triacle. Ligatures of the Arms and Legs, that the spirits thereby may be called to the outward parts, which before had taken sanctuary, in the heart. Cupping-glasses, injections of cold water, or Rose-water upon the face, whereto some Vinegar shall be added, by this also means the spirits will return into the outward parts. But this shall not be used, if the disease be caused by loosenesse of the belly, or by a cold cause: loud out-cries and roarings must bee made about the patient; sneezing medicines shall be administred, if it caused by a suffocation; or if it be caused by crushing of the mouth, Nose, Fingers, and Hands. Frictions and Ligatures shall not be used, if it be caused by too much evacuation: for then it is to be feared that those spirits, which remaine about the heart, would, be brought out, and so dissolved. To these therefore rest is good, and at certain times a draught of strong wine is good.

## Strengtheners.

*Dianthuscum dulce, Diambra, Triacle, Mithridate, Electuarium de Gemmis, aromaticum Rosatum, diatrium pipereon,* oyl of Cinnamon, extracted by chymicall art. syr. of Citron-pills, strong wine. An epitheme for the heart of Cloves, Saffron, Cinnamon, Muske, *Lignum aloes*, Amber, Orange-pills, the water of Rosemary, Roses, Baulme, Majoram, and sweet wiae. An oyntment of the Oyles of Camomile, Dill, white

white Lillies, the back-bone and limbes shall be anoynted herewith. An odour of the wood *Aloes*, Orange-pills, Citricle-flowers, Amber, Muske, Vinegar, the waters of Roses, Majoram and Baulm. A quilt of Cloves, Cinnamon, *Lignum aloes*, Orange-pils, dry Roses, Saffron, Muske, flower of Rosemary, Majoram, *Melissa*, Winter-Savorie. An em-plaster of barley-flowers, the fruit of Palma Trees, Mastick, *Aloes*, Saffron, Wine. Syr. of Lemmons, *Saccharum rosarum*, *Violarum*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Diatrion sandali*, Con-serve of Buglosse, *OxySaccharum*, *Diabuglossatum*. A potion of the decoction of Wormewood. An epitheme for the heart, of the wood *Aloes sp. sandalorum*, Saffron, the bone of the heart of a hart, Orange-pils, Muske, red Corall, water of Roses, Sorrell, Borage, *Melissa*, strong wine: a quilt of the wood *Aloes*, *Sandalia*, Amber, Saffron, Orange-pils, flowers of Roses, Violets, Borage, Water-lillies, *Melissophylli*. An odour *ex sandal*. Orange-pils, red Corall, Vinegar, Muske, the waters of Water-lillies, Roses, Myrtle. If the discale be caused by a cold matter, they in the beginning may bee given; if by a hot matter, they in the latter place are good. Epithemes and unctions shall moreover be applied to the left pape.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
SYNCOPE or SWOUNDING.

Rx of the Roots of Angelica, Citron-rindes, ana ʒ vi. leaves of Majoram, Sorrell, *Melissa*, ana M i. of the cordiall flowers, p i. of white and light agarick ʒ iij. rab. ʒ ij, boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒb i, add to the straying, *Diacuth*. ʒ vij, Oyles of Roses, Lillies, ana ʒ i. ʒ. of Malmsey. ʒ iij.

Rx syrup of Orange:pils, *Melbis rosati Colati*, syr. Byzantini ana ʒ i. waters of Borage, *Melissa*, ana ʒ iij. of sweet wine ʒ iij.

Rx syr. *Acetosi simplicis* ʒi ʒ, of hot water ʒ vi. mixe these for a vomit.

A Chyster.

A Julep.

A vomit.

Rx dis



A draught.

A Potion.

Rx *Diaphenic.* 3 vi. *Cassia* 3 v. the water of Borage, 3 iij.  
 Rx of the roots of Fennill, Smalage, ana 3 i. of the roots  
 of Angelica, 3 iij. leaves of *Melissa*, the flowers of Borage, &  
 Buglosse, ana M i. Orange pills, 3 i. seeds of Anise, Licorice,  
 ana 3 v. of white and light Agarick, 3 ij. of Ginger, 3 β, *Rhab.*  
 3 i. of Nutmeg, Cinnamon, ana 3 ij. boyl these in water q. s.  
 unto lb i. adde to the straying Syrrup *Bzmini*, 3 ij. of  
 Citron-pills, 3 i. *Diaphenic* 3 v ij.

A draught.

Rx *Diaphenic.* 3 β, *Agaric. trochiscati*, 3 β, *Rhab. Electi*, 3 i. of  
 the decoction of the roots of Angelica, Majoram, *Melissa*,  
 Orange-pills, Nutmeg, 3 iij.

Another.

Rx of Mithridate, 3 i. of Triacle *Andromachus*, 3 β, Syrrup  
 of Citron-pills, 3 β, water of *Cardus benedictus*, *Melissa*,  
 Angelica, ana 3 iij. Give this the next day after the patient  
 is purged. It is good also when as poyson is suspected to  
 lurk in the body.

Bolus.  
Pills.

Rx of *Cassia* 3 vi. *Rhab. electi*, *Agarici. trochiscati*, ana 3 ij.  
 of Cinnamon, gr. xij. Syrrup of Mints q. s.

Rx *Pillul. alephanginarum* 3 ij. *Agaric. trochiscati*, 3 i.  
*Rhab. electi*, 3 β, Syr. of the juyce of Sorrell q. s. make 7. or 8.  
 pills hereof.

An electuary.

Rx *Diambre*, *Diamusci dulcis*, ana 3 ij. *Sp. letificantis Gal.* 3 i.  
*Aromatici rosati Gal.* 3 iij. Syr. of Mints q. s. hereof the pa-  
 tient may take 3 i. with 3 iij. of sweet wine, six houres  
 before dinner.

A Powder.

Rx *Sp. letificantis Gal. electuarii degemmis*, ana 3 i. β, *Aroma-  
 tici rosati*, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, ana 3 i. Orange-pills, 3 i. β,  
 of Cloves, gr. xij, Give this with broth, or any other nutri-  
 ments.

A draught.

Rx of Citron-pills, 3 i. of Nutmeg, 3 i. β, of Cloves, Cin-  
 namon, ana 3 i. infuse these for the space of 24. houres in  
 Malmsey, lb i. then strayn it forth, and add to the straying  
 of the finest Sugar q. s. drink one draught hereof at dinner  
 and supper.

Rx of

Rx Sp. *Diamasci dulcis* 3ß, *Pluriscoticis* 9 i. *Electuarii de gemmis*, Cloves, Citron-pills, ana 9ß, of the finest Sugar, dissolved in the water of Mints q. i. Give of these often in one day.

Lozenges.

Rx of Orange-pills, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, ana 3 i. of Mastick, Cloves, ana 3ß, of the best Mithridate, 3 i.ß, *Electuarii de gemmis*, 9 ii. Conserve of Buglosse 3 i, conserve of Rosemary-flowers, 3ß, Syrup of sweet Apples q. i.

Agentle  
Electuary.

Rx of Cloves, Cinnamon, ana, 9 ii. of the bone of the heart of a Hart 3 i. Orange-pills, *Ligni Aloes*, ana 3 i. of Roses, M i. Sp. *Electuarii Leticificanti Gal.* 3 ii. of Muske, Saffron, ana gr iii. of sweet Wine, 3 vi. the waters of Baulm, *Cardus benedictus*, Majoram, Buglosse, Malmsey, ana 3 iiij. make of these an Epitheme for the region of the heart.

An Epitheme

Rx oyle of Camomile, white Lillies ana 3 iiij. *Electuarii de gemmis*, Citron-pills, ana 9ß, Cinnamon-water 3 i.ß, a little quantity of Waxe, and use it about the region of the heart.

An Oynment

Rx *Ligni aloes*, Cinnamon, Cloves, Citron-pills, ana 3 i. of Saffron, gr. xii. flowers of Roses, 9 ii. of Rosemary, Baulm, Majoram, ana 3ß, after the heart hath been anoynted with the former oynment, then this shall be applied to the same place. It must be laid hot hereto, and be moystened with the best wine heat upon the fire.

A Quilt.

Rx oyles of Nutmeg, Mastick, Lillies, ana 3 iii. of Camomile, 3ß. of Cinnamon, Cloves, ana 9ß, anoynt the back-bone herewith.

An Oynment

Gg

An



An Appendix serving for the cure of the SYN-  
COPE or SWOUNDING.

**I**F swounding be caused by humors stopping the passages, gentle Clyster shal be first given, and the humors shall be then made obedient unto nature, when the strength is somewhat restored; and then they shall be brought forth by a gentle purge, but such purging medicines as doe resolve the vitall spirits, shall not be administred. Then averting medicines shall be used, and in the mean time the heart shall be strengthened by inward and outward medicines. If swounding be caused by too much evacuation of blood, let him rest in his bed, and in the time of the fit some Rose-water, or else river water shall be cast in his face, by which means he may be stirred, and rouzed up: also in the fit the fingers shall be wrung, to cause paine, and sneezing medicines be given for the same purpose. His mouth and nose must be stopped, that the breath may be kept in, for finding no way out it returns in againe, and so stirres up the vitall spirits. If it be caused by a long disease, because the spirits are consumed, things that nourish much, shall bee given; if from venomous vapors generated in the body, the great *Conserve* of our description is good: for this helps all such diseases that are caused by ill vapors bred in the body: also it is an excellent antidote against all Feavers intermittent and erratick, against worms, or convulsions. For this doth destroy the seminaries of this disease, & doth preserve the vitall spirits, and radicall moistnesse, or the lifes subject: also it is accounted for a very good remedy to prevent diseases. If the stomach, too much oppressed by sharpe humors, shall cause swounding, an oyntment shall be made for the stomach, of the Oyle of Roses, Quinces, Myrtle. If after a purging medicine, a swounding happens, give to the patient of new Triacle  $\mathfrak{D}$  iiii, if the Triacle bee old, adde thereto

thereto opii gr. ij. of strong wine ℥ iij. the patient must drink this off at one time. If the disease be caused by suffocation of the matrix, odours shall not be applied to the nose, otherwise it may be lawfull.

*A method serving for the knowledges of CHOLERA,  
or CHOLER.*

**C**Holer is an immoderate perturbation of the stomach and bowels, wherein malign humors break forth upward and downward: this disease is often so vehement, that it doth deprive a man of life within the space of a day or two, even without a Feaver; or els in few days the substance of the body being consumed by vomits, and stooles; for excrements oftentimes come down with such force, that the spirits are also expelled with the humours: from whence thirst, faintings of the heart, and a languishing of the strength, at the length sweating, and death succeeds. It is a most acute and fierce disease. This name is given to the disease from the matter and efficient cause hereof.

*The part affected.*

The upper and lower part of the stomach is affected primarily; for the bowels are affected by the stomachs disturbing it selfe through them. The signes which make known that these parts are affected, are vomit and evacuation, paine in the bowels, a great wringing in the mouth of the stomach, and a distention caused by windines. It is an accident that appertains unto the hurt of the action of the expulsive faculty.

*The Signes.*

Cholerick, sowre and stinking geare is voyded upward and downward for the space of many houres, as though the patient had drunke great store of such stiffe: and first more liquid; and lesse maligne stiffe is expelled, then



grosser and more coloured; for sometimes it doth appeare of citrine colour, then green, sometimes black. At the first this disease is slight enough, but at the last, a paine and straightnes is felt in the stomack, and upper bowels, with a troublesome sweat over the whole body, whereby the patient is faint, his pulse is thick, quick, and little, and at the last falls quite away. When the disease doth increase, the muscles of the Legs, Hands, and Arms, are drawn and thrunked, and it is an accident, most proper unto this disease, rather if that the disease doth increase. And at the length death doth seize upon the patient, with swoonding, and cold sweat.

*The Causes.*

It is caused for the most part by choler, whereof great store is gathered together in all the body, or in the galls bladder, or in the liver, mesentery, or bowels, or in some part of the whole body, which in time is stayned with some malign and venomous humor, which, if it be cast upon the stomack by the surcharged part, by reason of the abundance thereof, is very offensive unto nature; and again, the maligne quality, and the fretting of the mouth of the stomack is troublesome unto nature, wherefore it is driven to and fro in the body, and at the length is voided as was before specified. This disease is likewise caused by naughty and corrupt nutriments, or other humors putrefied with choler in the body.

*Prognostiques.*

This is a sharpe disease, and the strength in a short time is very much dissolved, for which cause present remedy is requisite. This is a dangerous disease unto old men, though it doth but seldome seize on them; then is the danger greatest, when the patient doth sweat, and vomit, or when he is troubled with swoonding, and that which is vomited  
forth

forth, hath an evill smell: for when either that which is voyded by vomit or stool hath no good savour, and when the pulses faile with the strength, and the extreme parts are cold, then the disease is mortall, yet there is some hope, if the vomit be stayed, and the patient sleep well. This evill sometimes turnes into heat of urine, the matter being driven down into the bladder.

*A method serving for the cure of* **CHOLERA, or CHOLERA.**

**T**He ayre must be somewhat cold, and bright; for humours and spirits are disquieted by heat, and great light. He may eat rere Egges, Hens, Hares, Pigeons, Larks, Partridges, Turtles, and Fawns. If he be strong, a little quantity of meat must suffice him, and it would be better if he could forbear eating for the space of two dayes. He may drinke strong wine, but it must also be thinne, that it may pierce the better; in this wine also thin plates of gold should be quenched. The disease hath been asswaged by this only remedy. In the beginning of the disease he must drink but little, but he must wash his mouth with the juice of Pomegranats and Quinces. Rest of the body must be procured; and if he have a desire to vomit, he must use such things as may cause a gentle vomit; hee must sleep only in the night season; passions of the mind, as anger, sadness, and thoughts must be shunned.

A Clyster of common oyle, the water of Barley, Violets, red Sugar, the yolke of an egge, when the Clyster hath done working, the patient may drink a good draught of Barley water: these must be often reiterated, that the sharp



and biting matter may be qualified. A vomit with hot water of Barley, *Oxymel simp.* or the Syrup of the juice of Sorrell, or the decoction of Radish with Sugar-water, wherein Cummin, and Niter have been boyled. He may drink great store of this, for so the retentive faculty being furcharged with too great a burden, stirres up the expulsive. The patient may put his finger into his mouth, or dip a feather in oyl, and thrust it down his throat, that he may with the more speed and ease vomit. Before any other medicines be given, he shall use this often, and take hereof a great quantity. If the diseases cause be cold, then Cinnamon may be used; if hot, then Sugar. *Syr. rosati laxativi. Pillule de Hiera picra, Pillule aromaticæ* in a cold cause. *Cassia fistula, Aloes, Manna, rhab.* Decoction of Myrobal. If the offending matter may be brought down to the lower parts, Clysters or other purging medicines may be used; for hereby nature is easily helped. But vomit must be furthered whilst the patient hath a propension that way, and yet cannot freely vomit. But strong vomits and loosenesse must be eschewed, for hereby the stomack may be too much weakened: and againe if the humors be apt enough of themselves to be voyded by vomit, then vomiting must be hindered, and the corrupt matter shall rather be evacuated, and voyded at the lower parts.

*Preparers.*

Painful Ligatures of the hips and elbows and those parts, as also strong Frictions of those parts, and afterwards gentler. Cupping-glasses shall be fastned to the back, shoulders, bladebone, and the middle region between the navill and stomack: sometime they may be applyed to the region of the liver, and spleen, but they must not remain thereon long, lest they stir up too much pain. Also sweats shall be caused, if strength do remain. A bath of hot water is also good, if the strength will permit, and when the concoction is perfect; but he must not remaine long in it, lest his strength be overthrowen. If the matter be not too maligne, these medicines may be used, especially if he goe too often to the stoole.

Syrup

Syrup of dry Roses, of the juice of Pomegranats, Lemmons, Quinces, Oranges, *Aqua mensalis* of our description. *Rosata novella*, *Diacodium*, *Troch. de Olibano*. Orange rinds preserved, the pulse of Quinces without the seeds, conserve of Roses, the juice of Crabs, three-leaved grass, either applied outwardly, or else taken inwardly, and if they be laid unto the stomach, a double linnen cloth must be laid upon them. A cup of cold water, and he must drink of other drink sparingly. Strong red wine may be permitted, but water wherein steel hath been quenched, shall be mixed therewith. A Clyster of the decoction of the heads of white Poppy, to which *Amylum* must be added. This hinders the motion of the humors, and doth provoke sleepe. Cold water must be suddenly cast upon the face of the patient, & this will hinder voluntary vomiting; or else if we perceive the patient inclining to vomiting, astringent fomentations shall be used, for these will quickly worke. An oymntment of the Oyle of Myrtle, Violets, Roses, Quinces, Wormewood, Mints, Mastick, Narde, flowers of Pomegranates, *Hypocistide*, red-Roses, bole Armony, *Sanguine Draconis*, Frankincense, Sandals, Mastick, *Acacia*, Corall, *Rhoe obsoniorum*; a cataplasme of the former matters; a *Unguentum* of Pitch, and Oyle of Quinces, hinder vomiting. *Ceratum stomachicum Gal.* is good for the same purpose, in a cold cause. *Emplastrum diaphanicum*, with crums of bread, *Emplastrum Mesue* for the stomach, *Mastichinum*. These doe bind the common passages, and do thicken the humors & strengthen the stomach and bowels, that the humours run not too fast thither. We must not use these, before the humors are corrupted, or else are voyded by stool or vomit, unless there be danger of swoounding, or convulsion. For although the voyding of them be good, yet if it doth outstrip a meane, it is not without danger, because by too much casting downe of the strength, death doth presently attend, and seize on the patient. Locall medicines in this disease are best, for they that are taken inward, the belly being

Strengthners,  
and stayers of  
the flux of  
humors.



Correctors  
of accidents.

being troubled, are presently cast out, but when the disease is somewhat slackned, then medicines taken inward are prevalent in conclusion, first of all the belly may be kept loose, but the vomiting must be stopped, untill it doth appeare that the humors are well expelled.

Red wine, austere and fragrant, also strong wine that is allayed with water, is good, Syrup of Quinces, an emplaster of Roses, *sandali*, Quinces, Vineger, this must be applied to the stomack. An ointment of the oyle of Lillies, sweet Almonds, Flower de-luce, Violets, Mans-fat, Beaver-stone. A Fomentation of the shrunk parts, with the same oyls, or else a Liniment consisting of hot oyles, may be laid about the shrunk parts. A bath also of the same oyls is good for the convulsed parts. A decoction of Lettuce, Gourd, Endive, Cowcumber, common water boyled, whereunto syr. of Quinces, dry Roses, Oranges must be added. Syrup of Pomegranats, Quinces, also the juices of these, syr. of Roses, a Clyster with water, wherein Endive, Lettuce, the heads of white Poppy, and *Amylum* have been boyled. They in the first place hinder the hicker, they in the middle helpe the convulsion, they in the last place quench thirst, and procure sleep.

A more particular method serving for the cure of CHOLERA, or CHOLER.

A Clyster.

R<sup>x</sup> of cleansed Barley, M ii.  $\beta$ , leaves of Violets, Centory the lesse, Wormwood, Mints, flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot, ana M i. of white and light Agarick, ana  $\zeta$  ii. *rhob. electi*,  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , *Polypodii quercini*,  $\zeta$  iiij. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i. adde to the straining, of the oyle of Rew, Cammomile, ana  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ , of strong wine  $\zeta$  iiij. *Diacath.*  $\zeta$  iii.

A Vomit.

R<sup>x</sup> syr. *Acet of simp.*  $\zeta$  ii. of the decoction of Barley, Radish, Figs,  $\zeta$  vj. The patient must drinke this off luke-warme, and

and if he vomit with great paine, nature shall be helped by a purging medicine.

Rx *Rhab. electi*, ʒ i. Syrup of Mints, ʒ i. Spike gr. iij. water of Mints, ʒ iij.

A draught.

Rx Electuary of the juice of Roses, *Rhab. electi*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Spike, gr. iij. Syrup of Succory with *Rhab.* ʒ ʒ, water of Wormewood, ʒ iij. this must bee given, if it may bee discerned that the corrupt humour is fallen downe, and the best way to bring them downeward, is by Clysters.

Another.

Rx leaves of Violets, M j. of Roses, M ʒ, seeds of Purslane, Plantane, ana ʒ i. flowers and rinds of Pomegranats, seeds of Barberries ana ʒ ii. ʒ, *Mirabol. citrinorum*, ʒ i. of the best Cinnamon, ʒ i. ʒ. Boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ iij. adde unto ʒ iij. of the straining, *Rhab. electi*, ʒ ʒ, Syrup of Roses, ʒ ʒ.

A Potion.

Rx Syrup of Quinces, Roses, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Myrtle, ʒ i. Cinnamon, Nutmeg, ana ʒ ʒ, give hereof two spoonfulls at a time, he may use it very often, especially when the belly is loosened by too much moistnesse.

A Syrup.

Rx Syrup de *Agrista*, Mints, ana ʒ i. ʒ. juice of Pomegranats, ʒ i. he must take ʒ i. hereof with ʒ iij. of Cinnamon water, twice or thrice in a day.

Another.

Rx *Sacchari rosati*, Conserve of old Roses, ana ʒ i. ʒ, pulpe of Quinces, ʒ i. of red Corall, ʒ ii. ʒ, the rinds of preserved Oranges, ʒ ʒ, Harts-horne burnt, Bole Armony ʒ i ʒ. Syrup of the juice of sowre Orange, of the Syrup wherein *Mirabol. Citrini* have been conserved q. s. this may be used, when the humors are somewhat voyded.

An Electuary.

Rx leaves of Wormewood, dry Mints, ana M i. of red Roses, Camomile, ana M ij. ʒ, flowers and rinds of Pomegranats, ana ʒ iij. seeds of Myrtle, ʒ i. *Sandalorum Rubrorum*, ʒ ij. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of Wine, untill the third part be consumed, and wash the stomach here-with.

A Fomentation.

Rx the Oyles of Myrtles, Quinces, Roses, ana ʒ ʒ, of  
H h Worm.

An Ointment.



Wormwood, Mints, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij.  $\beta$ , seeds of Roses, Bole Armony, Frankincense, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. anoynt the stomach herewith morning and evening: this doth strengthen the stomach by its astringent power.

*An Ointment*

*Rx Cerati stomachici Mesua*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , of Mastick, Frankincense, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of red Corall, Gallingale, *Sadali albi*, red Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the flowers of Pomegranats, dry Mints, Wormwood, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , oyle of Nard, Masticke, Roses, ana q. s. dippe a cloth in these, and apply it to the stomach.

*A Powder.*

*Rx* of Wormewood, Spike, Mints, Nard, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of red Roses, Camomile, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Frankincense,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Bole Armony,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , sprinkle this powder upon the stomach, after it hath been anoynted with the former oyntment.

*An Emplaster.*

*Rx* of Mint, *Trifoli*, Wormewood, ana Mj.  $\beta$ , red Roses, Mj, of Cinnamon, Mace, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Trech. de Olibano*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. of bread tosted, and sopped in strong Wine, and some Vineger  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. or else dissolve Masticke, with the white of an Egge: adde unto these, crummes of white bread, which are macerated in strong Wine, and a little Vineger.

*An Appendix serving for the cure of the* **CHOLERICK PASSION.**

**I**N the beginning of the disease, when as it may be discerned, that the offending humour is falling down into the lower parts, and that the strength doth begin to fail, a convenient purging medicine shall bee given, whereunto such things shall be added, as may mitigate the sharpnesse of the humors, namely *Cassa fistula*, *Manna*, *Rhab.* If the Patient doe not vomit freely, somebroth of a Chicken shall be given unto him, or else Barley-water, or hot water wherein Annise and Cummin-seeds have been boyled: hereunto a  
small

small quantity of the Syrup of *Aceiosus simp.* must be added. Unto the former vomiting medicines Oyles must not by any means be added, because they doe loosen the strength of the bowels and stomach: care ought to bee had that vomiting, and going unto the stoole bee not at one and the sametime, because it is dangerous to void the matter two manner of waies. Therefore if the patient be troubled with vomit, the matter shall be drawne downewards by a Clyster. But when the matter is almost evacuated, which may easily be done in four and twenty houres, then such things must be used, as may turne the humors into the stomach; this may be effected by a Clyster, wherein such things shall be put, that doe lessen the sharpnesse of the humours. Ligatures and frictions, and other means formerly specified will effect the like; at the length the flux of the humours may be stopped by astringent medicines, and the bowels and stomach may therewith be strengthened, and because grievous accidents doe follow this disease, especiall care ought to bee had of the cure hereof, that it may be done with speed, and with a direct method; otherwise swooning, and failing of strength are like to ensue.

*A method serving for the knowledge of SINGULTUS,  
or HICKET.*

**S**ingultus, or hicket, is a violent and vehement motion of the stomach, whereby it doth endeavour to expell such things as doe rest in the tunicles and in the body, and also such as doe stick fast thereto. But nature labours not by this convulsive motion to drive out those things which are contain'd in the hollownesse of the stomach; for these are rather voyded by vomit; and though it bee of the same kinde as vomit is, yet by the Hicket the stomach is more violently moved then by vomit, because they that lie hid in the body, are with more difficulty driven out, then

Hh 2

those



those that rove in the empty rooms of the body ; for humors stuffed within the runnels of the stomack, disturbing the body with heat, cold, ruffe, or biting, doe rather cause a desire to vomit then a yexing, so that they doe not bite too vehemently. But a hicket is rather stir'd up then vomit, when the humors bite strongly.

*The part affected.* and I refer to verum

Sometimes the mouth of the stomack, sometimes the whole stomack, and it is an accident which appertaines unto the hurt of the action of the retentive and expulsive faculty. Sometimes it is caused onely by the default of the stomack, sometime by the default of the liver, as it happens in the inflammation of the Liver. In burning Feavers the whole body is in fault.

*The Signes.* and I refer to verum

It comes often, and then for the most part by fits, that even as the cough doth with a swoounding, so this disease may void offending humors. The cause of the swoounding in these diseases, is the straitnesse of the passage of the ayre, which is contained in the stomack.

*Causes.*

It is often caused by fulnesse and superfluous moisture, for thereby they are either loaded, or in a manner shrunk together, which will appear by signes of fulnesse. Sometime it is caused by sharp biting humors, whose malignant quality doth in a manner prick the stomack: this is known by their former diet: and if they cast this humor up by vomit, they are freed hereof. It is also caused by too much cooling the mouth of the stomack; for seeing the body is sinewy, it is so thickned by cold, that such humours as get into them, cannot so easily get out againe: hereby fulnesse is caused, and from thence yexing: and pernicious vapors being derived to the mouth of the stomack, doe disturb a man with a vehement hicket; as burning and pestilent Agues can testify. Also inflammation of the liver, stomack, and bowels doe breed this disease. Sometimes it comes by corruption

corruption of food in the belly, or neighbouring parts, when as it doth beget a biting quality, sometimes it is caused by stymie phlegm fastned to the tunicles of the stomack. Sometimes by too much emptinesse, and driness, as it doth happen in great heats, and long Feavers which doe pine away the body. It is also caused by too frequent going to stool, it is also caused by too much emptinesse of blood, as happens in the immoderate flux of monthly terms, as also in the bloody flux, or by great wounds or immoderate vomitings, or long fasting. Those then that went before, will tell us whether the Hicket come by emptinesse, or no.

*Prognostiques.*

When the Hicket is caused by fulnesse, if a sneezing come withall, the patient will soon be rid thereof. A Hicket comming upon such that are troubled with winging in the guts, commonly called in Latine *Ilisca passio*, is an evill signe. If a Hicket follow dotings, swooning or convulsion, it is mortall. Also if it followes an inflammation of the Liver, Brain, Wombe, or a great wound, it is dangerous; and for the most part it doth threaten death. Also in sharp diseases, burning and pestilentiall Feavers it is deadly: and if it be caused by too much emptinesse, it is alwayes an evill signe; it is also bad, if it come upon a vomit, because it doth threaten inflammation of the stomack and brain. If doting or convulsion doe follow the Hicket, it is dangerous, if not mortall.

*A method serving for the cure of SINGULTUS, or HICKET.*

**A** Temperate ayre is best; but if it comes by cold humors, as it doth commonly, his ayr must be hot and dry, his meat must be such as may heat and dry, and therefore may be sawced with Ginger, Cloves, Nutmeg, Pepper, and Galingale; a little quantity of strong Wine may be permitted.



## Preparers.

Syrup *de duabus radicibus*, of *Siachar*, *Oxy Saccharum simplex*, *Oxymel simplex*, *Squilliticum*, *Mel rosatum*, *Mellicratum* made with Hyssop, *Acetum squilliticum*. A decoction of the Roots of *Asarum*, *Galingale*, *Elecampane*, *Hyssop*, *Horehound*, *Calamint*, *Smallage*, *Penny-royall*, and *Cumminseed*, Syrup of *Epithymon*, of *Thyme*; syrup of Apples, *Fumitary*, water of *Fumitary*, *Hops*, *Scalopendria*. Syrup of *Violets*, *Roses*. Syrup *Acerosus simplex*, of the juice of *Endive*. The waters of *Barley*, *Violets*, *Cardus benedictus*, *Endive* and *hot water*. If the disease last long the disease by these must be concocted, before it be evacuated by vomit or purgation. The former of these medicines shall be used, if the disease be caused by slimy, and phlegmy humors; the second sort may be used, if by melancholy humors, and the third sort shall be used, if it be caused by short humors, deeply enclosed in the tunicles of the stomach.

## Empirers.

A vomit with the warme water of the decoction of *Barley*, wherewith syr. of *Endive*, *Oxymel simp.* or *Squilliticum* shall be mingled: this is an excellent remedy, if the humors fly upward; otherwise wee may use lenitive Clysters, or take Purgations at the mouth; the Patient must hold the vomit, after he hath drunk it, for then the matter will the better be fetched out. *Diaphanicon*, *diacydonites solutivus*: *Hiera picra*; Syrup of manifold infusion of *Roses*; *Pillule aromaticæ*, *Stomachicæ Coccie*, whereto if the disease be caused by a cold matter, *Castoreum* may bee added. *Rhab. infusum*, *Manna*, *Cassia*. These may be used, if the disease be caused by slyny and biting humors; but they may not bee permitted, if it be caused by corruptible; for then, though it bee almost incurable, good nourishment will prove the best physick.

## Averters.

Clysters are good almost in all causes; painfull ligatures and frictions of the extreame parts must be used, the middle finger of the right hand must bee crushed. Cupping-glasses must be fastned to the back, neer unto the twelfth *Vertebra*, shoulders and navill; afterward to the mouth of the stomach,

Stomack, with great store of flame; for this is very prevalent, if the disease be caused by windinesse. Sneezing is good, for by shaking of the head, the belly, and whole body, the matter enclosed is often stirred, and so cast out. Meanes must be used to affright the Patient suddenly, and unawares cold water should be cast in his face. The Patient shall likewise hold his breath, if it be caused by windines, or a cold humor, and cold distemper of the stomack; blisters shall be raised, if the disease cease by applying Cupping-glasses. The eares must be rubd, and the little finger put into the hollownesse of them. The extreame parts of the body must be washed with a hot Bath.

*Diagalanga*, Electuary of Bay-berries, *Diacuminum*, *Dianium*, *Discalmintha*, Triacle, Mithridate, preserved Ginger must be given in strong Wine, *Aqua vite* wherein Cinnamon hath been infused. Wine wherein infuse the seeds of Cummin, Bayes, Juniper, *Daucus*, *Anethum*, the Roots of Galingale, Beaver-stone, Cummin, the decoction of *Anethum*. Holding of the breath is good. Fasten a Cupping-glasse to the mouth of the stomack, for by this meanes the paine will bee mitigated, if not taken away. A fomentation of the decoction of the seeds of *Anethum*, Annite, Cummin, Fennill, *Ameos*, Barberies, Galingale, Mints, *Abrotanum*, Origan, these must be boyled in wine and water. *Diatrion piperon*, Triacle, *Diagalanga*, *Aromaticum carophyllatum*, *Diarrhod. Abbatiz*, syr. of Mints, Wormwood. *Aqua mensalis* of our description. Wine wherein Wormwood hath been steeped, strong Wine wherein Cinnamon, Nutmeg, Mastick, Galingale, Ginger, *Asarum*, Wormseed, wood of Aloes, and red Corall have been boyled: Beaver-stone, preserved Ginger, preserved *Acorn*, and Cloves must be chewed. The holding of the breath doth help the native heat: an odour of the seeds of *Anethum* boyled in sweet Wine. A fomentation of Galingale, Cummin, Wormwood, *Schenanthum*, Mints, Origan, *Calamus aromaticus*. An oymnt of the Oyles of Mastick,

Sirengsbners.



Mastick, sweet Almonds, Lillies, Violets, Mace, Beaver-stone. An Oyntment of the oyl wherein Wormwood, Cummin, Rew, and Annise have been boyled; this must be applyed to the stomack. A Cerate of ancient oyl & Beaver-stone. *Diarrhoid. abbatia, Diatrion sandali, Saccharum, Viola-ceum, Rosaceum*, Syrup of Violets, Roses, Endive: a Cerate of *Sandalum*, with the oyle of Roses. A Fomentation of the back, stomack, and adjacent parts with the oyl of Violets. An Oyntment of the oyls of sweet Almonds, Violets, for the aforesaid parts: they in the first place will doe good, if the disease be caused by winds; they in the second place shal be used, if by cold humors: if by emptinesse, they in the last place shall be used. *Philonium Romanum*, with the juice of Endive. These must not be used, untill the cure be attempted by gentler medicines. Pills of Hounds-tongue, the *dosis* ʒj. ancient Triacle, Syrup of Water-lillies, Violets, Poppy: give two spoonefulls hereof with the water of Violets, *Saccharum nymphaeae, violarum, rosarum*. The Milk of Asles doth assuage the sharpnesse of the humours. The seeds of Lettice, Purslane, Cowcumber, white Poppy, these must be beaten with the water of Lettuce, and also therein boyld. The Patient must drink a great quantity of water, yet it must be done with caution; at the first gentler medicines shall be used, and then stronger.

A more particular method serving for the cure of **SINGULTUS** or **HICKET**.

*A Cyster.*

Re of the roots of *Asarum*, ʒβ, *Galingale*, ʒiiij, flowers of Cammomile; Mellilot, ana Mii. of Mallowes, Mii.β, of Beet, Mjβ, of dried Figs, n<sup>o</sup> vi. of white and light Agarrick, ʒβ, seeds of Dill, ʒv. boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒi.β, adde to the straying *Hiera pira Gal.* ʒij. *Diacath.* ʒi. *Mellis rosati*, ʒii.

*A Julep.*

Re *Oxymellis simplicis, squillitici*, ana ʒi. *Mellis rosati*, colati,

*colati*, 3 i. β, waters of Mint, Worm-wood, ana 3 v.

Rx of the roots of *Asarum*, 3 ij. *Aristoloch. rot.* Galingale, Elicampany, ana 3 ii. β, Calaminth, Thyme, Pennyroyall, Hyssop, Horehound, ana M β, of Dill, Sea Onyons, ana 3 β, of Cinnamon, 3 ij. boyle these in sweet Wine, q. s. unto fʒ i. adde to the straying *Oxymellis simp. squillitici*, 3 i β.

A Potion.

Rx *Pillul. stomachicarum*, *Hierapicra Gal. Troch. de Agarico*, ana ʒ i. syrup of Hyssop, q. s. make hereof 8. pills, the patient must take some of these in the morning.

Pills.

Rx *Diagalanga*, 3 i. *Ellebori nigri*, ʒ iiij. of Nutmeg, Cinnamon, ana ʒ β, infuse these for the space of twelve houres in 3 v. of Malmesey: give this when the disease is at the height.

A draught.

Rx of the roots of Galingale, Wormseed, ana 3 ij. β, seeds of Dill, 3 ij. of Nutmeg, 3 i. β, of Mithridate, 3 iij. Mixe these, and give the patient 3 i. in strong wine.

A mixture.

Rx of Beaver-stone, 3 β, Cinnamon, roots of Elicampany, Angelica, Galingale, ana ʒ β, of Hypocras, 3 iiij.

A draught.

Rx of the best Cinnamon, 3 iij. of Ginger, 3 i. roots of Galingale, 3 v. seeds of Annise, Dill, ana 3 ij. roots of Elicampany, Angelica, Worm-seed, ana 3 i bruise these grossely, and steep them in sweet wine, afterwards straine these, then adde unto the straining of fine Sugar q. s. *Acetis squillitici*, a small quantity.

Hypocras.

Rx Pills of Hounds-tongue, ʒ iij. β. *Philonii Romani*, ʒ i. make hereof 8. or 9. Pills, give one of these at night, for they are excellent good.

Pills.

Rx leaves of Worm-wood, Rue, Mints, ana M i. seeds of Cummin, 3 β, boyle these in a sufficient quantity of common oyle, dip a sponge, or else wool herein, and wash the brest.

A Fomentation.

Rx oyles of Beaver-stone, sweet Almonds, Mace, Marstick, ana 3 i. β, the seeds of Dill, and roots of Galingale, I i shall

An Ointment



An Empla-  
ster.

shall be boyled herein, of each of these 3 i.β, and the sto-  
mack must be anoynted herewith.

Rx *Aristol. rotunda*, *Galingale*, seeds of *Annise*, *Bay-berries*,  
*Rew*, *Gentiane*, ana 3 iij. of *Beaver-stone*, *Myrrh*, *Cloves*,  
ana 3 ij. of red *Roses*, M i. of *Mastick*, 3 iij. make here-  
of a playster with a little *Honey*, and water of sweet *Majo-*  
*ram*, if the disease happeneth without a feaver, this is very  
good. These may bee used if the disease be caused by cold  
and windy matter. But if it be caused by a hot matter, these  
following shall be used.

A Julep.

Rx syr. of the juyce of *Sorrell*, *Oxysacchari simp.* syrup of  
*Roses*, ana 3 i.β, the waters of *Endive*, *Sorrel*, *purslane*, ana  
3 iij. Or else.

Another.

Rx syr. of *Violets*, *Succory*, with *Rhab. Acetosi simp.* ana  
3 i. syr. of *Water-lillies*, *Poppy*, ana 3 β, waters of *Succory*,  
*Lettuce*, *Purslane*, ana 3 iij.

A draught.

Rx the decoction of *Succory*, *Endive*, *Buglosse*, *Barley*,  
the seeds of *Carduus benedictus*, 3 iij. infuse of *Rhab.* 3 ii.  
for the space of 24. houres, then straine it forth, and adde  
unto the straying syr. of the manifold infusion of *Roses*  
3 i β.

A vomit.

Rx of cleansed *Barley*, M iij. boyle it in water q. s. untill  
half be consumed, unto 3 vj. of the straying, adde syrup  
*Acetosi simp* 3 ij.

Pills.

Rx *Hiera pieræ*, *Gal. rhab. optimi*, ana 3 ij. syrup of *Succory*,  
with *Rhab.* q. s.

An electuary.

*Diarrhod. abbatin*, without *Muske*, 3 β, *Sacchari*  
*violati*, *Nymphaeæ*, ana 3 v. syrup of *Roses*, *Violets*, ana  
q. s.

A draught.

Rx of new butter somewhat salted, 3 ij. of the decoction  
of the seeds of *Orach*, *Barley*, sweet *Almonds*, 3 iij. *Oxymellis*  
*simp.* 3 ij.

An Unguent.

Rx Oyle of *Roses*, *Water-lillies*, ana 3 v. of *Poppy*, *Quin-*  
*ces*, ana 3 β, of *Waxe*, and *Vinegar*, a little.

A medicine  
for the sto-  
mack.

Rx *Cerati sandalini*, 3 i. β, of red *Roses*, seeds of *Purslane*,  
ana 3 β, oyle of *Roses*, q. s.

Rx Phi-

*Rx Philonii Romani, Pills of Hounds-tongue, ana ʒi. give hereof one Pill at night.*

*An appendix serving for the cure of*

*SINGULTUS, or Hicket.*

**F**irst of all, the matter of the disease, whether it be hot or cold, must be made obedient unto nature, and then be drawn away by a purging medicine, and then the flux of humors turned from the stomack: then the stomack may be strengthened, and the distemper amended by inward and outward medicines. If the disease be caused by drynesse, or emptinesse, flesh broth, syr. of Roses, Barley-water, Goats-milk, and other moistning aliments must be given. Also by chymicall art a liquor shall be extracted from the decoction of Partridges, Hens, crums of white bread, syrup of Violets, waters of Buglosse and Mints, and strong Wine; and when this liquor is to be used, a little Sugar may be put into it. A bath of sweet water is good: the stomack and backbone shall be anoynted with the oyle of Violets: If it be caused by sharp humors, ptisan, oyle of sweet Almonds, or common oyle is good. If by the inflammation of the liver, that must first be cured. If by some venomous matter, Triacle, with the decoction of the seeds of *Carduus benedictus*, Dill, Galingale, Borage, Cinnamon. If by coldnesse of the mouth of the stomack, the patient shall hold his breath, for by this means, the heat will be gathered together.

*A method serving for the knowledge of C A R D I -  
ALGIA, or pain of the stomack.*

**T**HE pain of the stomack is a painfull sense of the mouth of the stomack caused by a biting matter. This disease hath affinity with the disease called *Cardiacapassio*, which is in like manner a disease of the mouth of the sto-



mack caused by corrupt humors, & such as are biting and virulent, which either came from some other place, or else were therein generated, and gathered together; from whence comes languishing, and faintnesse of the body, and a resolution of the strength by sweat, and sometimes they fall into a swoond, and the outward parts of the body are cold, when as the Face, Brest, Head, and Neck, are bedewed with sweat. *Cardiaca passio* herein doth differ from this disease because this is caused by biting humors, but that is caused, as was said, by virulent humors, and also venomous and so maligne, that a Feaver commeth withall, and that very hot and sharpe. These affections of the stomack ought with great care and circumspection to be looked after, because the mouth of the stomack hath relation to many other parts of the body, first to the heart, because of its nerves; to the brain, because of the nerves that are implanted there, and so go from the one unto the other, by whose virtue the mouth of the stomack hath a quick sense. Seeing therefore that these parts of the body have so great affinity with the stomack, and it is its proper office to hunger after meat, even as the hollownesse of the stomack doth concoct it: this disease therefore ought to be speedily remedied. This disease hath borrowed the name from the affect, and part affected, for in former times the Physicians did call the mouth of the stomack *Cardia*, which is the heart, because when as the mouth of the stomack is affected, such hainous accidents doe follow, as if the heart it self were hurt.

*The part affected.*

The mouth of the stomack is primarily affected, and the heart is hereby hurt, because of the neernesse. For a pinching pain, with biting and fretting, is felt under the breasts gristles; *Cardialgia* & *Cardiaca passio*, is an accident which doth belong unto the hurt of the action of sensitive faculties, viz. the sense of touching.

*Signes.*

In the Cardiacall passion, a faintnes and resolution of the naturall

naturall heat doth follow, and also of the whole body. For the most part a sharpe Feaver, the pulse is thick, and obscure, the extreme parts are cold, and yet slimy sweats doe cleave about the face and brest, the body smels somewhat earthy; despaire, anguish, disquietnesse of mind and body goes withall; but in the *Cardialgia*, there is a gnawing, biting, and pricking in the mouth of the stomach. Sometimes the belly doth cast out cholerick stufte, and sometimes he doth vomit choler; very seldome a Feaver comes with this; the strength is not dissolved with immoderate sweat, neither is the body so faint: there is an oppressing pain in the stomach, by reason hereof they doe breath with difficulty, they are eased if belching above, or wind downward be voyded, and when the nourishment that is received, goes down to the lower parts of the belly.

*The Causes.*

Both these diseases are caused by sharpe and biting humours, which doe stick about the mouth of the stomach, whereby the appetite is abated, and they are in more paine before meat then after: in the Cardiacal passion, besides the sharpe and biting humors, it hath a venemous and virulent quality; also *Cardialgia*, and *Cardiaca passio* are caused oftentimes by wormes, which will bee made knowne more plainly in the chapter which doth treat of wormes. They that fast too long when they are well, if the body be strongly stirred up, *Cardialgia* is stirred up withall. This disease is sometimes caused by sadness: for by those causes choler comes into the stomach, whereby bitings, and gnawings are caused. Sometimes it is caused by inflammation, or by some ulcer, or swelling; sometimes, and that very often, it is caused by sharpe, and phlegmy humors, whereby disquieting winds arise in the stomach, which doth so stretch it, as the guts are stretched in *Iliaca passio* by winds inclosed. When it is caused by cold and sharpe humors, the appetite holds out well enough, and the paine is greater after they have eaten.



*Cardialgia*, if it come without a Feaver, is lesse dangerous; but the *Cardiacall* passion, because it doth come with a sharpe Feaver, is evermore dangerous. And if the disease be caused by wormes, it is also as dangerous. This disease is incident unto young men; and in sharpe diseases, it oft concurreth about their increase.

*A method serving for the cure of CARDIALGIA,  
or pain in the stomach.*

**L**et his aire be cold by art or nature. His meate easy of digestion, and such that is least subject to corruption, as Larks, Partridges, Capons, Hens, Chickens, and flesh-broth; his meat may be sawced with juyce of Pomegranates, Oranges, his drink must be fine watery wine, or the decoction of Cinnamon, and Barley-water: and as motion doth stirre up the disease, so rest doth assuage the pain. His sleep must be moderate, and watchings are very hurtfull. The belly should be made answerable to nature. Perturbations of the mind must be shunned; but especially sadnesse.

*Preparers.*

*Oxymell simplex & compositum*, syrup of Mints, *Oxymel squilliticum*, syr. of Worm-wood, *Mel rosatum*. Waters of Sage, Majoram, Betony, Worm-wood, Fennill, Syrup of Succory with rhubarb; syr. of Violets, Roses; syr. of the juyce of Sorrell, *Acetositis citri*; of Pomegranats; water of Sorrell, Succory, Plantane, Roses, Buglosse. If the paine bee not so great that it doth crosse the order of the cure, and that matter hath not taken too deep root in the tunicles of the stomach, these medicines may bee used: if otherwise, such shall be administred that do assuage pain; they in the first place shall be used, if the matter be cold; if by a hot matter, they in the second place shall be used.

*Emptiers.*

A vomit must be made with hot water and vinegar, as also *Oxymel simp.* and the patient must be helped either with the Finger,

Finger, or a feather thrust down into the throat. A Clyster of the decoction of Camomile, Mellilot, Mints, Malloves, Worme-wood, *Mercurij*, *Diacath. benedicta laxativa*, syr. of manifold infusion of Roses, *Manna*, *Tamarindi*, *Cassia*, *Rhab. Myrobal. Citrini*. *Diaturbith* with *Rhab. Hierapicra simplex. Composita Logodii*, Pills, of Agarick, *Alephangine*, *Mastichine*, *Diaphenicum*. The infusion, and decoction of Agarick, *Agaricus trochiscatus*. The basilica veine of the right side shall bee opened, if the disease be caused by plenty of blood, and the pain be great. Gentle purging medicines shall at the first be used, and if the disease cannot be cured by gentle medicines, stronger may be used, otherwise not.

A decoction of Camomile, with Nutmeg, may be given in drink, or else the shavings of ivory. For these do mollifie the pain. *Aristol. longa* is good against all diseases of the stomach. A fomentation shall be made of wines wherein the seeds of *Linus*, Mints, Fennigreek, Fennill, *Calamus aromaticus*, have been boyled; a sponge must be dipped in this decoction, then applyed to the stomach, and hot clothes must be laid upon it, that the heat may be preserved. An Oyntment of the Oyle of Worme-wood, Mastick, Spike, Nutmeg, Dill, Camomile. A quilt of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Roses, Worm-wood, Branne, Salt, Millium, flowers of Rosemary. An emplaster of the meal of Linseed, Fennigreek, roots of marsh Malloves, Oyles of *Linus*, Camomile, *Philonium Romanum*; *Aibanastia Nicholai*; *Zaxomea*. syr. of Poppy, Water-lillies, Violets, Roses. They in the last place shall not be mixed with stupefying medicines, unless the strength be in hazard.

*Aromaticum rosatum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diaglanga*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*. The crust of bread infused in strong wine. An oyntment of the Oyles of Nard, Camomile, Mansfat, Wormwood, Mace, Mastick, Cloves, *Ceraum Gal. Stomaticum*. An emplaster of *Ladanum*, or storax *Calamita*, *Galingale*, Mastick, Oyle of Worme-wood. A quilt

Mitigators of pain.

Strengtheners.



quilt for the stomach, of Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, *Ladanum*, dry Mints, prepared Coriander. *Rosata novella*, *Diarrhod. abbatii*, *Electuarium diatrion sandal*. Conserve of Sorrel, Roses, Violets. The conserve of our description hath done much good in this disease, syrup of Roses, Pomegranats, *Saccharum Rosatum*, the pulpe of Quinces, without seeds. An oyntment of the oyle of Roses, Quinces, Maltick: An emplaster must be made of Roses, *Aloes*, Maltick, Allome, *Hipocistis*. An odor must be made of Roses, and Wine with Rose-water, *Acetorofato*. If the disease be caused by cold and windy humors, the former shall be used; if by sharpe humors, then the latter.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of* CARDI-  
ALGIA, *or pain of the stomach.*

*A Julep.*

Rx Syrup of Worme-wood, Mints, ana  $\zeta$  i.  $\beta$ . *Oxymellis compositi*, ana  $\zeta$  i. the water of Mints, Majoram, Worme-wood, ana  $\zeta$  iiij. Give this three or foure times in the morning.

*Bolus.*

Rx *Diaphaniconis*, 3 iij. *Rhab. electi*, Spike, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  i. of new Cassia, *Benedicta laxativa*, ana  $\zeta$  ij.  $\beta$ . with fine Sugar, q. s.

Rx *Hiera picra Gal.*  $\mathfrak{D}$  ij. Pills of Mastick, Agarick, made into a Trochiske, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  i. syrup of Worme-wood q. s. make hereof 7. Pills, and give of them in the morning.

*A Potion.*

Rx *Arostolechia longa*, 3 ij. seeds of Annise, Carro-waies, ana  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , of Agarick, 3 ij.  $\beta$ . flowers of Camomile, Centory the lesse, ana M ij. of Saffron, gr. vj. boyle these in flesh-broth, addeto the straying, a little quantity of Sugar.

*A vomit.*

Rx seeds of Radish, *Atriplicis*, ana 3 ij. roots of *Asarum*,  $\zeta$  i. boyle these in water q. s. untill the one halfe bee consumed,

med, adde unto the  $\text{z iij.}$  of the straying, *Oxymellis simplicis*,  $\text{z ii.}$  Lin-seed oyl  $\text{z i.}$  Give this luke warm in the morning.

Rx *Diaphenic*,  $\text{z vi.}$  *Philonii Romani*,  $\text{z i.}$  the decoction of Cammomile, Fennell, Annise,  $\text{z iii.}$  this may be given in the extremity of paine.

Rx *Sp. Diarrhod. abbatu*, *Aromatici rosati Gal.* ana  $\text{z ii.}$   $\beta$ , of preserved Ginger,  $\text{z i.}$  Cinnamon,  $\text{z \beta}$ , Beaver-stone, seeds of *Ameos*, ana  $\text{z ii.}$   $\beta$ , Cummin, Galingale, ana  $\text{z i.}$   $\beta$ , syrup of Mints, Worm-wood, q. f.

Rx of Mithridate,  $\text{z i.}$  the Triacle of *Andromachus*,  $\text{z ii.}$  *Aristoloch. longe*,  $\text{z \beta}$ , of strong wine  $\text{z iii.}$

Rx roots of *Aristoloch. longe*, seeds of *Ameos*, Cummin, ana  $\text{z \beta}$ , of Cinnamon,  $\text{z i.}$   $\beta$ , preserved Ginger,  $\text{z ii.}$  of Beaver-stone,  $\text{z i.}$  of Turpentine q. f.

Rx of red wine somewhat binding  $\text{fb i.}$   $\beta$ , steep toasted bread herein, adde of Cinnamon, Nutmeg, ana  $\text{z i.}$  strayne them forth very well, and then adde very fine Sugar. The patient may then drink a good draught hereof often in the morning.

Rx *Diagalange*,  $\text{z iii.}$  *Discumini*, old Triacle, Mithridate, ana  $\text{z i.}$  syr. of Mints q. f.

Rx oyle of Nard, Matlick, ana  $\text{z ii.}$  oyle of Mace, Cammomile, Dill, ana  $\text{z iii.}$  oyle of Rew, Mans-fat, ana  $\text{z iii.}$   $\beta$ , Nutmeg,  $\text{z \beta}$ .

Rx flowers of red Roses, Cammomile, Mellilot, ana  $\text{M i.}$   $\beta$ , leaves of Worm-wood,  $\text{M ii.}$  seed of Line or flax, Fennegreek, ana  $\text{z i.}$   $\beta$ , seeds of Fennell, Annise, ana  $\text{z \beta}$ . boyl these in water untill the third part be consumed.

Rx of the roots *Aristoloch. longe*,  $\text{z \beta}$ , flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot, ana  $\text{M i.}$   $\beta$ , red Roses,  $\text{M \beta}$ , seeds of Cummin, Annise, Fennell, ana  $\text{z i.}$   $\beta$ , seeds of Fennegreek, Linseed, ana  $\text{z i.}$  leaves of Worm-wood,  $\text{M i.}$  boyl these untill the third part be consumed.

Rx of toasted bread q. f. steeped in Malmesey, juice of Mints, and Worm-wood, q. f. adde hereto of Nutmeg,  $\text{z ii.}$  this

A draught.

A mixture.

A draught.

A mixture.

A draught.

An Electuary.

An Ointment

A Fomentation.

Another.

A Cataplasme.



An Emplai-  
ster for the  
stomack.

this doth mitigate the paine, vomit and Hicket.

R<sup>x</sup> Emplastri stomatici Gal. ʒ i. Cloves, Mace, Mastick,  
red Roses, seeds of Annise, Fennell, ana ʒ i. of Galingale,  
dry Mints, ana ʒ ʒ, *Ladani*, ʒ ii. ʒ, oyle of Nard, Mastick,  
q. s.

A Quilt.

R<sup>x</sup> of the flowers of red Roses, dry Mints, Worm-wood,  
ana ʒ ii. ʒ, Galingale, Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, *Ladani*,  
ana ʒ i. ʒ, sew these in a red silke cloth, and apply it to the  
stomack.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> of Cummin infused in Vineger throughly dried, of  
Cinnamon, ana ʒ ʒ, *Aristolonge*, i. ʒ, of Nutmeg, no iij.  
Mace, ʒ ii. ʒ, *Diarrhod. abbaris*, ʒ ii. put these in linnen cloth,  
and apply it hot to the stomack.

### An Appendix serving for the cure of CARDI-

#### ALGIA, or pain of the stomack.

**F**irst, the humors shall be made obedient unto nature,  
and then expelled out of the body, in the meane time  
such things must be given as may mitigate the paine; new  
Triacle is good for this purpose, or else, ʒ vj. *Electuarii Dia-*  
*pheniconis* must be mixed with ʒ i. *Philonii Romani*. Then  
the stomack shall be strengthened, and the distemper amen-  
ded. The body shall be anoynted with the oyle of Roses,  
Myrtle: If the disease were caused by Wormes, first they shal  
be killed, and then thrust out of the body.

### A method serving for the knowledge of the

#### weaknesse of the STOMACK.

**T**he crudity or weaknesse of the stomack, is a disposi-  
tion of the alterative faculty, wherein either the ali-  
ment not alre d, or else not well concocted. In the for-

mer

mer there is a depravation of the alteration of nutriment, in the latter a depravation of the alterative faculty. For if the stomach be in its right temper, the nourishment therein received will remain pure, but if it be oppugned by some cause contrary unto nature, the action of the alterative faculty is depraved, and then the crudity of the stomach doth follow.

*The part affected.*

The stomach with its faculty is affected: for all men herein agree, that the stomach is the cause of the nutriment alteration; and then the faculty of the stomach failing, crudity of the stomach doth follow by some externall cause: and sometimes this happens, though the faculty thereof be not depraved, as shall hereafter appear.

*The Signes.*

Slow and difficult concoction followeth, the stomach doth not boyle after the accustomed manner, and the quality of the nutriment doth remaine in the stomach, slowe belchings are frequent, and the stomach is surcharged with sumie vapors.

*The Causes.*

The stomach of such as have recovered of a long disease, is weake, and sometimes so weake, that it neither is able to receive nourishment, and yet if it doth receive any, cannot wel digest it. The reliques of the disease left behind, may be the cause of this, which may hinder the attractive power that the stomach either hath, or ought to have: sometimes it hath this attractive power, the body being very leane, and for this onely cause desires nutriment, and cannot concoct it, by reason of the weakenesse thereof. Sometimes they that are in perfect health (as most men may think) have a weake stomach, by reason of a hot or cold, dry, or moist distemper, which peradventure may chance to come single, but it cannot long hold out, unlesse other offending humors joyne therewith. For the digestive faculty of the stomach being weakned, raw humors must



needs bee gathered together either hot or cold, or else disturbing the stomach by some outward quality, and then follows a loathing of meat, a loading of the stomach, belchings and vomitings; and this is often caused by phlegmy, and putrefied humors; and then the relish which is communicated unto the palate, is sweet, or watrish, and much spittle is voyded without coughing or hemming; his belch is sowre, his concoction is hindered, the stomach is puffed up, and stretched some houres after meat, great gripings, and pains are stirred up therein, wherof the dropsey, collick, *Uliaca passio*, are caused. Sometimes it is caused by choler, and a gnawing of the stomach is felt, especially by fasting, a bitter humor is cast up by vomit, whereby the mouth becomes bitter; and sometimes this disease is turned into the former, namely *Cardialgia*, or pain in the stomach. If it be caused by a melancholy juice, a sowre taste is bred in the mouth. He is sad, feareful, and disquieted with dreams, a panting is felt on the left side; the appetite for a time doth increase, and so it doth become an hypocondriall melancholy, or falling sicknesse, the muscles also of the calves are shrunk. Sometimes there happens a crudity of the stomach when the faculty is not hurt, but is hindred by some externall error, as too much waking, exercises presently after meat, more store of food taken in than can be well digested, or else some bad quality of these meats. Sometimes it is caused by vicious humors, sent unto the stomach from some other parts, as will happen by the suppression of monthly termes, and hemroids. Likewise in diseases of the joynts, the matter is oft conveyed unto the stomach, which is wont to be derived unto other parts.

*Pregnostiques.*

That crudity is worst which is caused by ill nourishment; and it is bad in those that do abound with choler, for it presently causeth an ague, but dayly crudity must be avoyded, for sundry long and sore diseases are bred there-

of;

of; it is in a word the mother of all materiall diseases, as dropſie, Collick, *Iliacæ paſſio*, flux of the ſtomack, and many other diſeaſes of the like kind. An evill complexion of the ſtomack if it be ancient, cannot be cured. They who ſpit much, and caſt up ſowre water, have a cold ſtomack.

*A method ſerving for the cure of the weakeneſſe of the ſtomack.*

**T**He ayr muſt incline to heat, and it will be good, if the patient were well armed againſt injuries of the cold. His meat muſt be eaſie of digeſtion, and of that, but a ſmall quantity, for he muſt not take more then his ſtomack is able to digeſt; neither muſt he receive any other meat in, untill the former be digeſted. Veniſon, hard beef and ſalt, al fat meats, dried fiſh may not be allowed; they alſo that are preſently corrupted, and are windy, and either vey hot, or very cold, and of an evill favour, are unwholſome. Rear eggs with Cinnamon or Maſtice are good. He may drink good wine, but the unſeaſonable uſe thereof is bad. Exerciſe preſently after meat is not good, his ſleep muſt not be unquiet, and his head muſt be laid higher then the other parts of the body, affections of the mind muſt be avoyded, and he muſt be moderately merry.

Syr. of Worme-wood, Hyſſop, Calamint, Mint, *Oxymel compoſitum*, *ſquilliticum*, waters of Mints, Worm-wood, Fennell, Betony. Syr. of the juice of Sorrell, Roſes, Quinces, Peſp-berries. Waters of Sorrell, Plantane, Roſes. If weakeneſſe be cauſed by a cold diſtemper, they in the firſt place may be uſed; if by a hot diſtemper, they in the latter place ſhall be uſed. He may not drink lukewarme medicines, for the ſtrength of the ſtomack is hereby looſned; therefore whatſoever he takes, muſt either be actually hot or cold.

The liver veine ſhall be opened, if the diſeaſe be troubleſome, and come upon the patient on a ſudden. *Diaturbiſh. wh rhab. Hiera picra, Hiera de agaricoſ Pillul. Alepbang. ſtomatice*, Syr. of the manitold infuſion of roſes, *rhab. caſſia, fiſtula,*

K k 3

*Myrobal.*

*Preparers.*

*Emptiers.*



*Myrobal. Kebuli, Emblici, Bellirici, Aloes* washed, a vomit with *Mulsa*, or luke-warme water, wherein Radish hath bin boyled, and a little common oyl must be mingled with it. He may use sundry nutriments at one time. He may use this vomit every day for the space of 4. or 5. dayes, and then *Oxymel squillii* shall be added; for hereby, the phlegmy, and other malign humors mixed therewith, may be driven out. Whilst there is any offending matter remaining, gentle medicines shall be used; for strong medicines do weaken the strength of the stomach.

*Averters.*

Gentle Clysters, and sometimes sharpe, even as occasion shall require, may be used. Strong ligatures of the legs above the knees. *Ventoses* must be applyed to the buttock, hips, and sometimes to the navill. Lotions of the feet and armes with hot water. Opening of the hemroid-veine: sweat and urine must be brought out.

*Hinderers.*

Syr. of Quinces, Pomegranats, *Troch. de Olíbano, de terra sigillata.*

*Strengibners.*

*Triacle, Mithridate, Diarrhod. Abbatís, Aromaticum rosatum, diatrion pipereon, Diaspolitium, Diagalanga, Plirisarcoticum, Diaxyloaloes, Diacinnamomum, Diacydonium, diacalamimtha.* Syr. of Mints, Hyppocras, Worm-wood, *Aqua vite*, syr. of Worm-wood. Citron conserved, pills, conserve of Ginger, Galingale, conserve of Rosemary flowers, long Pepper, Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, *Calamum aromaticum*, Roots of *Cyperus*, decoction of the wood *Guaicum*, Worm-wood, Mints, Nutmeg, Mastick, Raisins, the skin of a Hare, Whelpe or Cony: also the palm of the hand being very warm, may be laid upon the stomach. When he goeth to bed, hee must first lie on the right side, then on the left, and at the length again on the right. A sponge may be dipped in strong wine, wherewith the stomach must be washed: some of the medicines for the stomach must first be boyled in that wine. An oyntment of *Dialthea*, of the Oyl of Worm-wood, Mints, Mace, Mastick, spices may be boyled in these. A Cap made

made of the softest feathers of a Goose, a medicine for the stomach of bombast well carded and dipped in strong wine, and then it must be dried, at the length some Cinnamon, Worm-wood, Nutmeg, and the former spices may thereto be added. *Ceratum stomaticum Gal.* being made of Galingale, Worm-wood, Nutmeg, Cloves, Mints. Syrup of the juice of Quinces, Goose-berries, Sorrell, dry Roses, *Acetosus simplex, vinum granatorum.* Conserve of Roses, Violets, pulpe of Quinces, also the juice thereof. *Diamargaritum frigidum, Diatrageacanthum, Diatrion, sandal. ambra cœrina,* burnt Ivory, Hart-horne, Corall, waters of Sorrell, Roses, Plantane, an oyntment of the oyle of Roses, Myrtle, Quinces, an oymment of Roses, Violets, *Ceratum sandal.* of flowers of Pomegranats, Corall, *Sandali,* Roses, *Spodium,* the rinds of Pomegranats. The former may be used, if a cold matter be left behind, and if a hot matter doe there remain, the latter. Things that are too cold, are dangerous.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of the  
weakenesse of the STOMACK.*

Rx Syr. of Mints, Quinces, Worm-wood, ana ʒ i. *Oxymellis squillit. Mellis rosati colati,* ana ʒ β, waters of Worm-wood, Fenell, Mints, ana ʒ iii. Give ʒ iii. in the morning, at four severall times.

*A Julep.*

Rx of the decoction of Barley and Radish, ʒ vi. *Oxymellis squillit.* ʒ i. β, oyle of sweet Almonds, ʒ i. drink these off lukewarme.

*A Vomis.*

Rx *Diatribithum Rhab.* ʒ iij. of new Cassia, ʒ v. of fine Sugar, q. s.

*Bolus.*

Rx roots of Parsley, Buglosse, ana ʒ i β, Galingale, ʒ ii. β, leaves of Baulme, Mints, ana M. β, seeds of Annise, ʒ β, of scraped Licorice, ʒ iii. of Raisins, the stones being taken out ʒ i. Cinnamon, ʒ i. of white and light Agarick, ʒ iii. boyl

*A Potion.*



Pills.

boyl these in water. q. s. unto fbi. β, add unto the strayingn,  
*Diacath.* 3 i. β, syrup of Citron-pills, 3 ii.

Rx *Pillul. Mastichinarum*, Aloes, ana ʒ i. β, of the syrup of  
 Mints, q. s. make hereof 8. Pills.

Pills.

Rx *Hiera picra*, *Gal. Pillularum stomaticarum*, de *Agarico*,  
 ana ʒ i. *Rhab. electi*, ʒ β, syr. of Worm-wood, Mints, ana  
 q. s. make hereof 8. pills.

Rx *Specierum aromatici rosati Gabrielis*, 3 β, *Dialange*<sup>3</sup>  
 preserved or candid Ginger, ana ʒ ii. Mastick, Cinnamon,  
 ʒ i. β, of Cloves, Nutmeg, ana ʒ i. of fine Sugar dissolved  
 in the water of Worm-wood, and Mints, ana q. s. the pa-  
 tient must eate one of these one hour before meate, and  
 after it drinke a draught of wine.

Pills.

Rx of Mastick, 3 ii. Spikenard, ʒ β, Aloes, ʒ iii. *Rhab.* 3 i.  
 β, *Agarici trochiscati*, ʒ i. β, syrup of *Eupatorium*, and Mints,  
 ana q. s.

An Electu-  
ary.

Rx *Diamargariti calidi*, 3 ii. *Aromatici rosati Gal.* of Mi-  
 thridate, ana 3 i. *Diacydonites cum speciebus*, 3 i syr. of Mints,  
 q. s.

Pills.

Rx of Mastick, *Olibani*, ana 3 iii. make Pills hereof, with  
 the syrup of Mints. Give 3 i, of this moystned in wine, in  
 the morning, this doth heat and dry the stomack, and  
 hinders the rheume falling down from the head, if he take  
 it morning and evening.

A mixture.

Rx of the roots of Flower-de-luce, 3 iij, of red Roses, ʒ iij,  
 of dry Mints ʒ i. of Mastick, 3 ii. β, flowers of Nutmeg,  
 Cinnamon, ana 3 β, syr. of Pomegranats q. s. for the disease  
 caused by moisture.

An Electua-  
ry

Rx *Sp. Aromatici rosati*, 3 ii. *Diagalanga*, 3 i. of preserved  
 Ginger, 3 i. β, of Worme-seed, Nutmeg, ana ʒ ii. syrup of  
 Citron-pills, make this into a soft Electuary.

A Fomenta-  
tion.

Rx of the roots of Galingale, 3 ii. flowers of Camomile,  
 Mellilot, ana M i. leaves of Worm-wood, Mints, ana M ii. of  
 the best Cinnamon, Mace, Nutmeg, ana 3 i. bruiſe all these,  
 and let them boyl together in sweet and strong wine, un-  
 till

till the third part be consumed, and wash the stomach herewith.

R oyls of Nard, Maltick, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. oyle of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. oyle of Quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Waxe and Vineger a little.

R flowers of Camomile, red-Roses, ana M  $\beta$ , leaves of Worme-wood, Mints, ana M i. Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Galingale, of the wood Aloes, *Calami aromatici*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Maltick,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. oyle of Mints, q. s.

R of dry Mints, Majoram, Worme-wood, ana M i. of Maltick, Frankincense, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Mace, Ginger, Nutmeg, Cinnamon, Cloves, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. *Calami odoriati*, of Galingale, of the wood Aloes, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. *Gallic mase. Ladani*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . Turpentine and Waxe, q. s. make a soft playster hereof; this will likewise serve for a medicine for the stomach.

R *Ceroti stomatici Galeni*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , roots of *Ciperus*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Saffron,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . of Cinnamon,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of Maltick,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , oyle of Worm-wood q. s.

R of red-Roses, M  $\beta$ , of Worme-wood, Mints, ana M i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in strong wine q. s. dip a toast herein, they being rubbed and pounded together, and so apply it, if the disease bee caused by a hot matter.

R syrup of Violets, Succory with *Rhab.* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. waters of Endive, Borage, Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

R syr. of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. Roses, Pomegranats, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. waters of Violets, Buglosse, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  v.

R *Rhab. elect.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Adrybal. citrinorum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of *Cassa*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Spike,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.

R of cleansed Barley, M iij. of scraped Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. seeds of Gourd, Cowcumber, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of Sorrell,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. of Rayfins, M ii. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed.

R syr. of Violets, Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , conserve of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , conserve of Borage, Roses, Violets, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Sacchari rosacei*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , syr. of Pomegranats,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.

An Unguent.

A Cerate.

An Emplai-  
ster.

An Emplai-  
ster.

A Cataplasim.

A Julep.

Anoiber.

Bolus.

A Potion.

A mixture.



## Lozenges.

R $\bar{x}$  *Diastagacanthi frigidi*, *Diamargariti frigidi*, ana 3 i.  $\beta$ s, of the finest Sugar dissolved in the water of Violets, make an Electuary.

## A Fomentation.

R $\bar{x}$  of red Roses, M ii. leaves of Worm-wood, M  $\beta$ s, seeds of prepared Coriander, *Sandalorum*, Citrons, red Corall, ana 3 i.  $\beta$ s, boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, wash the stomach herewith.

## An Unguent.

R $\bar{x}$  the oyle of Roses, 3 v. of Quinces, Myrtle, ana 3 vj. of red Roses, red Corall, ana 3  $\beta$ s, *sandal. citrinorum*, 3 i. of Waxe and Vineger a little.

## A Cerate.

R $\bar{x}$  *Cerati refrigerantis Gal.* *sandal.* ana 3 i. oyle of Roses, Quinces q. s.

An Appendix serving for the weaknesse of the stomach.

**F**irst of all wee must trie whether the matter will be cast out by a gentle vomit. And if it be affected, the humors shall be made obedient unto nature. But rather the medicines shall be given either cold or hot, but not luke-warm, at the length, when as it may be discerned that the humors are concocted, the matter shall be cast out with a purging medicine, and then such things shall bee administred as may strengthen the stomach, & alwaies such things shall be mixed with the former as may comfort the liver, although it be no way hurt, for that doth help the stomach in all its natural operations; for this is the very beginning, and seat of the naturall faculty. Alwaies a care ought to be had that nothing be received into the stomach, before the former be well digested, for this is good not only for the cure of this disease, but also for preserving health. If by consent of other parts, or if the matter be conveyed unto the stomach by the whole body, that must first be purged, then the stomach: At the length astringent medicines may bee used.

used, for they doe hinder the flux of the humors, for this purpose Syrup of Poppy is good. If weakenesse of the stomach be caused by cold distemper, moyst medicines shall be administred, viz. Milke, flesh-broth, moyst baths, and such like. Yet a care ought to be had, that the body bee not too much moystned, because the virtue of the stomach may hereby be dissolved. For diversity of causes there be diversity of cures. If the disease be caused by weakenesse after a sicknesse, especial care ought to be had, that no more nourishment be given unto the patient then he can well digest; for otherwise there would be danger of a relapse, or that he be violently seized on by this disease.

*A method serving for the knowledge of Obstruction of the LIVER.*

**O**bstruction of the liver is a binding, or straitning of the veins, or liver passages: this disease is more common to this bowell, then unto any other, and no marvaile, for the liver is the store-house of blood, from which all parts of the body draw nourishment, and together with purer blood, grosse and stymy humors are generated in the liver, and seeing that the branches of the hollow veines are knit unto the *Vena portæ*, in such sort that the knitting and continuation doth not come within the compasse of our sight, and seeing the nutriments of all the parts of the body must be conveyed thorow the port veins, and also the hollow veins ends, which, as we said before, are very small, where they end in the livers substance, it is no wonder then, if by reason of the passages and straitnesse, obstructions be oftner caused in the liver, then in any other bowell, and this disease is the beginning of other diseases. We doe not in this chapter treat of that obstruction of the liver, which is caused by an inflammation of that bowell, or by *S<sup>t</sup>. Antonines* fire, or any other unnatural



swelling, but here we treat of that disease which follows the obstruction of the veins ends, by the stuffing in of some substance, *viz.* windy or thickned spirits, or else some other ill humors.

*The part affected.*

This disease doth breed in the extreame parts of the vessels of the hollow and port veins, and they are terminated in the livers substance with thinne ends, and are knit one unto another with little bones, nevertheless thorow these, the distribution of nourishment must be made throughout the whole body. This may be perceived by the quality of the pain, and also the seat thereof: for the patient feels a kind of loading and dull pain in the liver. This obstruction is not in the substance of the liver, because no passages can there be perceived that may be stopped, although we do not deny but that there may be some passages by reason observed therein, yet these cannot be said to be stopped.

*The Signes.*

There is a heaviness and stretching pain in the right side, and then most of all to be perceived, when a man doth exercise himselfe presently after meat. No Ague or tumor comes with it, unless it doth wax sorer by continuance, for every old obstruction doth putrefie, and by that means causeth a Feaver; he drawes breath with great difficulty, especially if he climb hilly places; the color of the face is turned into another hew, because the remote parts deprived of their nutriment, the patients urine is thinne and watery; If the stopping be in the hollow parts of the liver, the parts of the liver are heavy and dull presently after dinner, because the humors cannot so easily enter into the substance of the liver, by reason of the straightnes of the passages. The belly is sometimes loose, sometimes it is colive.

*The Causes.*

The narrownes of the livers and veines passages is the cause.

cause of this disease. And this happens unto some from their birth, and then the disease is perpetuall, and some signe thereof may be perceived at the infants birth, and then upon every slight occasion, there is a stopping of the liver. This disease doth hunt those most that are of a cold temper; yet for the most part obstruction of the liver is caused by slimy and grosse humors, which wind themselves into the ends of the branches of *Vena porta*, from whence it is conveyed unto the substance of the liver. Then about the right side of the heart, a dull and heavy paine is felt. This is likewise caused by grosse and viscous nourishments, when by immoderate use of baths, or exercise presently after meat, they are caught into the liver. This is also caused by grosse humors which fall from the braine, or else being gathered about the bowels, are in like manner conveyed unto the liver. Sometimes the use of opening medicines, the stomach being full of crudities, doth often cause this disease. Sometimes again it is caused by thick and fummy vapors, when as they have no way out, because of their thicknes; and the patient is troubled not only with a heavines, but a stretching and gnawing.

*Prognostiques.*

For want of nourishment, and because of the continuance of this disease, the whole body is become thinne; and by long obstruction of the liver many diseases are generated in the body: for by this, a hard tumour without paine doth arise, and inflammation, Feaver, putrefaction of humors, loosnes of belly, *Hæmorrhoides*, collick, dropfy, and yellow jaundise. When cold humors are too long retained in the liver, the substance of the liver is turned into a cold distemper, whereby the dropfy is caused. If obstruction of the liver were at the birth by reason of narrownes of passages, it cannot be cured: yet by good ordering, the patient may be preserved from many diseases, which are wont to follow this disease.



A method serving for the cure of the Obstruction  
of the LIVER.

**T**He ayre must be hot and cleare, his diet such as may heate and unstop; also those things that doe generate grosse blood, must be avoyded. In his broths, the roots of Fennell, Parsly, Sparage, with their seeds, the leaves of Hyssop, Succory, Peny-royall, Endive, Leeks, must be boyled. He must avoid variety of meats; neither may hee eat any thing, untill that be digested which was formerly received; and then also he must eat but sparingly. His drink must be ptisan, thin and old wine. Exercise presently after meat is unwholsome, but especially bathings, but an houre or two after, exercise with moderation may be allowed. Sleeping in the day time, especially long sleeping is not good, and his sleep in the night time may be the space of seven hours. His belly must be kept loose. Accidents of the mind must be avoyded, chiefly anger, care, and sadnes, and all means must be used that may delight him.

Preparers.

Syr. *Byzantinum*, Agrimony, Worm-wood, Maiden-hair, Oxymel. simp. *Compositum Squilliticum*, Oxyssaccharum. *Mel rosatum*, waters of Fennell, Sparage, Worm-wood, Agrimony, Parsley, Dodder. A decoction of the roots of Flower-de-luce, of the greater *Rubia Asarum*, Parsley, Sea-onions, Harts-tongue, Calamint, Sparage, Horehound, Hyssop, Succory, seeds of Annise, Fennell, Maiden-haire, Worm-wood, Dodder, Raisins, Cinnamon, *Cichas*; with a little Vineger, and Hony. Syra. *Acetosum simplex*. Of Succory with *Rhab.* Oxymel squilliticum, syr. de *quinque radisibim*. syr. of Endive, and also the decoction thereof doth asswage the unnaturall heat which alwayes followes the obstruction of the liver. The water of Endive, Succory, Hops, Dodder, the decoction of red *Cichas*, Lupines, fruits of winter cherries, Dodder, Endive, *Squimanthy*, *Cham epity*, roots of grasse,

grasse, Fennell. The first opening, cutting, and cleansing medicines may be used, if the disease be caused by a cold, grosse and stymy matter, and if neither ague, thirist or burning come withall. They in the second place may be used, if heat, thirist, or ague follow the obstruction of the liver, from what cause soever this disease doth take its beginning; especiall care ought to be had, that the cure be not begun with strong opening medicines, lest we should force the matter back unto the Liver.

The liver veine on the right arme shall be opened, if the disease be not old, or if grosse matter be very much mingled with blood; for blood-letting forceth this matter out of its place. But in the suppression of hemroids, and monthly termes, a vein in the ankle shall be opened. *Electuarium Indum, Diaphenicum. Hiera picra, Agaricus Trochiscatus, Pillule Alepbangina, Aggregative, of Agrimony, Pills, of Rhabarb, Agarick. Rhab. Cassia, Manna.* A decoction of the Roots of Parsly, Fennell, Sperage, the leaves of Worm-wood, Hore-hound, Hyssop, *Chamaepitys, Chamedrys,* seeds of Annise, *Epithymon, Sene, Agarick, Rhab, Turbith, Ox. mel.*

Trochisks of *Rhab. Agrimony, Worm-wood, Diarrhod. abbatia, Aromaticum rosatum.* Syr. of Agrimony, *Diacereum, Dislaiera;* a confection of Annise, Amber, *Pistacia, Ra. sin,* the three kinds of Endive. The liver of a wolfe. *Rb. b.* the juice of sowre Pomegranats, mixed with *Oxymel,* Worm-wood, Dodder, Agrimony, Succory, Spikenard, Fumitory, Tarragon, Roots of *Acerus, Kneeholme,* seeds of Annise, Lupines, bitter Almonds. An Epitheme of wine which is moderately astringent, wherein the roots of *Cyperus, Asarum,* the leaves of Agrimony, Worm-wood, Maiden-haire, flowers of Spike, *Cassia lignea,* and Cinnamon, have been boyled. An unguent, of the oyle of Spike, Worm-wood, Cinnamon, Wax, Vineger, and *Cassia lignea.* An emplaster of Mellilot. The common *Diachylum, irecium.* Such medicines as are stymy and stiptick, must be avoyded;

Emptiers.

Strengibners.



avoyded, for they doe rather increase than diminish the obstruction. The cure of the Dropsie, Collick, *Itica passio*, and flux of the belly, which are accidents following this disease, may be cured, if the Reader have recourse unto the chapters which doe treat of them severally.

*A more particular method, serving for the cure of the Obstruction of the Liver.*

**A Clyster.**

R<sup>x</sup> of the roots of *Asarum*, Angelica, ana ʒvj. of Agrimony, Worme-wood, Hops, Dodder, ana Mj. seeds of Annise, ʒi. winter-Cherries, ʒβ, of red Ciches, ʒiij. of white and light Agarick, ʒij.β, boyle these in water q. s. unto lbj.β, adde to the strayning, *Diaturbith* with *Rhab.* ʒvij. oyle of Worme-wood ʒiij.

**Bolus.**

R<sup>x</sup> the pulpe of new extracted *Cassia*, ʒj. *Rhab. electi*, *Agarici trochiscati*, ana ʒj.β, a trochiske of Agrimony, ʒi. of the finest Sugar q. s.

**A Julep.**

R<sup>x</sup> syrup of Succory with *Rhab. syr. Byzantini*, *Acetosi compositi*, Agrimony, ana ʒj. water of Dodder, sweet wine, ana ʒvj. Orelse,

**Another.**

R<sup>x</sup> *Oxymellis compositi*, ʒij. *Squillit.* ʒj. of the decoction of Agrimony, seeds of Endive, roots of Fennell, Sparage, Smallage, Taragon, ʒx. with Sugar q. s.

**A Potion.**

R<sup>x</sup> of Gentian, *Asarum*, ana ʒβ, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Endive, Dodder, *Chamadrys*, ana Mi. seeds of Carrowaies, red Ciches, Fennell, ana ʒiij. Cinnamon, Mace, *Rhab.* ana ʒi.β, boyl these in water q. s. unto lbj.β, adde to the straying *Oxymel. squillit.* ʒiij. This is good, if the disease bee caused by a cold matter.

**Another.**

R<sup>x</sup> the roots of Fennell, Smallage, Sparage, ana ʒi.β, Dodder, leaves of Wormewood, Agrimony, ana Mβ, seeds of Fennell, Annise, ana ʒβ, of scraped Licorice, ʒiij. of Rayns the stones being taken out, ʒj. *Injunbarum*, *Sebesten*,  
ana

*sene Alex.* ʒ i. of white and light Agarick, ʒ ʒ, *Rhab. electi*, ʒ ij. of Ginger, *salis gemma*, ana ʒ i. boyle these in water q. l. unto ʒ i. ʒ, add to the strayingne Syrup *Byzantini*, ʒ iij.

R *Radicum eringii conditarum*, ʒ ij. preserved Orange-Pils, ʒ i. preserved Galingale, flowers of Elder preserved, ana ʒ ʒ, *Diarrhod. abbatia*, troch. de *Rhab.* ana ʒ ij. Syrup of Agrimony, q. l. Give hereof ʒ ij. or iij. before meat.

R *Diasath. Diaphenic* ana ʒ iij. *Agarici troch. Rhab. electi*, ana ʒ i. Syr. *Byzantini*, ʒ i. water of Endive, Succory, ana ʒ i. ʒ.

R Pils of *Rhabarb.* ʒ i, of Agarick, ʒ ʒ, *Diagridii*, gr. iij. Syr. *Byzantini* q. l. make hereof 8. Pils.

R *Benedicta laxativa*, ʒ iij. *Rhab.* ʒ i. Syr. of Agrimony ʒ i. water of Endive ʒ iij.

R *Sp. Diarrhod. abbatia*, ʒ ij, Troch. de *Rhab.* ʒ ʒ, roots of *Aristol. rotunda*, *Asarum*, ana ʒ ʒ, seeds of Fennill, Annise, *Rhab. Cinnamon*, ana gr. xij. of fine Sugar, dissolved in Dodder and Agrimony water q. l.

R Troch. de *Rhab.* ʒ iij. *Dialacce*, *Diarrhod. abbatia Dianisi*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, roots of *Asarum*, *Licoras*, ana ʒ ʒ, of a Woolfs liver, ʒ iij. seeds of Annise, ʒ ij. juyce of Fumitory made into the form of a Trochiske, ʒ iij. ʒ, Syr. of Agrimony, *Byzantini*, ana q. l.

R leaves of Worm-wood, Mi. Dodder, Mi. ʒ, Elder-flowers, M ʒ, *Rhab. electi. asarum*, ana ʒ ij. Infuse these for the space of 24. houres, in strong Wine, this may be drunk every other day.

R Troch. de *rhab.* of Agrimony, ana ʒ iij. Give ʒ i. hereof with the juyce of Endive, *Oxyssacchari simp.* ʒ i. water of Agrimony, Dodder, ana ʒ ʒ.

R of the oyntment of *Martiatum*, oyle of Spike, Worm-wood, ana ʒ ʒ, Spike, Cinnamon, ana ʒ i. of Vinegar, and Waxe, a small quantity.

R flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana Mi. leaves of agrimony, Wormwood, Mi. ʒ, roots of *Cyperus*, ʒ i. cinnamon, spike

M m

ana

A mixture.

A draught.

Pills.

A draught.

Lozenges.

A mixture.

A draught.

A Powder.

An Ointment

An Epitheme  
for the Liver.



ana ʒ i. *Cassia ligna*, ʒ ʒ, Cummin, ʒ ʒ, Branne, ʒ i. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of wine, untill the third part be consumed.

*A Cataplasme.*

Rx flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i. ʒ, Wormwood, Agrimony, Dodder, Sothernwood, ana M i. red Ciches, ʒ i. seeds of Endive, Parsley, ana ʒ ʒ, Spikenard, ʒ ij. ʒ, boyl these in water q. s. and then adde thereto oyle of bitter Almonds q. s.

*A Bath.*

Rx roots of Marsh Mallowes, ʒ iij. Agrimony, Dodder, Endive, Majoram, Fennill, Fumitory, Violets, ana M iij. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ij. ʒ, seeds of Fennel, ʒ vi. boyle these a little while in water q. s. this doth mollifie the grosse humors which are the cause of the obstruction, and also make them subject unto nature.

*A Cerate.*

Rx an Emplayster of Mellilot, ʒ i. ʒ, roots of *Asarum*, ʒ ʒ, of Mastick, ʒ i. of dry Wormwood, ʒ i. ʒ, oyle of Elders q. s.

*An appendix serving for the cure of the Obstruction  
of the Liver.*

**F**irst of all, the humour which causes this Obstruction, shall be made obedient unto nature by subtile and cutting medicines, and as soone as wee perceive that they are concocted, then they shall be turned out of the body, by a purging medicine. Then wee will endeavor to take away such things as doe stop the passages, and when they be removed, the distemper will bee amended, the bowels strengthened, and the corrupt matter that was left behind, expelled, & the accidents, if any do molest the body, will be asswaged. These medicines must bee often used, because the disease is stubborne; also care ought to be had, that the first and second digestion be good, for which purpose his diet shall be thinne as well at dinner as supper.

They

They who are subject unto this disease, must eschew such meats as doe bread a clammy and grosse juyce. If the disease be caused by a hot and grosse matter, the decoction of Endive, Succory, Sorrel, *Rhab.* also the syr. of Succory with *Rhab.* may be given. Or else R<sup>x</sup> roots of Fennill, Kneeholme, Parsely, Grasse, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Endive, Succory, Dodder, Mayden-haire, ana M i. seeds of Endive, Cowcumber, red Cythes,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Dill,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyl these in water q. s. untill  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i.  $\beta$ , adde unto the strayingning syrup *Byzantini*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. make hereof a syrup.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the weak-  
nesse of the LIVER.*

**T**He weaknesse of the Liver commeth by distemper, without any manifest evill in that bowell: the proper and principal faculty of the Liver is the blood, which doth come to it by a property of its own substance, & cannot be weakened on a sudden by any distemper; for the distemper must needs take deep root, before it can hurt the substance of the Liver, or dissolve the strength thereof; but by what distemper soever this is caused, the Liver doth not perform its proper duty, unlesse it be by halves; for the excrements that are voyded, doe assemble water, wherein flesh newly killed hath been washed; and so long as the proper action, or substance of the Liver is not weakened, the action hereof will be somewhat corrupted, but not taken away, so that we cannot say that the action of the Liver is hurt by every distemper, but onely by that which by continuance of time hath weakened the substance of the liver: and the reason why these excrements are voyded by stool, rather then by any other way, is this, because it doth usually expel the juyce being imperfectly changed by the Liver, because of its weaknesse through the bowels, and because it is a neerer way then by the passages of the urine, through

M m 2

which



which sometimes these superfluities, which doe resemble the water wherein flesh newly killed hath been wash'd, are conveyed; and such men are sometimes deceived, that alwayes say the fault of this is in the stone. Sometimes cleare blood is voyded by stool, either without the bloody flux, or any distemper of the liver; and this doth chiefly happen, when as some veine is broken appertaining to the liver. Sometimes blackish blood is voyded by stool, which doth resemble black choler, and yet it doth differ from it, because the clothes that are dipped therein will bee of a black colour: this is caused, when as some veine in the upper part is burst. Oftentimes also blood is voyded at the stool, because some accustomed evacuation is stayed, or because some member is maimed, and as then it is suddenly voyded in great plenty, so it doth suddenly cease, comming againe at its proper seasons. Sometimes also it is voyded that way by the hemroids, and sometimes by an imposthume of the liver; or else some ulcer therein bred. All which shall be spoken of in their peculiar chapters, for here we doe not treat of such voydings, because they doe not come through the onely default of the liver. Therefore among all these excretions of blood, that alone, wherein the stool doth resemble the water, wherein flesh hath been washed, is here to bee treated of, and shewes that the liver is hurt in its owne essence, without any manifest hurt in the bowels.

*The part affected.*

The liver is chiefly affected, as will appeare by his owne functions hindred, in the colour of those that are voyded. By reason of the weakness hereof, the blood is not well digested, and then the blood that is voyded by stool is waterish: this shewes that the nutriment was well concocted in the stomach, and begun to bee concocted in the liver, but not perfected, because of the livers weaknesse. This disease is an accident which doth appertaine unto the hurt  
of

of the action of the livers blood-making facultie, which is very much weakened.

*Signs.*

By what distemper soever weaknesse of the liver doth come, it is so rooted that it doth scatter the spirits native heate, and dissolve the strength and actions of the liver, insomuch that it doth send forth waterish blood, and half concocted without pain, and in great abundance. The colour ever of the patients body, especially the face, is of a sad hue, and somewhat discoloured with palenesse and greenesse.

*The Causes.*

A cold distemper is the cause of the livers weaknesse: and if the distemper bee but slight, the colour of the face is white; that which is voyded, stinks a little, small store of excrements are voyded, the body waxeth cold, and swells, unless the heat of the heart doth amend the cold distemper of the liver; the patients urin is thin, and there is neither Feaver nor thirst. Sometimes it is caused by a hot distemper, and if it be but slight, the excrements are stinking, and are mixed with thick choler, and are of divers colours, the urine is red, thirst, and also a Feaver insueth: the tongue is rough, a yellow colour doth break out in his face, all his body is too hot, especially the palmes of his hands, and soles of his feet, sharpe vapors are often felt to goe about the skinne, and cholerick humours are voyded by vomit: their bellyes for the most part are bound, & the heat is the cause hereof. But as often as a cold distemper hath altered the substance of the liver, he seldom doth thirst, but rather moistnesse is felt in his mouth; his stoole is great, watry & thin. The contraries of these doe happen in a dry distemper, for the body is become drier and harder, and at the length the strength of the liver is dissolved, and the face hereby is turned into a sad pale colour or a greenish; his stoole at the first is liquid like cream, and besides other accidents, the flux of the liver doth concur, wherein,



as was said before, the excrements are waterish, and like unto that water wherein raw flesh newly killed hath been washed. And these excrements are so often changed, as the distemper of the liver is changed.

*Prenostiques.*

If weaknesse of the liver hath been of long continuance, it is scarce to be cured; and in time it is changed into an evill habit of body, from whence a weaknesse of the whole body is caused, or else it doth turne into a dropsy, especially if this disease be caused by a cold distemper. Hereof comes a melting away first of the humors, then of the flesh, and lastly the whole body. Sometime blood doth gush out at the Nose, sometime by the wombe and hem-roid veines, and sometimes by the passages of urine.

*A method serving for the cure of the weaknesse of the STOMACK.*

**A** Temperate ayre is good; meats that are easy of digestion, and doe moderately heat, as Capons, Hens, Pheasants, Partridges, Chickens, Larks, may be permitted. Amongst Pot-herbs, Fennill, Sage, Hyssop, Savory, and Endive is good. His broth must be seasoned with Cloves, Cinnamon, Galingale: amongst fruits, Raisins are best. His drink may be thin and odoriferous wine: moderate exercise is better then ease. His sleep must be moderate, and no perturbations of the mind must annoy him.

*Preparers.*

Syr. of Agrimony, of Worm-wood. Endive, Succory, with *Rhab.* The waters of Succory, Endive, Agrimony, Dodder. A decoction of the roots of *Asarum*, Fennill, Parsly, Succory, Endive, *Cyperum*, flower-de-luce, Worme-wood, Origan, Mint, Agrimony, Roses, Calamint, Dodder, Hyssop, seeds of Cummin, Annise, Barley, *Calamus aromaticus*, Cinnamon, Raisins, Hony, and Vineger, being hereto added.

*Dis-*

*Diaprunum solutivum*, *Electuarium Indum*, Electuary of the juyce of Roses. *Hiera picra*; *Tamarindi*, *Sene*, *Rhab.* *Agarick*, *Myrabol*. If cold or cholerick humors arising by a cold or hot distemper of the liver, stick fast in the substance of the liver, or in the veines neer-adjoyning, and if nature doe not expell these, they must bee evacuated by convenient medicines, whereto such shall be added that may strengthen the liver.

Emptiers.

*Diarrhod.* *Abbatis*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Dialueca*, *Diacurcuma*, with the water of Worme-wood, syrup of Agrimony. *Electuarium diatrion sandal.* *Troch. de Rhab.* of Agrimony, of Worme-wood; *Saccharum rosaceum*: *Philenium Romanum*; *Rhab.* The liver of a Wolfe; the flesh of Snailles, syrup of Worme-wood, Agrimony, with their waters. Water distilled out of Snailles: water of Barley, wherein Succory and Endive must bee boyled. Dodder, Raylins, *Pistacium*, Endive, Succory, Worme-wood, Agrimony, Spike, *Squinanthum*, Cinnamon, *Calamus aromaticus*, Myrrh, Unicorns-horne, the shavings of Ivory. Hony, the water thereof and Turpentine doe scowre away that which is venomous and putrefied. An epitheme, which in the winter must be given hot, in the summer, cold, with the waters of Roses, Sorrell, Lettuce; Water-lillies, red Sandals. *Diarrhod.* *Abbatis*, *Diatrion sand.* Camphire. A Fomentation of the decoction of Roses, Sorrell. Cammomile, Worme-wood. An oyntment of the oyle of Roses: Water-lillies, Quinces, Mastick. Camphyre, red and white Sandals, Vinegar, and Oyle of Worme-wood; dippe wooll in these, and lay it unto the region of the liver. *Diagalanga*, *Diamisum*, *Diacalamintha*, *Diacinnamomum*, *Troch. de Rhab.* *Saccharum salviae*, the water of Hony distilled. Syrup of Succory, water of Endive, Dodder, Succory. Worme-wood, Agrimony, *Cassia lignea*, Cinnamon, preserved *Acorus*. The liver of a Wolfe, *Nardus*, *Celtica*, Squinanty; an Epitheme of the decoction of Cloves, Cinnamon, Squinant, Agrimony. roots of *Asarum*, seeds

Strengtheners.

of



of Fennill, Annise, Amie, whereunto *Diagalanga*, *Diacinnamomum*, the waters of Agrimony, Dodder, with a little Vinegar. An oyntment of the oyles of Nard, Mastick, Spike, Worm-wood, the wood of Aloes, Mastick, Cloves, Cinnamon, juyce of Agrimony. *Ceratum stomaticum Gal.* A Cerate of the root of *Asarum*. Flower-de-luce, Squinant, Worme-wood, Agrimony, Mellilot, Mastick, Myrrhe, the Flower of the seeds of Lupines, Fengreek, oyles of Mastick, Roses, Nard, oyle wherein the roots of Elecampane, Bitter-wort, wild Galingale have been steeped. *Dialacca*, *Diacureuma*, syrup of Worme-wood. The liver of a Wolfe, *Saccharum rosatum*, *Spodium*. An Oyntment of the oyle of Worme-wood. Nard, the roots of Elecampane, Galingale, and Flower-de-luce, must be boyled in the oyl. If the disease be caused by a hot distemper, the former shall be used; and if any of them be too hot, they may bee qualified with Endive-water. If the disease bee caused by a cold distemper, we may use those in the second place, if it be caused by moistnesse, they in the last place may bee prescribed. Some of these above mentioned, may be given in any distemperature of the liver.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of the weaknesse of the Liver.*

*A Julep.*

Rx syr. of Worm-wood, Agrimony,  $\text{℥ i.}$   $\beta$ . of Endive, Oymellin compositi, ana  $\text{℥ } \beta$ , water of Agrimony, Endive, Centory the lesse, ana  $\text{℥ iiij.}$

*A Potion.*

Rx roots of Angelica, Fennill, Parsly, ana  $\text{℥ i.}$  *Aristolochia rot.* Galingale, ana  $\text{℥ } \beta$ , Agrimony, Sage, Fumitory, ana  $\text{M i.}$   $\beta$ , of Mints, Wormwood, ana  $\text{M } \beta$ , of Licoras,  $\text{℥ v.}$  *Rhab.*  $\text{℥ ii.}$  *sene Alex.*  $\text{℥ i.}$  of white and light Agarick,  $\text{℥ ij.}$  of Ginger,  $\text{℥ i.}$  boyl these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb i.}$   $\beta$ , adde to the straining syrup of Agrimony,  $\text{℥ ij.}$

Rx Pills

Rx Pills of Agarick, *Cochiarum* of *Rhab.* ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  j. of the syr. of Agrimony q. f. make hereof 8. Pills.

Pills.

Rx *Diagalanga*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , Trochiske of Worm-wood,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. seeds of Endive,  $\mathfrak{D}$  j. of fine Sugar, dissolved in Betony water q. f.

Lozenges.

Rx *Trochisc. de rhub.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Worm-wood,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Diallacce*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  *$\beta$ . aurea Alex.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. roots of *Asarum*. *Aristoloch. rot.* of the liver of a Wolf, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  j.  $\beta$ , adde hereto syr. of Agrimony q. f.

An Electuary.

Rx roots of *Asarum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. Licoras, seeds of Annise, Parsly, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. of Raylins,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. of bitter Almonds,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. *troch. de absinthio*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. syr. of Worm-wood q. f.

A Compound.

Rx *Aromati rosati*, *Gabrielis Diagalanga*, *Diarrhod. abbatin*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of Licoras,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Raylins,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , seeds of Annise,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of the liver of a Wolfe dried  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , conserve of Rosemary-flowers,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of preserved Citron-pils  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , syr. of Agrimony q. f.

Another.

Rx leaves of Agrimony, Worm-wood, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Spikenard, flowers of Camomile, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Rosemary,  $\mathfrak{M}$  i. Cinnamon,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , boyl these in an equall quantity of Wine and water.

A Fomentation.

Rx oyle of Worm-wood, Mastick, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Spikenard, Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of Cloves, Cinnamon, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  i.  $\beta$ , juice of Agrimony,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. of Wax and Vineger q. f.

An Oynement

Rx flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , seeds of Lupines,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , leaves of Worm-wood, Agrimony,  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Roses,  $\mathfrak{M}$   $\beta$ , adde oyle of Worm-wood hereto, and boyl them untill they be soft. These are good, if the disease bee caused by a cold matter, if it be from an hot cause.

A Cataplasim.

Rx syrup of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. *Acetosi simp. & compositum*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. water of Endive, Dodder, Agrimony, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. mixe these.

A Julep.

Rx roots of fennel, Sperage, Parsly, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. leaves of groundsell,  $\mathfrak{M}$  i.  $\beta$ , leaves, of Succory, Endive, *Chamepitys*, Dodder, Agrimony,  $\mathfrak{M}$  i. seeds of Annise,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii. Raylins,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , Agarick,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , Cinnamon,  $\mathfrak{D}$  iiij. boyl these

A Potion.



in a sufficient quantity of water unto ℥j. β, adde to the straying syr. of Succory with *Rhab.*

*Another.*

Rx of cleansed Barley, Mij. of Endive, Succory, *Agri-monii*, ana M j β, of Licorice, M β, seeds of Endive, Gourd, Melons, ana ʒ β, of Lettuce, ʒ v. flowers of Violets, Mi. boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, adde unto ℥j. β, of the straying, syr. of Succory, with *Rhab.* ʒ iij.

*Bolus.*

Rx of Venice Turpentine washed in Endive-water, ʒ β, seeds of Endive ʒ ij. *Rhab. electi*, ʒ i. Conserve of Roses, ʒ β, of Sugar q. s.

*Lozenges.*

Rx Conserve of Roses, ʒ ij. *Diarrhod. abbatin sine musco*, *Diatragacanthi frigidi*, ana ʒj. β, of a Wolfs-liver, ʒ ij. of fine Sugar dissolved in Betony water q. s.

*Opiates.*

Rx *Diarrhod. abbatin*, ʒ ij. *Trochisc. de Rhab.* seeds of Endive, *Diatrisen sandal. Diamargariti frigidi*, ana ʒj. β, of Rayfins, ʒ j. syr. of Succory, with *Rhab.* q. s.

*A Powder.*

Rx of a Wolfs-liver, ʒj. β, roots of Succory, ʒ ij. *Sche-nanthi*, ʒ j. of Harts-horne, ʒ β, Licorice, ʒj. β, *Rhab.* ʒ ij. β, of Spikenard, gr. x ij. Give ʒ j. hereof with the water of Honey.

*Bolus.*

Rx of a Wolfes-liver ʒj. *Rhab.* ʒ j. Spikenard, ʒ β, Venice Turpentine, washed in Endive water q. s. he must take one Pill hereof every other day.

*A Fomentati-on.*

Rx of red Roses, flowers of Camomile, Succory, Broad-leaf, ana M j. β, of the tops of Worm-wood, Mj. of red and white Sanders, ana ʒ vj. of Camphire, ʒ ij. β, Succory, Endive, Mi. β, boyle these in water.

Rx oyle of Violets, ʒ j. of Roses, ʒ β, of Camomile, ʒ vj. of Wax and Vineger, a little quantity. These are good, if the disease be caused by a hot matter.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the weak-  
nesse of the Liver.

**VV**Eakenesse of the Liver for the most part is caused by a cold distemper, when it doth succeed immoderate heat, whether the attractive, retentive, alterative faculty become weak, or whether all at once be weakned, as for the most part it happens, because when the naturall faculty is weakned, all the other faculties are weakned: therefore this distemper shall be helped with such medicines as doe moderately strengthen the liver, and also open the obstructions when obstruction doth evermore concur with this disease. But if this distemper be nourished by great plenty of raw humors, they shall be first made obedient unto nature, and then cast out; and then the liver shall be strengthened, and the reliques amended. But if it be a dry distemper, such as restore naturall moisture, as baths and milke, may be used: but as concerning the weaknesse of the liver, that is caused by a tumour, as *St. Antonines fire*, *Schirrus adma*, or inflammation, or else because of some great ulcer, or else by too frequent going to stoole; no mention hath been made of them, because they shall be treated of hereafter, and the cure of them shall also be specified. Syrup of Agrimony, *Diatrim sandal*, are most in use for the weaknes of the liver, because they doe strengthen the retentive, attractive, alterative, and expulsive faculty of the liver, & all these sympathize; for if one be affected, presently the rest suffer.

A method serving for the knowledge of the tumour of  
the **S P L E E N** both hard and soft.

**T**He tumour of the Spleen is oft caused, when as the inflammation thereof is not well cured. Sometimes it happens that the spleen is soone hardened, and swells even as the liver doth, (although it hath a thinner substance



then the liver ) because his nutriment is thick, and besides the spleen must receive the dregs of blood, and his more earthy and impure part. And because of the thinnesse of the substance of the spleen, it doth so grow and swell, that it doth fill up all the left side of the belly, and so stops the midriff, that it cannot be raised up, or thrust down, when it should serve for breathing; whereby oftentimes great sighings are caused in the sleep, as also difficulty of breathing. Also the liver is soon hardened; because it hath a close substance, and small veins, whereby it doth happen that they that have a grosser substance, will with more ease stick in their passages, and so in conclusion wax hard.

*The part affected.*

The part affected is the spleen, which may be perceived by the loading pain in the spleens region.

*Signes.*

A tumour and loading pain is felt in the spleens region, by reason of the plenty of matter. Sometimes this tumour is hard, sometime loose, which sometimes fills the whole side, and part of the matter is sometimes spread abroad into the kell or cawle wherein the bowels are lapt; and sometimes it is inclosed in the spleens roomes. If the patient doth runne much, or else exercise himselfe but moderately, he doth breathe with difficulty; the like also happens, if he do rather lye on his right side than left; because this bowel hangs not so much, neither is the *Diaphragma* so crushed by the bignesse of the bowell. They who are troubled with this disease, doe not well concoct their meate, and yet they have good stomacks, great store of spittle, and many windinesses are generated: the latter of these doe cause rumbling, and waving in the left side; their bellies are stiffe; also laziness doth concur; their dreams are troublesome, and their heads heavy. From hence fear, and weariness of living longer doth ensue. Their bellies for the

most

most part are bound, but when the matter is more corrupted, and doth begin to rage, as it were in the body, then all the aforesaid signs are more manifest: the color of the face is quite changed and the whole body is corrupted by them; whereby the mouth stinks, the gummes are eaten and doe part from the teeth, the place underneath the eye-lid swells, blood breaks forth, but chiefly at the nose, the feet swell a little before night, many black spots, and evil ulcers scarce to be cured, do appear upon the Hands, and Legs, especially if blood hath not been voided at the nose: at the length he doth sleep very disquietly, and the patient doth draw his breath with great trouble, and in the night time he snorts much, especially at the forepart of the night.

*The Cause.*

It is caused for the most part by melancholy humours, which are the dregs of blood, and are caught into the spleen from the veins of the body, and there remaine for a long time. Or else it is caused, because all the veins of the body doe flow with such melancholy blood; for this bowell by nature is appointed to receive it; or it is gathered in the spleene in so great abundance, that the passages are stopped, thorow which this excrement is thrust out of the spleen into the stomach, or belly. Sometimes such store hereof is gathered in the spleene, that it doth stretch the whole substance thereof: So that when such plenty is therein gathered, first a loose tumour is bredde, and then remaning long in the bowell, because of the weakenesse of the expulsive faculty, or else for some other cause, in time by force of heate it doth grow thick and hard, whereby great obstruction of the veines and passages are caused, thorow which the spleene was wont to be purged: in time also this matter doth grow hard, and hereof is caused the *Schirrus* of the spleen. This also happens in the inflammation of the spleene, when as such medicines are applyed, as are astringent above measure, or else dissolve the



Strength too much. Sometimes it is caused by watry and phlegmy humours, derived thither from some other place, as may be perceived in those who have escaped long, cold and moist diseases.

*Prognostiques.*

At the first, while the tumour is increasing, the cure is not so bad: but if it be once ripened, he cannot be cured. Yet there is lesse danger in the tumour of the spleen than liver, yet his events are sundry; for in some sometimes it is diminished, and then again it is increased, and they are disquieted with the aforesaid troubles, in some, the tumour continues hard, and that without any inconvenience, though it doth last for many years, if it swell not unto a great bignesse. And it often turnes into a dropsie, slippery loosenesse of the bowels, consuming of the body, and a quartane ague; all which griefs are not easily cured: so that at the length a consumption, canker, scab, or semi-tertian Fever torment the patient.

*A method serving for the cure of the swelling of the spleen.*

**T**He ayre must be cleer and bright, his meat must be such, as hath an opening force, and that is soon concocted, and doth breed good blood: but such as doe breed grosse and slymy juice, must be eschewed, viz. Porke, Beef, and Hare. his diet must be slender, and hee may eat for his sawce, the flowers of Capars; his drinke must bee fine wine, which must be allayed with water, wherein hot iron hath been often quenched, and he must abstain from drinking water; moderate exercise is good before meat: not inferior to this are bathings and sweatings. His sleep must be moderate, and not presently after meat. His belly must be kept loose; perturbations of the mind must bee shunned, because they doe hinder concoction.

*Syrup*

Syrup of *Epithymon*, *Fumitory*, *Scolopendria*, *Oxymel simplex*, *Compositum*, *Squilliticum*. Syr. *Acetosus simplex*, *de calaminibz*. Syr. *de duabus & quinque radicibus*, Syr. of *Apples*. The waters of *Endive*, *Scolopendria*, *Tamariscus*, the herbe *Citarch*. A decoction of *Sarsaparilla*. A decoction of the rinds and roots of broome, *Tamariscus*, Capons, Succory, *Endive*, *Danc-wort*, *Rosemary*, the seeds of *Parkeleaves*, *Purslane*, *Centory* the lesse: he may for many dayes use these present remedies, and those that follow, because this melancholy humour is with great difficulty purged.

The *Basilica*-veine of the left side shall be opened by fits, if the patients strength can indure it; otherwise the veine that goes to the middle or little finger shall be opened; yet if the disease hath continued long, a vein shall not be opened; for hereby the tumor would grow harder. *Pillul. auree Aggregative*, Pills of *Agarick*, *Fumitory*. *Pillula de lapide armeno*. *Cyaneo*, *confectio bamech*, *Hierapicra*, *Diacol*. *Diaphenicum*, *Diacol*. *Diapha*. *Diacarb*. *diasena*, *N. Sene* *Fpiib*. *Polypod. quercinum*, *Myrabol. Indi*, *Clysters*. But they shall then especially be used, when the obstruction is in the lower part of the bowell, and the tumour sticks fast therein. Also diversity of medicines must be used, lest nature be too much acquainted with one, and because of the stubbornnes of this disease, purging medicines must be often given, and takers away of the hardnes and obstruction of the spleene.

A decoction of *Sarsaparilla*, a Fomentation of the leaves of *Mallows*, *Tamariscus*, *Scolopendria*, *Citarch*, roots of *Capartrees*, seeds of *Linus*, *Fengreek*, the flowers of broom. An oyntment of *Alibea*, of *Agrippa de oribanisa*. An oyntment of the oyl of *Lillies*, *Capars*, *sweet Almonds*, *Hens*, and *Gonse-grease*, *Butter*, the marrow of a *Harts* or *Calves-leg*, the juice of *Cyclamen*, *Brionio*, *Gumme Ammoniack* dissolved in *Vineger*, also an oyntment of the Oyle of *Capars*, fat of *Cammels*. *Squilla* boyled in the oyle of *Capars*, whereto the Roots of *Lillies* must be added. A cerate of *Hyssop*, of the oyle of *Tiles*, *Capars* sweet

*Emptiers.*

*Mollifiers.*



Strengibners.

sweet Almonds. A cataplasme of the leaves of Dane-wort, Mallows, march Mallows, Bears-foot, Figs, roots of white Lillies, Dane-wort, *squlla*, boyled in strong wine, and oyle. An oyntment of Gumme *Ammoniack*, dissolved in *Aceto squillit*. the marrow of Harts and Calves, the fat of a Duck, the grease of an Eltrich, of a Cammell, with Wax, Butter and Vineger. An Emplayster compounded with Melilot, *Diachylum simplex*, *Magnum de Mucilaginitibus*. An Emplayster of the oyle of Tiles, and Gumme *Ammoniack*. *Diarrhod. abbaris*, troch. of Agrimony, Capars, of Lake Triacle, *Diamuscum dulce & amarum*. *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Diacapparam*. Electuary of Bay-berries, a decoction of *Tamariscus*, leaves of Willows, flowers of brooms, *Scolopendria*, roots of Capars, Dane-wort, Broom-seeds, Endive, Roletmary, *Epithymon*, *Sarsaparilla* ʒj. with the powder of Tamariskes, also Capars, and *Scolopendrium*. A Fomentation with the flowers of Camomile, seeds of Cummin, Rew, Annise, leaves of Penny-royall, Rew, Hops, Dill, Camomile, A Brick heat red hot or peece of Mil-stone, and quenched in very sharp Vineger, which yet hot and smoking put into linnen-clothes and lay it to the region of the spleen. An Unguent of the oyle of Capars, Rew, Mastick: an Emplaister of leaven Emplayster of Gumme, *Ammoniack*, *Oppoponax*, *Cucumeris*, *asinini*, Capars, and Vineger. Cupping-glasses with scarification shall bee applied unto those veines, which looke black about the spleene. Or in stead of these, Horse-leaches shall bee applied to those parts, and the vein shal be opened. Also an actuall cautery may be used. When the hardnesse of the spleen is softened by the former medicines, these discussing medicines shall be used, and then softenes must be again used.

A

*A more particular method serving for the cure  
of the tumor of the SPLEENE.*

R syrup Byzantini, Fumitory, Oxy mellis simp. ana ʒ i.  
of Calamint, ʒ i. β, water of Fumitory, Hops, Smallage,  
ana ʒ iij.

*A draught.*

R roots of Cyclamen, ʒ β. roots of Willowes, ʒ i. rinds  
of the roots of Capars, Tamariske, ana ʒ ij. of Dodder, M i.  
of Sene, ʒ iij. of Licorice, ʒ β, seeds of Annise, Fennill, ana  
ʒ ij. boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. β, adde to the straying-  
ing syrup Acetosi comp. ʒ i.

*A Potion.*

R rinds of the roots of Capars, Tamariske, roots of  
Dane-wort, ana ʒ i. of Fumitory, Succory, Lupinus, ana  
M i. β, of Mayden-hair, Thyme, Cetrach, ana M i. Epithymi,  
M β, of Licorice, ʒ iij. seeds of Annise, ʒ β, Fennill, ʒ ij. *sene*  
*Alex. Polypodii quercini*, ana ʒ i. β, of white and light Aga-  
rick, ʒ iij. Ginger, ʒ i. flowers of Borage, Broome, ana M i.  
boyle these in water q. s. unto ʒ i. β, adde to the straying  
syrup Acetosi composui, ʒ iij.

*Another.*

R Confect. bamech, ʒ iij. Diasena. ʒ i. Diacath. ʒ i. β, syr. of  
Epithymum. ʒ i. water Scolopendria, ʒ iij.

*A draught.*

R Pillul. Indarum, fetidarum, Agarici troch. ana ʒ i. Pils  
of Rhab. ʒ β, de lapide lazuli gr. vi. syrup of Epithymum q. s.  
make hereof 7. or 8. Pils, and he may take them twice in a  
month.

*Pills.*

R Pulveris sancti, ʒ i. β, Diacath. ʒ iij. of the common de-  
coction, ʒ i.

*A draught.*

R Troch. of Capars, ʒ β. flowers of Broome, M ij. rinds  
of Tamarisk, ʒ i. infuse these for the space of 24. houres  
in ʒ i. β, of wine, hee must drinke of this straying two  
houres after hee hath taken some of the following Electu-  
ar y

*Another.*



An electuary.

Rx *Diaourcuma*. ʒ β, *Dianisi*, *Diacastorei*, ana ʒ i. β, of ancient Triacle, ʒ ij.

Opiares.

Rx the rings and roots of Capars, Broome, Tamariske, ʒ i. β, *Epithymi*, Cetrach, ana ʒ ij. of Cinnamon, ʒ ij, conserve of Borage, ʒ i. β, *Aromatici rosati Gal.* of Mithridate, ana ʒ i. i. fyrupe of Fumitory q. s.

Lozenges.

Rx *Troch. de Cappare*, *de Eupatorio*, ana ʒ β, rinds of the roots of Tamariske, *Sarsaparilla*, ana ʒ ij. roots of *Ruscus*, ʒ i. *Rhab.* ʒ i β, of fine Sugar, dissolved in the decoction of *Sarsaparilla*, he may take one of these in one day.

A Fomentation.

Rx roots of *Asarum*, *Cyclaminis*, ana ʒ i. rinds of Tamariske, roots of Capars, ana ʒ ij. *Membastri*, Wormewood, Origan, Centory the lesse, Mercury, Fumitory, *Scolopendria* ana p. i. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i. seeds of Cummin, Carrowaies, ana ʒ β, Linseed, Fengreek, ana ʒ i. boyle these in a sufficient quantity of Wine and water, unto a softnesse, dippe a sponge herein and apply it to the region of the liver.

An Ointment

Rx oyle of Bricks, Rew, Capars, Juniper, ana ʒ ij. oyle of Camomile, ʒ β, marrow of a Calfe, ʒ ij. Bryony, *Cyclaminis*, ana ʒ β, of Gumme *Ammoniack*, dissolved in Vinegar, ʒ i. β, make it according to. art.

Another.

Rx *Unguenti arthanite majoris*, ʒ i β. Gumme *Ammoniack* dissolved in Vinegar, ʒ β, oyle of Capars, white Lillies, ana q. s.

Another.

Rx *Unguenti Agrippe*, *arthanite majoris*, ana ʒ l. Gumme *Ammoniack*, *Oppoponax*, dissolved in Vinegar, ana ʒ β, *Olei cucumeris asinini*, ʒ β, this must not be used at the first, untill the tumor and matter be softened.

A Quilt.

Rx of common Salt, seeds of Cummin, ana M i. β, fry them together: flowers of Mellilot, M i. roots of Dane-wort ʒ i. seeds of Rew, ʒ v. bruise these together, & dried on a tile sew them in a fine linnen cloth, & when this is to be used, some Vinegar, wherein a brick heat red hot hath been cast, must be sprinkled upon the cloth, two quilts must bee made hereof, and they must bee applied unto the region of the spleene,

spleen, one after another. It doth soften, dry, and resolve.

R rinds of Tamariske, 3 β, roots of white Lillies, 3 i. Dane-wort, 3 i. β, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Wormewood, Rew, ana Mi. seeds of Lupines, *Linu*, Fengreek, ana 3 β, 8. Figs, boyle these in water q. s. unto a softnesse, then well pound or beat them and adde thereto of Barley-flower, *Fimi caprarum*, ana 3 i. of Gumme *Ammoniack*, *Sagapeni*, ana 3 β, Oyle of Tiles, Capars, ana q. l. this may bee used after a Fomentation.

*A Cataplasme.*

R *Diachyli magni*, *Emplastrum de mucilaginis*, de *Melliloto composito*, ana 3 β, *Unguenti dialibee*, *Agrippa*, ana 3 iij. rinds of Tamariske 3 i. seeds of Rew, 3 β.

*An Emplayster.*

R *Sagapeni*, Gumme *Ammoniack*, ana 3 i. oyle of Lillies, 3 ij. root of flower-de-luce, 3 ij. *salis gemme*, 3 i. β, the Gum must be dissolved in Vineger.

*Another.*

*An appendix serving for the cure of the tumor of the SPLEENE.*

First of all, the stopping matter shall bee made obedient unto nature, and that the force of medicines may bee conveyed to the spleen, lenitive medicines shall be given, and then use preparing medicines. When this is done, the matter shall be fetched out of the body, by a purging medicine, and the bowels tumor must also be made soft; and with medicines for this purpose, strengthners should bee mixed; in conclusion such things may be used as doe consume the reliques. It is great ease unto the patient, if the Hemroids be opened, and after the receiving of any inward medicine, the patient must lye on the left side: for either of these are helpfull for the cure of this disease.



*A method serving for the knowledge of ICTERITIA,  
or the yellow JAUNDISE.*

**I**cteritia, is an effusion sometimes of yellow choler, sometimes black, sometimes both over the whole body, and this is incident to maids: also this cholerick blood is spread over the whole body with the blood, because the excrements are not daily, or not at all voyded. And this happens chiefly for these causes, either through the default of the whole body, or else of the liver, or by some default of the passages by which it must be purged, or else by default of the excrements. This colour breakes out and appears chiefly in the white of the eyes, and about the temples.

*The part affected.*

In this disease the same place and part is not alwayes affected: for sometimes the liver is in fault, when as it is too hot or else in posthumed, and then both the urine and the stool are stayned with a yellow color. Sometimes a Feaver doth concur with a certain pain in some obscure place of the liver, whereby the colour of the face is changed; sometimes the bladder of the gall is affected, and then heaviness is felt in the right side of the hearts wals; the excrements are for the most part white, but the urine is yellow, also he is freed from Agues. Sometime this disease doth happen through default of the whole body, and then very few of the signs formerly rehearsed will appeare. the skin is more withered and combred with an itch, and the solid parts of the body are distempred with too much heat; this affect is an accident appertaining unto the mutation of the quality of the body.

*The Signs.*

This evill is manifest to sense, but especially the color of the eyes doe witness that a man is sick of the Jaundise: The patients appetite is diminished, and bitterness of the  
mouth

moth doth increafe because of heat, and yet for the most part it is without a Feaver, but head-ache, and loofness of the body doth ensue: the urine is like unto Saffron, also muddy and thick, & sometimes it is stopt. The excrements are white, if the bladder of the galls passage be stopped, and but little is voyded, and that often, and by little and little. A heaviness without tumor is felt in the place of the liver, the urine is sometimes red and thick, even unto blacknesse; but if the yellow Jaundise be caused by plenty of gall by reason of the hot distemper of the liver, and that the passages which reach to the bladder of the gall be opened, then the excrements will be blackish, because black melancholy is got into the belly, and also the patient is scarce sick. If the Jaundise is caused by the default of the spleen, the body is not so heavy, as when it doth come by choler; yet there is sometimes a heaviness, and hard tumour on the left side, the patients are more musing and sad then formerly they were, their bodies are first dyed with a dark colour, then with a leaden, and very black, their bellies for the most part are bound, and the excrements that are voyded are very black, so also is their urine. The patients for the most part are troubled with an itch, and they sweat but little: and if this disease hath been of long continuance, the body at the last waxeth white with blacknesse.

*The Causes.*

Sometimes it comes by increafe of choler, through the livers too hot distemper; for thereby such store of choler is generated, that the gall cannot contain it, & then a boiling heat is felt about the seat of the liver in the left side: the excrements are stayned with choler, the urine is thick, and like to Saffron; also laziness, and difficulty of breathing doth concur, and then especially the latter two may be perceived, when as the patient doth exercise himself. Oftentimes it is caused, because the liver, or the passages



that goe from the liver into the galls bleader, or from thence into the bowels, are stopt, for then the liver cannot void cholerick humors by those places which are destined by nature for that purpose, by which meanes, the blood must needs be impure: and the cholerick humor flying back into the veines, is mixed with blood, and then doth spread it self over the whole body: a heavinesse is felt on the right side, and the excrement, are white. Sometime, this disease is caused by the default of the whole body when as the naturall heat in every part of the body is made sharpe and biting, because of the parts too hot distemper; for then the humors doe rather turn into gall, and sometimes into so great abundance, that the gall is mixed with blood enclosed in the veines, by which meanes the whole body is stayned with gall, and dyed with a golden colour; also a great itch breaks forth, and a dulnesse of minde and senses, feeblenesse and lazinesse do concur. Sometimes it is caused by cholerick Feavers, because the offending matter is thrust out of the body by the naturall force, into the uttermost parts of the body, and so leaves an impression in those parts through which it did passe, and the excrements are then naturall: also the urine retaines the perfect colour, and hereby the patient may be rid of his ague. The yellow Jaundise caused after this sort, doth arise suddenly. Sometimes it is caused by inflammation of the liver, in which case the whole body is stained with gally excrements, by reason of the great heat of the blood; and then the excrements and urine are dyed with a very yellow colour; also a vehement ague concures, the colour of the face is changed, the patient doth thirst much, and doth feel a loathing pain in the region of the liver. In conclusion, a venemous quality corrupting the blood, doth cause this disease; which will be made knowne, if the colour of the patients face be changed, when as no Ague doth ensue.

*Prog-*

*Prognostiques.*

If the yellow Jaundise continue long, it doth threaten danger of a dropſy; eſpecially if the urine be long time watry: for then a great obſtruction is cauſed by the bowels coldnes. It is alſo moſt dangerous, if the liver waxeth hard; alſo it is an ill ſigne if the patients have no appetite, if they be troubled with waking and doting, or if they ſpeak with difficulty. If this diſeaſe be cauſed by default of the ſpleen, it doth laſt longer then if it were cauſed by the diſtemper of the liver. And as the yellow Jaundise, ſo ſometime the black choler is cauſed by the liver, but the ſpleen never cauſeth the yellow choler. It is dangerous if an Ague follow the yellow Jaundise. But if it doth come upon one in acute diſeaſes, as the evill is doubtfull, ſo it is hardly to be ſhaked off. Yet if it be cauſed on the Criticall day, and good ſignes of concoction doe appeare, and no hardneſſe doth ariſe in the Liver, it is a good ſigne; for this ſhewes that the expulſive faculty hath got the victory; but if it be cauſed before the Criticall day, it is an evill ſigne. It is good that the hemroids run in this diſeaſe. Alſo that man is in danger, who is ſick of a confirmed Jaundise, and is neither cured, neither is the matter preſently caſt out; for at the laſt, either the heart, or ſome other noble part is oppreſſed.

*A method ſerving for the cure of the*  
**JAUNDISE.**

**T**HE aire muſt be temperate; and their diet ſuch as may coole, and moiſten, and extenuate the humours, and may eaſily be digeſted; as Hens, Pullets, Birds of mountaines, fiſhes that doe live in gravelly places; the patient may alſo eate Prunes, Apples, Cherries, Melons, yet with great moderation. His meat may bee ſeaſoned with the juyce of Lemmons, and Oranges. Such nutriments as generate groſſe and melancholy blood, and ſuch as bind, and multiply choler, muſt bee avoyded.

*The*



The patient may drink pilsan, or wine allayed with the water of grasse, or Smallage. Also exercise in a mean may be permitted. And baths and Frictions in the winter time are good. The sleep in like manner must be moderate; and the exerements voyded in due season. Such perturbations of the mind as doe inflame the spirits must be shunned, and pleasing objects supply their place.

## Preparers.

Syrup of Violets, Endive, Lemmons, of Roses, Sorrell, Pomegranates, of Succory with *Rhab.* water of Sorrel, Succory, Endive, Eye-bright, Lettuce, Plantane, syr. de *Duabus & quinq;* radicibus, *Oxymel simplex*, Syrup of Agrimony, Worme-wood, *Mel rosatum*, *syrup Byzantinus*. Water of Agrimony, Hops, Dodder, Sparage, Fennill, Radish, *Ruscus*. A decoction of the roots of Angelica, Broome, *Rubia tinctorum*, Sparage, Parsely, *Asarum*, Fennill, *Aristol.* *Fumitory*, Maiden-haire, *Serpillum*, St. Johns-wort, Calamint, *Chamaepitit*, Sorrell, Rosemary, Endive, Succory, Cinnamon, Sugar, Hore-hound. Because phlegmy and grosse humors are mixed with choler, openers and cleansers are very good; but they must be used, some distance of time coming between; otherwise they would prove dangerous. If the disease be caused by hot humors, the former of these medicines may be used, and the latter may be used in a cold cause.

## Emptiers.

*Electuarium e psyllio*, of the juyce of Roses, *Diaprunum solutivum*, *Hiera picra*, *Diaphenicum*, *Pillul. aggregativæ*, de *Rhab.* of Agrimony, *Manna*, *Cassia*, *Rhab.* Also the infusion hereof in the water of Endive. *Diaphenic. Pillul. Alephangine Aurea*, *Hiera simp.* *Agaricus trochiscatus*, Agarick infused with *Rhab.* *Cassia*, *Manna*. A vomit with *Eleborum*, if the belly bee bound, a gentle Clyster at the first is good, for this doth draw back the humours running unto the skinne. After this a stronger may be given, and at certain distances of time be administered. The Clyster may bee made with roots of Fennill, Hore-hound, Parsely, Worm-wood, Agrimony, Maiden-haire, seeds of Annile, Fennill,

Fennell, Electuary of the juice of Roses, *Cassia fistula*. If blood abound at the first, the *Basilica* veine shall be opened in the beginning, or else there would be danger of the drop sic. But especially the vein shall be opened, if the Jaundice be caused by the obstruction of the passages, thorow which the gall is conveyed into the bladder. If there be store of excrements about the belly, they shall be driven away by some gentle purge, before the former preparing medicines be administred. For evill humors will sooner be carried into the great veins of the liver: if opening medicines be administred, and also wil breed obstructions. When excrements are removed from the belly, then those humors that cause obstructions, shall be made obedient to nature, and then by these present remedies shall be expelled.

Clysters. Errhins. Sneezing medicines. If the hemroids did formerly run, they must again bee opened. Also the monthly termes must be caused to flow.

Conserve of Roses, Violets, the great conserve of our description. Syr. of the juice of Lemmons, Pomegranats. A decoction of *Guaiacum* with *Oxymel*, juice of Dodder, roots of Radish, roots of *Cyclamen*, *Rhab.* Hore-hound, Fumitory. An epitheme for the liver of red-Roses, Spike, *Spodium*, Sanders, Saffron, Rose-water, Buglosse, Endive, Vineger. If this be applied to the heart, *Beza album & rubrum*, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloves shall be added; a bath of Violets, Endive, Lettuce, Succory. *Diacurcuma*, *dialacca*, *Diacalamimba*, *Diatrium sandali*, *Diarrhod*. *Abbas*. Triacle, Mithridate, Trochiske of Agrimony, of *Rhab.* with the decoction of *Cichs*. Cream of Goats-Milk, also the Milk of Goats, that do feed upon Sparage, Agrimony, Fennell, Parsly, worms dried in a furnace; the powder of them must be drunk with wine and Sugar. A decoction of Hore-hound, red *Cichs*, Sparage, Radish, and white wine; the dung of dogs that have fed for the most part upon bones, as also Goose-dung.

Shavings of Ivory infused in wine, or some other opening liquor. Wormes also dried, and given in Wine, the

*Averters.*

*Strengibners.*

*Correctors of accidents.*



roots of Fumitory boyld in water and then drunk off. A Potion of the root of *Cyclamen*, herewith sweat must be caused. An odour of sharp hot Wine: the patient as he doth sit in a bath, may receive the fume hereof up at his Nostrils. Ershins, of the juice of *Cyclamen*, *Nigella*, Beet, *Anagallidis*. Rose-water gently dropped in the patients eyes in the beginning of the disease, for this wil hinder the humors running into the eyes. The eyes also may be washed with the water of Barley, juice of Sorrell, Pomegranats, and a little Vineger. Dry baths, also moyst baths of fresh water and Vineger for the eyes. A bath of Brimstone, or else a bath of the decoction of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilior, Calamint, Rosemary, Dill, Branne, Pellitory of the Wall, things also that provoke sneezing. These do take away the yellow colour of the eyes, and soften the hardnesse of the liver.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*  
**ICTERITIA, or JAUNDISE.**

*A Clyster.*

R<sup>x</sup> Roots of Fennell, Smallage, ana ʒj. *Scolopendria*, Mj. ʒ, leaves of Mallows, Coleworts, ana Mj. of Dodder, M ʒ, *senæ Alex. Polipodii quercini*, ʒj. ʒ, *Epithymi*, ʒj. *Colocynth*. ʒ ʒ, Mj. boyle these in water q.s. unto ʒj. ʒ, adde to the straining *Diacath*. ʒj. ʒ, oyle of Rew, ʒj. of Camomile, ʒij. of Salt, ʒj.

*A Julep.*

R<sup>x</sup> Syr. *Byzantini Oxymellis compositi*, ʒij. waters of Endive, Succory, *Alkebengi*, ana ʒiiij.

*Bolus.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Electuarii de psillio* ʒvj. *Diacath*. ʒiiij. *Rhab. Agarici trochiscati*, ana ʒj. Give this in the morning, or if the patient doth rather desire a liquid thing, these may be dissolved in the decoction of Radish, *Asarum*, *Aristol. ros.* Agrimony, Dodder.

*A Potion.*

R<sup>x</sup> roots of *Asarum*, *Aristolach. ros.* ana ʒʒ, Fennel, Smallage,

lage.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. seeds of Annise, Juniper, red Ciches, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.  $\beta$ , *Podii quercini*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , Ginger, Spike, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. boyle these in water. q. s. unto lb i. add to the strayingning syr. de *Epithymo*, *Byzantini*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ .

R Electuary of the juice of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. *Diacath.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , *Diaphenia.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of Spike, gr. v. Syrup of Succory with *Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , water of Succory,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii.

A draught.

R *Pillule Rhab. Hieræ simplicis Gal. Aggregatæ*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Diagridii*, gr. iiij. syr. of Worm-wood q. s. make hereof 7.

Pills.

R *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Aloes*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Agarici trochiscati*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , *Radicum rubic tinctorum*, *Cyclamint*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. *Diagridii*, gr. xii. syr. of Agtimony. q. s. Give  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. hereof after the first sleep.

Pills.

R water of Endive,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. macerate herein of Cinnamon,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. Give some of the strayingning with  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. *Oxymellis compositi*, unto the remainder of the strayingning adde of fresh *Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. of Cinnamon, gr. xii. the water of Endive q. s. macerate againe all these together upon hot embers for the space of twenty four houres. The strayingning hereof must also in the same manner be drunke.

A draught.

R roots of *Asarum*, Radish, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed, mixe  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. of oyle with a good quantity of this decoction.

A Vomit.

R *Troch. de Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. *Diarrhod. abbat*, *Diacurcume*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Dianion sandal.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. juice of Dodder, Hore-hound, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , syr. of Endive, juice of Sorrell, ana q. c.

An Electuary.

R flowers of Elder M iij. Dodder, M i.  $\beta$ , of burnt Ivory,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. roots of *Asarum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , infuse these for the space of 24. houres in lb. j.  $\beta$ , of strong wine, adde to the strayingning of fine Sugar q. s. The patient may drinke a draught hereof two houres after they have taken the Electuary.

A Potion.

R *Troch. de Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Diacurcume*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$  of earth Wormes dried

A mixture.



Lozenges.

dried ʒ ij. β, roots of *Cyclamen*, ʒ ij. syr. *Byzantini*, of *Agri-*  
*mony*, ana q. f.

Rx *Diarrhæd. abbas*, *Diacurcuma*, ana ʒ ij. *Trochisc. de*  
*Rhab.* ʒ j. of fine Sugar, in the water of Dodder q. f. These  
following may be applyed, if the disease be caused by the  
spleen.

A Potion

Rx roots of Fennell, Parsly, ana ʒ j. roots of *Cyclamen*,  
rinds of the roots of Tamarisk, Capars, ana ʒ ij. Dodder,  
M j. β, *Scelopendria*, M j, *Sarsaparilla*, ʒ β, roots of Broom,  
seeds of Annise, ana ʒ j. boyl these in water q. f. unto ʒ j. β,  
adde to the straying *Oxymellis simp.* ʒ iiij.

Another.

Rx roots of *Cyclamen*, ʒ v. of Radish, ʒ j. roots of *Acorus*,  
Licorice, ana ʒ vj. boyl these a little in ʒ ij. of white wine.  
After they be macerated, adde to the straying *Oxymellis*  
*simp.* ʒ iiij. Give hereof ʒ iiij. in the morning and so lay him  
down to sweat, but first he must be purged with the follow-  
ing purge.

A draught.

Rx *Diacarb.* ʒ iiij. of *Cassia*, *Manna Calabrina*, ana ʒ β, with  
the whay of Milke: this must be given first of all.

Another.

Rx roots of *Althea*, Elecampane, ana ʒ iiij. of cleansed Bar-  
ley, M v. of Succory, Fumitory, ana M ij. β, leaves of Sorrell,  
flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Violets, Buglosse, ana M j.  
*Volubilis*, Centory the lesse, ana M j. β, boyl these in water  
q. f. that the humor running towards the skin, may be dri-  
ven another way herewith; let the patient use it for the  
space of 8 dayes.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
JAUNDISE.

**T**His disease for the most part is caused by stopping of  
that vessels passages, thorow which the Gal is convey-  
ed from the liver and spleen, into the bowels, by reason of  
grosse humors which doe heat the liver, and generate plen-  
ty of Gall therein: Therefore let the belly first be emptied  
by a Clyster; for by reason of the colivenesse thereof, the  
Gall

Gall cannot descend, which should stirre up the bowels for the voyding of the excrements. After this, the grosse humors shall be made obedient unto nature, with cutting, fining and opening medicines, and after they are concocted, they shall be ejected out of the body: then the bowels shall be strengthened, and the passages opened. If it be caused by inflammation of the liver, that must first be cured, if there be danger of the liver swelling, adde some *Ammoniack* unto a playster of Mellilot: a decoction shal be made of the roots of Lillies, *Althea*, Figs, and Rayns; also an oyntment with the oyle of sweet Almonds and *Dialthea*. If it be caused by some venomous matter, he may cast it up with a vomit: But if it doth descend into the bowels, then a clyster shal be used. If this matter do run through the whole body, Triacle the decoction of Orange-pills, Lemmons, Endive, *Carduus* with *benedictus*, Angelica, Buglosse, Baulm. If it be caused by the obstruction of the bladder of the Gall, then purging & opening of a vein shall be used. Agarick with *Rhab.* is herein of great force. It will be good to wash and bath the skin, and to use such medicines as will cause sweating: for hereby the matter that lyeth in the body, will be drawn forth. It will also be good for the patient to wash his face and eyes, with the water of the same bath, or else with the water of distilled Melons.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the disease*  
of the WORMES.

**I**T is evident that worms may breed in many parts of the body: for they breed in rotten ulcers, in teeth, in ears, and kidneys. Yet in this chapter only mention is made of those worms alone which do breed in the bowels, which are called *Lumbrici*, or belly-worms. It is evident that some of these



are long and round, and breed oftner than the rest, and are like the worms that do breed in the earth: some are long & broad in the likenesse of gourd-seeds, and these are spread sometimes over all the bowells; for they have been seen of incredible length. There are some also that are very little, if they be compared with the former, which in Latine are called *Ascarides*, and are like to mites which breed in rotten cheese.

*The part affected.*

The guts are here affected, for in them all sorts of worms are bred whereof we speak, and the strait guts are troubled with *Ascarides*, or mites. Long round wormes breed in the upper guts, from whence sometimes they fall into the belly, and they are sometime voyded at the mouth, sometimes at the nose. But broad worms which are farre longer, and thinner than the rest, are spread over all the guts: for by reason of their length they do as well touch the thin guts, as the thick.

*Signes.*

They that are troubled with the least of all, have an extreame itch in the fundament, and narrow guts, and they have a desire to go to stool often. And sometimes the right guts slides out of the body, but after they have voyded somewhat, they are not so much troubled, because they are voyded for the most part with the excrement. But long and round wormes doe stick intangled in the guts passages, and then grievous accidents do ensue. For through want of meat, they doe often ascend up into the stomach, and distresseth it by biting, and doe also stir up such biting pains, that dissolution, choking, also trembling of the body, and sometimes faintnesse of the heart doth follow; and then great panting of the heart, and a cold sweat ensues: oftentimes a desire to vomit, and sometime they vomit: a yexing and dry cough is also stirred up, and the face looks red, and they are cast into a sudden heat, yet it doth not last long.

Hence

Hence it is that some start out of their sleeps and doe cry out, peradventure they doe leape out of their beds. Some do grind their teeth, and tosse their bodies after sundry sort; yet they are more troublesome in the day time than in the night: when they be waking, their nose is troubled with an itch; in the night their mouth is hot with spittle, their belly swels and is as hard as if they were troubled with the drop-sie; also the belly is very much wrung. Sometime a flux likewise ensueth, and a paleness of the face. For the most part the body is wasted, when as there are such store of wormes, that the nourishment that the patient doth receive, is scarce sufficient to feed them, and if they doe want this nourishment, presently they get up to the stomack, and there afflict the patient with continuall gripings; they cause the patient to have a good appetite, and sometime a doggish and ravenous greedinesse, yet for the most part they are lean; they doe often thirst; and inordinate Feavers, somewhat like quotidianes, are caused, which bring horror with them. And as the appetite is sometime great, so sometime it is very small. All these accidents mult not be expected in all men; the broad worm, when it doth trouble the patient, as it hath many signes in common with those that are round, so also a leanness of body concurs; much food is desired, which being digested, is soone voyded, whereby he is forced to take fresh meat; otherwise there wil be a gnawing of the guts. There is also a sure signe of this broad worm noted in the stool: for little bodies are mingled with all, like unto Gourd and Cowcumber-seeds, and it is the proper excrements of these sorts of wormes.

*The Causes.*

The cause of wormes in common is rottennesse, or grosse, phlegmy, and slymy matter, such as is apt to corrupt; also a putrefying heat accompanies all these, which doth prepare this matter, and then it is wrought up by the persusion of naturall heate, which doth give life to the wormes. By  
Salt,



salt, sharp, or bitter humors, worms are never generated, but rather are destroyed by them. In conclusion, Summer and sweet fruits, which are soon sweet, ripe, and rotten, do breed wormes.

*Prognostiques.*

Many men have made a slight matter of being troubled with round worms, but in the end have proved, that the danger of being molested with them, is not small: for many are eaten and killed by them: and they do so fret the guts of others, that they bring them also in danger of death: the greater worms are more dangerous than the lesser, many than few, red than white, living than dead; but such as are diversly coloured are worse than all the rest; for they are a sign of a far greater putrefaction. *Ascarides* are least dangerous, because they be little and slender; and because they do breed in a place most remote from the principall parts of the body, namely, in the strait gut. Oftentimes grievous diseases are caused by them, and sometime they procure sudden death; sometimes they doe cast one into a swoond; sometimes they do bring the falling sicknesse, and a ravenous appetite, sometime the collick, or an inordinate Feaver, which doth afflict the patient twice or thrice with cold and hot fits in the space, of 24 houres; for the most part they annoy children, and such as are come to ripenesse of years. Worms voyded in the beginning of a Feaver portend no good. For by them may be perceived, that there is great store of rotten and pernicious matter in the body, if they be voyded symptomatically in the state and height of a Feaver: but if they be voyded in the declination of a Feaver, there is some hope of health.

*A method serving for the cure of the*  
**WORMES.**

**T**He ayre must be temperate; their meate such as doth breed good juice, and let them eat largely, or else the

wormes

wormes will gnaw their guts for want of sustenance. Also sweet meats must be given; for hereby the wormes are quieted. Cheese, Milk, and fish must be avoyded, and all such as doe breed phlegmy humors; He may drinke wine mingled with water. It is better for him to sleepe in the night than day: the excrements of the belly must be kept loose, all perturbations of the mind must be avoyded.

Syrup of Wormewood, Endive of Succory, with *Rhab. de Acetospate citri*; the water of grasse, Purslane, Wormewood.

Preparers.

*Agaricum Troch.* The infusion of Agarick, in *Oxymel.* *Hierapicra*, *Diacol.* common Pill, or pestilentiall Pills either eaten or laid to the navill, are very good. *Pillula ex Aloe, myrrha, Rhab. Sale gemme.* *Diatumbith cum Rhab.* is very good to kill and expell the Wormes. *Diacanthum* is also good for the same purpose. *Rhab. Aloe, Turbit.* A decoction of the roots of Zedoaria, Angelica, Gramen, Fine Wheat, rinds and roots of Capars, Borage, Buglosse, Violets, seeds of *Sanctonicum*: adde unto these *Diaturb.* with *Rhab.* A suppositor with *Aloes*, seeds of *Sanctonicum*, (called Wormeseed) Coriander, Harts-horn, Myrrhe, Hony, and the gall of an Oxe: The matter whereof the Wormes are generated is expelled by these medicines.

Purgers.

The great conserve of our description is wonderfull good, Mithridate, Triacle of *Andronicus*, *Hierapicra*, Zedoaria, seeds of *Sanctonicum*, Male, Pimpernel, roots of Grasse, Male, Fennil, and Vinager, Centory the lesse with the seeds of *Sanctonicum*, *Aristoloch.* Rot, both Southernwood, all kinds of wormwood, Bitter-wort, Garlick. *Aloes* is a most excellent medicine, Seeds of Lupines, Purslane of Citrons, leaves of Peaches, wild Mints, water-Germander, Tormentill, Dittany with the decoction of Savine, *Coloquintida*, Agarick, Harts-horne, the juyce of blacke Hellebore, Plantane, Wormwood. Water of wormwood, Rue, Agrimony, Valerian, Mug-wort. Syrup of Purslane, with the seeds of Citron, Oyle of Violets, with *Euphorbium*, *Ungentum de arthanita*. An oyntment for the belly and stomack

Destroyers  
of Wormes.



of the oyle of Rew, Worm-wood, Mints, seeds of *Sanctonitum* Aloes, Vineger, the gall of a Sow, Milke, Hony, and sugar. An Emplayster for the navill, of Aloes the gall of a Sheepe, Oxe, and Sow, Wormewood, Wormeseed, Tormentill, Triacle, oyl of Mints, Wormewood, juyce of Peaches, Wormewood, tosted bread steeped in the best Vineger. These medicines may divers wayes be applyed, either take them in at the mouth, or else they may be given in a Clyster, or else they may be laid to the navill: if they must be taken in at the mouth, the patient must fast a pretty while before hee take them, and if for want of meat they pinch and gnaw the stomach, pleasing medicines shall be given.

*Drivers out  
of Wormes.*

When they be killed, the former empirers shall again be administred; Pils of *Rufus* are excellent to kill them and bring them forth, Triacle, Mithridate, oyle of sowre Grapes. A Clyster of the decoction of a Pullet, Barley, Sebesten, Sugar, and fresh Butter. An oyntment of the oyle of Rew, Wormewood, the juyces of the same, powder of Dittany, Tormentil, Harts-horn; a playster with leaves of Sothernwood, Rew, Cresses, meal of Lupines, leaves of Horehound, Mercury, Sage, Wormewood, Gall of an Oxe, Aloes. A Fomentation of the same. A suppository for the Wormes in the strait gut. R<sup>x</sup> oyle of Rew wherein a quantity of Aloes, and Cow gall is dissolved: this must be put into the body by a pipe, or else it may be made with Hony, and a good quantity of Aloes. Also a suppository may be made of fat lard, and so thrust into the fundament, a thred must be tyed unto it, that it may be plucked back again. When the wormes are killed, lest that sore paine should afflict the body, they must presently be expelled, lest rotten feavers should be caused by their maligne humors, or else some other sore humors break out.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the WORMES.

R Syr. of Saccory with *Rhab. Byzantini*, ana ʒ ij. waters  
of Fennill, Smallage, ana ʒ v. Give this in the morning, and  
make hereof three draughts.

A Julep.

R roots of *Gramen*, wheat, ana ʒ i. roots and rinds of Capars  
ana ʒ i. ʒ. Tormentill, ʒ ʒ, flowers of Borage, Buglosse, Violets,  
ana M ʒ, boyle these in water q. s. untill half bee consumed;  
unto fʒ i. ʒ, of the straying, adde *Disturbish* with *Rhab.*  
ʒ i. ʒ.

A Potion.

R seeds of Plantane, of belly-worms, Zedoaria, Centory  
the lesse, ana ʒ i. of Aloes, Myrrh, ana ʒ ʒ, of Harts-horn burnt,  
shavings of Ivory. ʒ i. ʒ, roots of Tormentill, Dittany, ana  
ʒ iij. shavings of Unicorns horn, ʒ ij.

A Powder.

R of Harts-horne burnt, ʒ ʒ, *Rhab.* seeds of Endive,  
roots of Tormentill, Dittany, ana ʒ ʒ, seeds of *Sanctoni-*  
*cum*, gr. x. of the finest Sugar, ʒ ij. Give at one time ʒ i.  
hereof.

Another.

R seeds of *Sanctonicum* ʒ i. ʒ, roots of Fearn, Tormentill,  
Dittany, ana ʒ ʒ, Centory the lesse M ʒ, steep these in the best  
wine over hore-mbers, for the space of 16. houres: the patient  
may drink of this straying, ʒ iij. but first ʒ i. of Triacle must  
bee added hereto.

A draught.

R of the Pestilentiall pills of *Rus* ʒ i. of the best Triacle,  
ʒ ʒ, of *Scordium*, of *Corraline*, decoction of the seeds of  
*Sanctonicum*, ʒ iij.

Another.

R of Triacle ʒ i. male Pimpernell, water Germander, ana  
ʒ i. Give this with the decoction of *Sanctonicum*.

Another.

R roots of *Gramen*, ʒ iij. seeds of *Sanctonicum*, ʒ ʒ, Centory  
the lesse, M i ʒ, Licorice, ʒ i. Worme-seed, *Rhab.* ana ʒ iij. boyle  
these in water q. s. untill half bee consumed: Give ʒ iij. hereof with ʒ i. of Harts-  
horne burnt, and of Sugar q. s.

A Potion.

R of the roots of Dittany, Eleccampane, ana ʒ i. Savin,

Another.



Licorice, 3 i. heads of Garlick, 3 i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. untill half be consumed: adde hereto some new Cowes milke mixed with wheate meal to make it a pullis, adding of Saffron, and Sugar, ana q. s.

A draught.

Rx of corralina, seeds of *S. mctonicum*, Annise, ana 3 i. (if the patient be not troubled with a Feaver) Pepper, *Pulpa. colocynth.* ana 3 i. *S. mctonicum* 3 i. *Mellis dispensati* 3 i. water of Purfline, 3 vi. Give this at two draughts; it expelleth and killeth Wormes.

Another.

Rx seeds of *S. mctonicum* 3 ii. macerate these in *Aqua vite*, for the space of 24. hours, adde unto two ounces of the straining of Triacle 3 i.

An Unguent.

Rx oyles of Bricks or Tiles, 3 i.  $\beta$ , Aloes 3 iiij.  $\beta$ , *Pulpa. colocynth.* 3 i.  $\beta$ , of the gall of a Bull, 3 i. of the meal of Lupines 3 i. juyce of black Hellebore, 3 vi. with Waxe q. s.

A Cataplasme.

Rx roots, *Aristol. rot.* Dittany, Elecampagne, ana 3 i. Centory the lesse, M iij. leaves of Worm-wood, *Periscaria*, Southernwood, ana M iij.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. untill they be soft, then adde of Aloe, 3 i. Myrrh, 3 iiij. meal of the seeds of Purflane, *S. mctonicum*, Lupines, ana 3 iiij. of Oxes gall, oyl of Rew, Worm-wood, ana q. s. this must bee applyed unto the belly, and 3 i. of Harts-horne, with the water of Hony must be taken first.

Another.

Rx roots of Dittany, Tormentill, ana 3 i. of Fearn, 3  $\beta$ ; Centory the lesse, Southernwood, Horehound, ana M iij. meal of Lupine, Oxes gall, 3 i.  $\beta$ , oyle of Wormwood, q. s.

An Emplaster.

Rx of Centory the lesse, seeds of Lupines ana 3 i.  $\beta$ , *Nigella*, Aloes, Wormwood, ana 3 ii. Southernwood, Harts-horn burnt, ana 3 i. male Pimpernell, 3  $\beta$ , roots of Dittany, Wormseed, Calamint, Onigon, 3 iiij.  $\beta$ , Myrrhe, Aloes, the meal of Lupines, ana 3 i.  $\beta$ , juyce of Worm-wood, Rew, Oxes gall, ana 3  $\beta$ , oyle of Tiles, 3 i.  $\beta$ , Waxe and Turpentine q. s. this must be laid to the belly.

A Fomentation.

Rx roots of Dittany, Elecampagne, ana 3 ii. of Savine, 3 i.  $\beta$ , boyle these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed: this must also be used about the belly.

Rx Rhab.

R. *Rhab. turbitib. Hieræ picra Gal. ana* ʒ i. Ginger, Myrrh ana ʒ β, Saffron, *Salis gemma*, ana gr. vi. juyce of black Hellebore q. make hereof 8. pills.

R. *Diaturb. with Rhab.* ʒ vi. *Agarici trochiscati*, ʒ i. Triacle, ʒ β, of fine Sugar q. s.

R. *Diaturb. with Rhab.* ʒ iij. Aloes, Myrrh, *Agarici trochiscati*, ana ʒ i. *Salis gemma*, gr. v. Syrup of Succory with *Rhab.* ʒ i. water of Purflane, ʒ iij.

R. of Goats and Cowes milke, ʒ xij. of course Sugar, ʒ i. Hony, ʒ β, two yolkes of Eggs: this may be given when as it may be discerned that the Wormes are killed, for these bring them down, also kill, and expell them.

An appendix serving for the cure of the  
WORMES.

**F**irst of all the maligne and corrupt matter, whereby these Worms are generated, shall be made obedient unto nature. And then expelled with a purging medicine. *Agaricus trochiscatus*, *Diaturb. with Rhab.* and many other formerly recited, are good for this purpose. When it may be discerned by the signes, that Wormes are in the body, presently such medicines must be given as may kill them. But when medicines for this purpose are received in at the mouth, then also a Playster must be laid unto the belly; but before such medicines bee given that may kill the Wormes, the patient must drinke new Cowes milke for the space of 4. or 5. dayes, and the medicines prescribed for the killing of Wormes, may bee dissolved in Cowes milke, or else administred with Hony and Sugar. If children bee unwilling to receive bitter things, they must be forced thereto; either they may bee put into a sirenge, and by that meanes conveyed into their mouths, and bodie, or by a Clyster-pipe; afterward such shall bee administred as will expell them; Sowre, bitter, sharpe and salt things, not onely hinder the breeding of

Pills.

Bolus.

A draught.

A Clyster.



Wormes, but doth also kill and expell them, if they bee bred in the body. As for the small Wormes in the fundament, a Clyster of the decoction of *Pe sicaria*, Wormewood, *Hierapiera*, oyle of bitter Almonds may be given; or a suppository of the same, with Aloes sprinkled upon it; and it may be rowled in birdlime, because the Wormes will stick hereto; suppositories are best for the killing of the Wormes, called *Ascarides*. Here one thing must be observed, that although the Wormes are voyded at the mouth, or lower parts, yet wee must not presently seeke remedies for the expelling of the rest, because it doth often happen in sharpe diseases, when as plenty of rottennesse doth lye hid in the inward parts of the body; but first we must make that humor obedient unto nature: and rather endeavour to drive that out, than the wormes; otherwise there will be danger of increasing the disease, and killing the patient.

*A method serving for the knowledge of* **DYSENTERIA,**  
*or FLUX of the belly.*

**A** Dysentery so properly called, is a flux of the belly with exculceration, and excoriation, whereto great pain with gripings is joyned. Chiefly fat corpulent bodies are galled by sharpe humours, and sometimes the filmes of the inner tunicle of the bowels are voyded by stoole; this happens when the disease hath taken deepe roote in the guts, sometime blood is voyded, and it is a signe of some filthy ulcer, if great store of blood bee voyded without paine; if it doth stinke much, then the ulcer is putrefied; even as commendable matter is a signe of a cleane ulcer. Sometimes the blood is voyded without a flux, first, in regard of the weaknesse of the liver, and then the excrements doe resemble the water wherein raw flesh hath beene washed. Secondly, in regard of the obstruction of the higher vessels, and then that which is voyded downward, is cleer: and sometimes they are suppressed for the space of 3. or 4. dayes and there, worse excrements are voyded than the first, and after, thinne

thin bloody matter, sometime a grosse humour not much unlike wine- lees is voyded; sometime without any ulcer of the bowels or obstruction of the upper veines, or weaknesse of the liver, red and liquid blood is voyded in great plenty, and at certaine distances of times from the *Hemorrhoids*, opened within, or the monthly courtes suppressed.

*The parts affected.*

The inward parts are affected; and those things that are voyded, doe testifie as much; the excrements are thick, and some fat or bloody drops are mixed therewith, and sometimes foamy, which is voyded with wind; this blood for the most part as it were swims upon the excrements, if the ulcer be fastned on the inward bowels. But if the pain rest about the navill, or somewhat higher, and that a quantity of blood is mixed and drowned with the stool, and if it doth stink and be cholerick, and have divers colours, and if great gripings and paines are stirred up, and if it doth cause swoounding and sanities of the heart, the disease is in the smaller guts, and then fat matter is seldomer voyded: when as the gut called *Juenum intestinum* is affected, the pain is above the navil, and a great queasinesse of stomach, and propension to vomit ariseth, and oftentimes vomiting doth follow, also thirst and loathing of meat is sometimes caused; the excrements are raw, and blackish blood is mixed therewith. In this case a dangerous Feaver follows, in so much that the strength is almost dissolved, and the patient is well-nigh at deaths doore. This disease is a breach or solution of the continuity of the parts.

*Signes.*

In the beginning of this disease, for the most part slimy, biting, cholerick excrements of divers colours are voyded, wherewith at the last some quantity of blood is mixed: also there is a griping pain of the bowels, the excrements are liquid and expelled by little and little, and after this a small quantity of fat and flesh is voyded; and sometimes also parcels of the bowels inner tunics do appeare in the excrements, & before this excretion, the guts are very much wring, whereby a great desire



fire of going to the stoole, and paine in the fundament doth concurre, and hereby the patient is not onely hindred and molested in his sleep, but also hee is altogether deprived of naturall rest: they doe also thirst often, and are troubled with agues, especially if the ulcer bee in the upper bowels, and if the humour bee sharpe; at which time also blood is mixed with the excrements, rather than when the ulcer is in the thick bowels.

*The Cause.*

The flux is caused by sharpe humors, and such as are biting and very much putrefied, whether they be bred in the bowels, or else come from some other parts of the body, as from the greater veines of the liver, spleen, mesentery, and other adjoining parts, but especially if these humors doe stick in the winding of the guts. It is also caused by brinish, phlegmy, yellow choler, also by burnt and black choler, which are caused by continuall crudities of sharpe and naughty meats, evill fruits, venemous and excoiating medicines, and by extreme cold or heat. Sometimes a dysentery is caused by inflammation, but that will be knowne by the signes of an inflammation.

*Prognostiques.*

The failing and decay of the stomack, increase of thirst, continuall flux of the belly, are bad signes; also if the urine be not answerable to that which is drunke, and if black excrements bee voyded, the body being leane, if parcels of fat and flesh and pieces of the guts be voyded, as also if the patient bee weake, the flux is mortall, because the flesh cannot grow together, nor the ulcer be made hard. A loathing of meate, especially if the patient have an ague, is dangerous in long fluxes. Those fluxes are worst, when the excrements doe resemble the colour of a Leeke, and when they be blackish, and doe stinke very much, a dysentery comming upon such as are troubled with the tumour of the spleene, is good, for hereby melancholy humours which were in the spleene

are evacuated. A dysentery which in the small guts, is hardly cured, but it will be cured with more ease, if the dysentery be in the greater guts. If it be caused by black choler, the dysentery is hardly cured, because a canker doth come withall. These frettings are with great pain: if therefore they doe depend upon a deep and old ulcer, and if there be a great failing of strength, there is hope of life. Then the excrements doe stink very much, and are light, and of a blackish colour. If the dysentery be turned into a Lientery, there is great danger: a vehement collick sometimes follows the flux of the belly, because the thin matter is expelled, and the thick is left. All fluxes of the belly that doe cause a dropsie, are mortall, because the cure of the dropsie must be by the flux of the belly.

*A method serving for the cure of DYSENTERIA, or*

*FLUX of the belly.*

**T**He ayre must be temperate: the patients diet must be ease of digestion, and such that wil breed good blood, because the concoctive and retentive faculty are feeble. The flesh of Hens, Pullets, Capons, Partridges, Turtles. Black-birds, Pheasants, rosted Egges are good. Frumenty made with Rice, Starch, *Panicum*, grated Bread and Milke may be given the patient to eate, but first the seeds of Plantane and a little quantity of Cinnamon, must be added thereto. The aforesaid things may also be boiled in broth with flesh: binding, salt, and fowre nourishment must be avoyded, because of the ulcer that is in the bowels. He may drink red astringent wine, whereto *Saccharum rosatum* must be added: exercise and motion must be avoyded; and because watchings are hurtfull for the flux of the belly, the patient may be permitted to sleep at any time. All perturbations of the mind must be avoyded.

*Syr. of Violets, syr. Rosatum, of Endive, Succory, Quinces,*

R r

waters

*Preparers.*



Emptiers.

waters of Plantane, Buglōsse, Wormwood. When some evacuation hath been used in the beginning of the disease, then the matter may be digested, and made obedient unto nature, especially if there be no imminent danger, and if the excrements be not voyded in such plenty.

*Myrobal, Cirini, Kebuli, Tamarindi, Rhab. Agarick,* when the excrements are phlegmatick. *Diacath.* syr. of Roses, Violets. A Clyster: sharp, cholerick, and corrupt humors which runne to the part affected, shall be expelled by such medicines as do moderately loolen; and lest that we should bring flux upon flux by so doing, moderately astringents shall also be mixed with them, though they were not digested before: for by this meanes a passage for the malign humors is opened, that they that overflow may be evacuated, and the obstruction may be taken away: but this evacuation must often be reiterated, because new matter will presently supply the place of that which was voyded. At the first therefore there shall be no astringents used, for hereby great danger would ensue. For a Fever, inflammation, ulcers of the bowels, and convulsions are often stirred up; for the corrupt matter doth arise up to the upper part, when their evacuation is hindered. But it shall be better to fetch it forth with a Clyster, then with a potion, if the matter do stick in the thick bowels; and if the matter stick in the thin guts, a potion is better then a Clyster. Scammony, and all other sharp medicines must be avoyded, as *Elethuarium rosarum, Diaprunum solutivum.*

Averters.

At the first the shoulder-vein shall be opened, before there be an ulcer, if strength will permit it, and if the patient doe feel great pain, and if there be a great inflammation; or some usuall evacuation be stopped, because this doth draw back the course of the blood, and mitigates the sharpnesse thereof: This shall also be effected, if the patient be troubled with a sudden suppression of the belly, because it is to be feared, that these defiled excrements which were usuall voyded, should overwhelm some noble bowell. But

when

when there is no ulcer, a vein shal not be opened, for it doth not cure the ulcer, and yet it doth cast down the strength. A gentle vomit is good, as warm water, what things soever bring down the urine, frictions of the arms and shoulder-blades, painfull ligatures of the same parts; lotions of the feet and hands in astringent wine. A dry bath which may procure sleep; this may be made with bricks heat red hot, and wrapped up in clothes, but they must first be sprinkled with wine, and so layd upon the patients feet.

*Trochisci de terra sigillata*, with the juice of Shepherds-purse, *Trochisci de spodio Mesue*, with the seeds of Sorrell. *Electuarium diatrion sandal. Diarrhod. abbatin. syr. of Quinces*, dry Roses, Violets, Myrtle, Poppy, *Saccharum rosatum*, conserve of Roses, Quinces, water of Roses, Plantane, first Mastick must be boyled in this water, & then *Saccharum rosatum* must be added. *Alban 1st 2*, *Philonium Persicum* with the juice of Plantane; *Diacodium Aethuarii cum aqua Celesti*, wherein *Spodium* hath boyled. The juice of Rospis, Barberries, Medlers, Quinces, Hedge-floes, Harts-horne burnt and washed; and if there be any suspicion of virulent matter that doth lurke in the body, the *Coagulum* of a Kid, or of a Hare, the Liver of a Wolfe. Water and Milke mixed together are good; some dissolve white paper in Milke; and then beat it with fine Bean-flower, and thereto do adde fine Sugar, with a small quantity of Cinnamon, and then do make herof a hoch poch like frumenty. Rayns the stones being taken out, and then beaten with Hony, *Spodium* and Sugar, *Rhab.* also is in this disease excellent good, Pistaches, Cubebs, Liver-wort. A potion of the water wherein Sage, Sumach, flowers of Pomgranats, the Comphreys, the roots of Wal-wort, Roses, Plantane; also Mastick shall be boyled herein. A fomentation with the water wherein the roots of Plantane, Roses, the Sanders, Endive, *Spodium*. An oyntment of the Oyles of Roses, Quinces. An oyntment of the oyl of Quinces, *Carabe*, Mastick, powder of Roses, Bole Armony, *Corah*, *Sanguis draconis*. A Cataplasme of tosted bread,

Stagers of the  
Flux.

R r 2

Mastick



Mastick, oyle of Quinces, Roses, strong wine. *Emplastrum Diaphanum*. in a cold cause is good. When the greater part of the corrupt matter is evacuated; these astringent medicines shall be used; but by no meanes at the first: for this corrupt matter will then cause a Feaver, Plurisie, inflammation of the inner bowels, convulsion and other grievous accidents. For it is to be feared, that the matter being suppressed before its time, should get up into the upper parts. And therefore we will use such medicines that do bind in a mean, and so we may proceed unto stronger. Alwayes those things must be mingled with them that do strengthen the liver and stomack.

Cleansers and  
binders.

A potion of Barley-water, made in the forme of ptisan, whereto great and store of *Saccharum rosatum* shall be added. A Clyster of the decoction of Roses, Plantane, Lupines, Bole-armony, *Sanguinis draconis*, Gumme Arabick, Frankincense, Myrtle, *Polygonum*, Shepherds-purse, parched Barley, *Tulia*, *Litargirii*, *Troch. de Terra Lemnia*, water wherein steel hath been quenched. We will leave out Oyls, because they doe hinder the knitting together of the parts. Also a Clyster of the decoction of Barley, Sugar, yolkes of Eggs, or else red wine, Cream of Goats-milke, *Hydromel*, *Mel rosatum*, or of the decoction of Bran, Corn, red Ciches, the wood *Guaiacum*, Roses, Plantane, Lupines. If the ulcer be deep, the Clyster in the latter place shall be used, because it doth cleanse the sharp matter that doth exulcerate, and when the excrements that are voyded be clear, the Clyster in the first place shall be given. Clysters in this disease are best.

Correctors of  
accidents.

A Clyster of the decoction of Roses, Oyl of Roses, *Mucilago seminis psyllii*, is good; also sheeps milk, or coves Milk, wherein a hot stone hath been quenched, also Roses may be boyled; and yolks of Egges must be added, that it may stick the longer. *Atbanasia*, *Philenium Romanum*, Pills of Hounds-tonghes, syr. of Poppy, *Saccharum rosatum*, decoction of the seeds of Poppy, in Rose-water. A clyster of sheeps  
Milke,

Milke, Tragacanth. Goats-grease, Butter, Oyle of Roses, Pills of Hounds-tongue. The former of these do assuage the greatest pains; the latter doe procure sleep, and make the matter more unapt to flow out of the belly.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*  
**DYSENTERIA, or FLUX**  
*of the belly.*

R of cleansed Barley, M iiii. boyl them in water q. s. unto  $\text{f}\text{b}\text{j}$ . adde to the strayingning of red Sugar,  $\text{z}\text{j}$ .  $\text{z}$ . of the yolkes of Egges,  $\text{no}\text{ij}$ . this must be often given, that the inward parts may be cleansed from their sharp excrements.

*A Clyster.*

R of the decoction of Plantane, Roses, parched Barley,  $\text{f}\text{b}\text{j}$ . *Mellis rosacei*, of course Sugar, ana  $\text{z}\text{j}$ . oyle of Roses,  $\text{z}\text{j}$ .  $\beta$ . of the yolkes of Egges  $\text{no}\text{ij}$ . Give this a little before meat, this scowres and cleanseth the inward parts; also a Clyster may be made with the urine of children, and water of Honey, especially if there be an ulcer.

*Another.*

R of the decoction of Barley,  $\text{f}\text{b}\text{j}$ . *Mucilago psyllii*, extracted with Rose-water,  $\text{z}\text{ij}$ . Goats-grease,  $\text{z}\text{j}$ .  $\beta$ . *Mellis rosacei*,  $\text{z}\text{j}$ . *Philonii persici*,  $\text{z}\text{j}$ .  $\beta$ . oyl of Roses,  $\text{z}\text{j}$ . this doth mitigate the pain.

*Another.*

R roots and leaves of marsh-Mallows, Dill, ana M j.  $\beta$ . leaves of Mallows, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Roses, ana M j. seeds of Quinces,  $\text{z}\text{z}$ . Lin-seed, Fennegreek, ana  $\text{z}\text{j}$ . boyl these in water q. s. unto  $\text{f}\text{b}\text{j}$ .  $\beta$ . adde to the strayingning oyl of Roses,  $\text{z}\text{viii}$ . This doth mitigate the paine which is caused by the sharpenesse of the humors.

*Another.*

R leaves of Wormewood, Pellitory of the wall, Centaury the lesse, Bete, ana M  $\beta$ . red Roses, M j. seeds of Lupines, red Ciches, ana  $\text{z}\text{iiij}$ . of Branne, Barley, M j.  $\beta$ . boyle these

*Another.*



in whay to lb j. adde to the strayingning, *Mellis rosacei*,  
 ʒ iij.

Another.

Rk of huld Barley, Plantane, Shepheards-purse, *Polygonii*, ana M j. boyle these in water, q. s. unto lb j. adde to the strayingning of Bole Armonny, Frankincense, Mastick, *Sanguinis draconis*, ana ʒ j. juice of Plantane, ʒ j. Gumme Arabick, *Tragacanth*, ana ʒ iij. the yolke of one Egge. A small quantity hereof shall be injected, if we doe intend to bind and consolidate the bowels, and when we doe intend to cleanse them, a greater quantity shall be injected.

A Potion.

Rk *Rhab. electi*, ʒ i. ʒ, *Corticum Myrobal. citrinorum*, ʒ iij. macerate these a little in red Wine, roots of Plantane, ʒ i. Licorice, ʒ ʒ, boyl these in water q. s. unto ʒ x. adde to the strayingning *Mellis despumati*, ʒ ʒ. Give this at twice.

A draught.

Rk *Corticum myrobal. citrinorum*, ʒ iij. *Kebulorum*, ʒ ij. beat these well together: adde of Raylins, ʒ i. Spike, ʒ ʒ, boyl these in the water of Plantane, q. s. unto ʒ iij. strayne these forth very well: adde thereto *Rhab. electi*, ʒ ii. ʒ, a little Sugar.

Another.

Rk *Rhab.* ʒ iij. of Harts-horne burnt, and washed in Plantane-water, and Cinnamon-water, ana ʒ i. water of Endive, ʒ iij.

Another.

Rk *Rhab. myrobal. citrinorum*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, *Kebulorum*, ʒ i. Give ʒ i. hereof with ʒ ʒ, of the Syr. of Roses, water of Plantane, Shepheards-purse, ana ʒ i. ʒ.

A Potion.

Rk of red Roses, Mij. of Violets, M i. seed of Plantane, Quinces, ana ʒ iij. boyl these in water q. s. unto lb i. adde to the strayingning syrup of Quinces, ʒ iij. and if wee doe intend to consolidate the inward parts, of Frankincense, ʒ ii. must be added, of Bole Armony, ʒ i. *Terre sigillata*, ʒ i.

A Julap.

Rk Syr. of Myrtle, Roses, Quinces, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of red Wine, ʒ x.

A draught.

Rk Syr. of Quinces, dry Roses, ana ʒ ii. ʒ, of the former decoction ʒ iij. Give this at two severall times.

Rk Syrup

R<sup>x</sup> Syrup of Roses, *rob. Berberorum*, the juice of Quinces boyled, ana ʒ i. Bole Armony, *Terra sigillata, sanguinis draconis*, Harts-horne burnt, ana ʒ ʒ, conserve of old Roses, q. s. he may take hereof often.

A mixture.

R<sup>x</sup> of Harts-horne burnt, Bole Armony, *troch. de spodio, sanguinis draconis*, ana ʒ i. seeds of Plantane, ʒ ʒ, Gumme *Tragacanth.* ʒ j. red Corall, ʒ j. roots of Tormentil, ʒ ii. Myrthe ʒ i. ʒ, Give ʒ i. hereof with the water of Plantane.

A Powder.

R<sup>x</sup> seeds of Plantane, ʒ ii. Cinnamon, ʒ ii. bruise these, and give them in broth.

Another.

R<sup>x</sup> Conserve of old Roses, ʒ i. Harts-horne burnt and washed in Plantane-water, ʒ i. *Sp. Diatrion sandal. Troch. de caribe*, ana ʒ ʒ, juice of boyld Quinces, ʒ vi. Syrup of dry Roses, q. s. the decoction of Barley, with *Mel rosarum*, may be mixed with it, if it be time to cleanse the body of these humors.

A mixture.

R<sup>x</sup> water of Plantane, Succory, Roses, Sorrell, ana ʒ ii. *Sacchari rosati*, ʒ vi. *Sp. Diarrhedonis abbatin*, without Musk, *Diatrion sandal.* ana ʒ ʒ, Cloves, Mace, ana ʒ ʒ, *rob. de Berberis*, ʒ i. ʒ, of fine Sugar ʒ ii.

A Nectar.

R<sup>x</sup> *Diacydonites sine Sp.* ʒ ʒ, Gumme *Tragacanth.* ʒ ii. *troch. de spodio, de terra Lemnia*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, seeds of Sorrell, Plantane, Roses, ana ʒ i. flowers and rinds of Pomegranats, ana ʒ ii. of Harts-horn burnt, red Corall, *Amylum*, or starch, ana ʒ ii. ʒ, Syr. of Myrtle, Quinces, ana q. s.

An Electuary.

R<sup>x</sup> roots of wild Mallows, Longwort, ana ʒ ʒ, flowers of Roses, Camomile, ana M i. seeds of Myrtle, Pomegranates, Sumach, Plantane, ana ʒ ii. flowers and rinds of Pomegranats, ana ʒ i. ʒ, boyl these in red astringent Wine, this is for the belly.

A Fermentati-  
on.

R<sup>x</sup> oyle of Quinces, Roses, Myrtle, Dill, ana ʒ i. *trochiscorum de spodio*, ʒ i. ʒ, Bole Armony, seeds of Myrtle, ana ʒ i. Mastick, ʒ ʒ. a little Wax. This shall be used, when as the body is purged, for else it would force the virulent matter up into the body. The like may be said of all other astringent medicines.

An Unguent.

R<sup>x</sup> Em-



An Emplai-  
ster.

Rx *Emplastri diaphanici* ʒ i. red Roses, rinds of Pomegrats, *Sanguinis draconis*, ana ʒ i. seeds of Plantane, Myrtles, ana ʒ iiii. Bole Armony, Mattick, ana ʒ ii. oyle of Mastick, Myrtle, Roses, ana ʒ ʒ, of Waxe and Rayfins. q. s.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
FLUX of the belly.

**A**T the first the flux must not be hindered, but the inward parts must be cleansed by a Clyster, and it must often be used, and it may be guessed that the matter is grosse, clammy, or sharp, whereby an ulcer may be caused: such medicines shall be mixed with this Clyster, as will lessen the sharpnesse of the humours, and cleanse the body. Also such medicines must be added, that will mitigate the pain, if through too much use of absterging medicines, the patient be tormented. At the length clysters shall be given that are astringent, and doe hinder the flux, whereto such things may be added, as will consolidate, and strengthen the bowels: these Clysters must be kept longer than the other: purging medicines also shall be administred, that the corrupt matter may be voyded, and then the flux must be hindered, which may be effected by diverting medicines formerly mentioned. If the ulcer be in the upper bowels, potions are best, especially such as do assuage the pain, heat, and inflammation: Then such as cleanse the ulcer caused by a sharp matter; lastly, astringent, whereto strengtheners, and such as doe beget new flesh. If sharp humors be caused by a cold distemper of the liver, this distemper will be amended with the oyle of Roses, *Cerato sandalino*, and other medicines of the like kind.

A

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
COLLICK.

**T**He Collick is a continuall passion of the bowell which is called *Colon*, and there follows it a difficulty of voyding the excrements, and wind at the lower parts. A grievous pain, and sore prickings doe come by fits, because this bowell, is thick and sinewy, whereupon if any hurtfull thing creep into its tunicles, it is not presently driven out. This disease hath taken its name from the part affected, viz. of the bowell *Colon*, wherein winds are very often gathered, for this is the proper receptacle of them. This disease hath affinity with *Iliaca passio*, because they that are affected with either of these diseases, are wrung with vehement and sharp pain, their bellyes are bound, and they vomit often, but in the *Iliaca passio*, the paine is more vehement, because the thin gut wherein this disease doth lurk, is tenderer and hath a quicker sense of the pain, then the gut *Colon*, and the vomit is also more troublesome, because it comes oftner. The stomach is quite taken away, and sometimes a swooning followeth, sometimes doating comes withall, and oftentimes cold sweats. This pain also strikes upwards from the Navils region, and is more settled. But the pain of the Collick doth rather pinch the sides close by the stomachs, where the gut *Colon* doth passe.

*The part affected.*

The looser gut called *Colon*, is chiefly affected, but signes of the part affected will appear by that which follows, for they are mingled with the signes of the disease it self.

*Signes.*

A vehement paine, as though the patient were bored through with an anger, is stirred up in the inside of the bow-



all where *Colon* is seated, and for the most part it is unconstant, for sometime it doth pinch on the one side, then on the other, now it doth enter upon the region of the liver, anon the spleen is affected, sometime the stomach, then the reines: for the most part it doth pinch in the left groine or flank, because the *Colon* is there somewhat narrower; and hereby it is discerned from the paine of the kidneys, which comes oftener then the paine of the collick, also the kidneys paine is alwayes in one place, either in the right or left side of the reines. The Collick is eased by lenitive Clysters, and Fomentations, with much more speede then the paine of the reines can bee asswaged. In the paine of the reines, the urine is watry, and a small quantity is voyded, and sometime it is altogether suppressed, but at the length it is voyded in great abundance, which is sometime thick. The paines of the collick doe afflict the belly, unlesse it bee caused by thinne phlegme, for then it is stedfast; also the paines of the Collick doe chiefly molest the right side, and from thence is carried to the left; also it leaves some impression neere unto the reines and back: and it is more a certain token of the Collick, if the paine be felt in the places above the region of the kidneys: their bellies sometimes are so bound, that nothing is voyded: not so much as winde. In the paine of the reynes little sandy bodies, sometimes a stone, or bloody stuffe may be perceived when the urine is settled, and when the stone is voyded, they are freed immediately of their pain, but none of these are voided with the urine in the Collick, onely a thick and phlegmy choler is mixed with the urine. Sometime vomit, oftner a propension to vomit is caused in the Collick, and these be more troublesome and continuall, then in the pain of the kidneys. The appetite and concoction is weakened, and by reason of great paines the urine is gally, and scalding hot, and doth falsely represent a cholerick nature: and this happens, because choler is conveyed to the kidneys, by reason the passages of the bowels, through which the gall is usually voyded, are stopped that  
 nei-

neither belching nor wind can any way get out.

*The Causes.*

There be many causes of the collick, because a several matter runs to the guts by reason of their wideness. But there be foure chiefe causes of this disease; either first it is caused by inflammation of the same part; & then the pain is more settled and bitter, heat, thirst, an inclination to vomit, loathing of meat, and sometimes vomiting of choler doth insue: they are bound, and retaine their urine long; also there is an inward heat, and ague ready to molest them: or secondly, it is caused by a sharpe biting humor; and then the heat and thirst, also the Feaver is not so great as if it were caused by an inflammation; coolers do not a little ease the patient; the excrements that are voyded, are mixed with choler; and in the voiding of the urine a sharpe pain is felt: or else, thirdly, it is caused by slimy and grosse humors, and by thin phlegm that is in the filme of the *Colon*, and then the pain is more stedfast, and hardly to be cured, unlesse the matter be evacuated, and the inner gut is as it were bored through with an auger; they doe vomit phlegmy humors, and a propension to vomit oftner with belchings doth concur; the belly is so bound, that nothing can passe through it, and if the patient doth belch, very small ease doth ensue. Hot things doe ease the patient: and because that *Colera* is the receptacle of winds, the collick is often caused by them, when as great plenty of them is gathered together in those places. These are sometime inclosed in the *Colon*, or in the filmes thereof, by dregs too much hardened. Fourthly, it is caused by slimy and grosse phlegme, sticking in the common passages: and sometimes from a tumor remaining in the inner bowels, whereby the guts are so strongly pressed, that the wind can scarce get forth, and then extream pains are caused: the patient doth feele great gripings and rumblings in the belly, but when the stopping is so great, that the excrements can have no way forth, *Iliaca passio* is caused.



## Prognostiques.

The collick doth often turn into a resolution, or loosnesse of the sinewes, or into a joynt gowt, or into *Isaca passio*: Sometimes into a dropfy. Of all collicks that is the worst which is caused by an inflammation; the collick is lesse dangerous, if the excrements be voyded in due time, or a setled paine is not felt in one part of the *Colon*, for the most vehement paines of the collick are more dangerous than those lesse painefull, which proceeds from more gentle causes.

## A method serving for the cure of the

## COLLICK.

**T**He aire must be temperately hot, and inclining to drinesse, yet the native heat of the outward and former part of the belly must bee kept hot with warme cloaths. Their meat must bee easy of digestion, and such as doth generate very few superfluities, it must be moist, and not windy or stymy. Water-fowles are naught, but Pullets, Capons, Hens, Blids of mountaines, also Veale; the flesh of Kids may be given, and they must rather bee boyled than roasted. The fat broths of Pullets and Capons are good; because they are better conveyed through the passages of the bowels. Also with these broths, Thyme, Majoram, Origan, Hyssop, Fennill, Sparage, Savory and Parsley may bee boyled; and sometime Malmiey may bee put in these broths. At dinner the patient must eate sparingly, and at Supper more sparingly. Their drink may be strong wine, water and wine mixed with water, is prohibited, likewise a ptisan. Exercise is good before meat, and when they have filled their bellies, they must additt themselves to rest; and if necessity require, they may sleep longer than usually they did, and also in the day time they may sleepe. The excrements of the body must be answerable to nature, and all such things also as are astringent. Perturbations of the mind must be avoyded, yet it will be good for them to be somewhat vexed.

## The Physicians Practice.

313

*Mel. rosatum colatum*, Oxytel by it selfe doth rather more hurt than good, *syr. de duabus & quinq; radicibus*. Water of Fen-nil, Baulm, Wormwood. A decoction of the roots of Sparage, Elecampane, *Asarum*, Galingale, Wormseed, Piony, leaves of Mints, Majoram, Origan, Horehound, Thyme, Hyssop, flowers of Rosemary, Cammomill, seeds of Annise, Carroways, Dil, as also Figs; this decoction must be made with sweet wine. The matter of this disease for the most part is stubborn; therefore it shall be made subject unto nature, by cutting and concocting medicines: such syrups as have any Vineger in them, are unwholesome.

Preparers.

Clysters of the flowers of Cammomill, Mellilote, roots of *Alibaa*, Linseed, Annise, Dill, Centory the lesse, Calamint, Origan, Mallower, Figs, Bastard-Saffron, bruised. Agarick, *Colocyntib. Cassia*, Electuary of Bay-berrie, *Hiera piera*, *Logodii*, *Diacoleimib. Benedicta laxativa*, Oyles of Cammomill, Rue, Nuts, fresh Butter. Those that are to bee boyled, must be boyled in Flesh-broth, this Clyster may bee given often, even untill health bee restored. *Electuarium Elefcopi*, *Diaphenicum*, *Electuarium Indum*, *Hiera piera*, *Benedicta laxativa*, *Diurbitib.* with *Rhab.* *Pillule alexiphangine*, *Aggregativa*, *Fatide*, these must bee given before meate, *Trock.* *Albandal.* *Myrobal.* *Cassia*, and Sene, because they doe breed winds, may not be given. Turpentine. A good and long suppository. A vomit before meate; if hee did not vomit with ease in the beginning of the disease, it may be furthered with the decoction of Radish, *Asarum*, or with Oyle and Malmsey mixed together. A veine shall bee opened, if the disease be caused by an imposthume: from gentler purging medicines we may proceed to stronger; if the disease bee stubborn, and after wee have used cutting and cleansing medicines.

Emptiers.

The opening of a veine hath often proved effectual, if the paine be vehement. Also Cupping-glasses shall bee fastned to the navell, and part affected. Clysters, Suppositors, frictions of the Armes, and Shoulder-blades. The broth of Capons

Averters.



and Hens, with a little Saffron. Harts-horne burnt; a decoction of Camomill-flowers, roots of *Althea* in Wine, or Cammomill-water. A Clyster of fat broths, Oyle of Linseed, Cammomill, or else a Clyster may bee made of the decoction of the flowers of Cammomill, Mellilote; or else it may bee made with the Oyles of Rue, Bayes, *Hiera picra*, strong Wine. Or else onely with Oyle, and strong Wine. Or else with the Oyle of Rue, and the Electuary of Bay-berries; a bath of the decoction of the flowers of Cammomill, Mellilot, leaves of Bayes. Rue, Oyle of sweet Almonds, with Hypocras may bee drunke; a great bladder halfe filled with the Oyle of Camomill, of Linseed, Dill, or common Oyle, also must bee applied to the region of the belly; a small quantity of thread boyld in lee and ashes must bee laid hot to the belly. A quilt of *Milum* and salt-fryed, Flowers of Cammomill, seedes of Fengreeke, leaves of Mallowes, Fennill, *Althea*. An oyntment of the Oyle of Cammomill, Lillies, Linseed, Parsly, Dill, Rue, Beaver-stone, Malmsey, or else a small quantity of *Aqua vite*. An Unguent onely of the Oyles of Rue and Bayes, new Triacle *Albanasta Nicolai*, *Philonium Romanum*, *Andromachi*, with the decoction of Cammomill, and Rue. *Opium* may be mingled with Beaver-stone, Pills of Hounds-tongue; a Clyster of fat Broths, wherewith a potion of the aforesaid benumbing medicines shall be mixed: a potion with *Diaphenic*. *Hiera Gal. Electua. eleycopi*, *Philonis Romani*: some of these doe assuage paine, either because they take away the cause, or else because they doe amend the distemper, or because they doe dull the part affected. For stupefying medicines are good in a hot matter; but hurtfull in a cold cause; for hereby the cold humours would bee made colder, whereby windes would increafe, and the humours waxe grosser, and bee harder to bee expelled, and by this means the obstructions bee increased. Yet sometimes necessity doth force us to use these, when no other will prevaile. Clysters are better than potions for the asswaging of the paine; Sometimes 3 i.

of

of stupefying medicines are to be mixed with a purge, if the patient must receive it at the mouth: for hereby the patient will be eased; also it is a safe and good Method for the cure of this Disease; for hereby the cause is taken away, and the pain is mitigated.

The great conserve of our description is an excellent medicine in this case, *Mithridate*, *Triacle*, *Diacuminum*, *Diatrum pipereon*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Disgalanga*, conserve of *Roses*. The Electuary of *Bay-berries*, *Dianthuscum*. Wine wherein *Wormwood* hath been steeped, and ʒ i. of *Cummin* must bee infused in it, after that, the straying must be drunk. Or else the leaves of *Cummin* dried may be infused in the Wine. *Beaver-stone* if it be drunk with Honyed water, is good. Also *Harts-horn-stones* of *Medlers*, *Worms*, the intrals and dung of a *Wolfe*, a great Cupping-glasse shall bee applyed to the part affected. An oyntment of the Oyle of *Rew*, *Dill*, *Camomile*, *Parlsy*, *Bayes*, *Beaver-stone*, *Lillies*, seeds of *Annise*, *Cummin*, *Fennill*, *Galbanum sagapenum*, *Beaver-stone*. A drinke with the flowers of *Camomile*, *Mellilot*, leaves of *Rew*, *Calamint*, *Origan*, *Bayes*, *Rosemary*.

*Strengibners.*

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the COLICK.

Rx roots of *Lillies*, ʒ i. ʒ, *Angelica*, ʒ i. flowers of *Camomile*, *Mellilot*, ana Mi. ʒ, leaves of *Calamint*, *Wormwood*, *Rew*, *Centory* the lesse, *Sothernwood*, ana Mi. seeds of *Linus*, *Fengreek*, ana ʒ ʒ. *Nigelle*, *Cummin*, *Annise*, ana ʒ iij. boyle these in fat broth q. s. unto ʒ i. ʒ, adde to the straying *Benedita laxativa*, *Electuarii elefcopi*, ana ʒ iij. Oyle of *Rew*, *Camomile*, anr ʒ i. of fresh *Butter*, ʒ ij. Electuary of *Bayberries*, ʒ iij. of *Sals*, ʒ i. one yolke of an *Egge*.

*A Clyster.*

Rx fyr,



*Another.*

R<sup>x</sup> syr. de quinq; radicibus, ʒ iij. Osmellis compositi, ʒ i. ʒ, the decoction of Hore-hound, Calamint, Cammomile, ʒ vi. broth of Pullets, ʒ iij. and if the disease bee not too violent, administer this at three times.

*Bolus.*

R<sup>x</sup> Electuarii electropi ʒ iij. ʒ. Benedicte laxative, ʒ iij. ʒ. Diaphen. ʒ ij. of fine Sugar q. s.

*A Potions.*

R<sup>x</sup> roots of Fennil, Parsly, ana ʒ i. seeds of Annise, Rew, Cummin, Fennill, ana ʒ iij. Polipodii quercini, white and light Agarrick, ana ʒ iij. seeds of Carrowaies, Dancus, Amis, ana ʒ vi. boyl these in water q. s. unto lb i. ʒ, add to the straying, Benedicte laxative, Electuarii electropi, ana ʒ iij. drink hereof morning and evening.

*Pills.*

R<sup>x</sup> Hieræ diacoloc. ʒ ij. Rhab. ʒ i. Diagridii gr. iij. syr. of Wormwood q. s.

*Bolus.*

R<sup>x</sup> Pillul. sine quibus esse nolo, sordidarum, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Beaver-stone gr. xij. Troch. albandal. gr. iij. This doth take away the cause of the disease, and mitigate the paine.

*Pills.*

R<sup>x</sup> Hieræ Gal. ʒ i. Opii, gr. i. Saffron, gr. iij. syr. de quinq; radicibus q. s. make hereof Pills, which may be given in the extremity of paine.

*A draught.*

R<sup>x</sup> Philonii Romani, ʒ i. Diagalange, ʒ i. ʒ, Electuarii electropi, ʒ iij. ʒ, drink this with strong Wine.

*Another.*

R<sup>x</sup> the Electuary of Bay-berries, ʒ i. Discumini, ʒ ʒ, of wine, ʒ iij. Give this lukewarm.

*A Clyster.*

R<sup>x</sup> Oyl of Rew, ʒ viij. Camomile, Lillies, ana ʒ i. Gummi serapini, Oppopanacis, Beaver-stone, ana ʒ i. Electuary of Bay-berries, ʒ ʒ, Opii, gr. ij. of strong wine q. s.

*Another.*

R<sup>x</sup> of common oyle, ʒ x. Oyle of Lillies, ʒ iij. of fresh Butter, ʒ iij. this is good, if the disease be caused by drynesse, and retaining of the dregs.

*A Vomit.*

R<sup>x</sup> seeds of Dill, ʒ i. ʒ, roots of Radish, ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. untill half be consumed: add to the ʒ v. of the straying ʒ i. ʒ, of the Oyle of white Lillies: this must be drunke lukewarm.

R<sup>x</sup> Sp.

Rx *Sp. Diacumini dimisi*, ana 3 iiii. Electuary of Bayberries, *Diagalange*, ana 3 i. β. Give 3 i. hereof with Hypocras, and when it mult be used 3 i, of old Triacle shall be mixed with it.

A draught.

Rx Electuary of Bay-berries, *Philonii Romani*, ana 3 ii. *Diagalange*, 3 ii. *Electuarii elefcopi*, 3 iiii, β. 3 i give this when you use it with a draught of strong wine.

Another.

Rx roots of *Althea*, 3 i. leaves of Mallowes M ii. β, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i. β, Linseed, Cummin, Fennel, Parsly, ana 3 β, *Nigella*, 3 iiii. β, boyl these untill the third part be consumed, this mult be applied to the belly.

A Fomentation.

Rx flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Penayroyall, Origan, *Mentastum*, ana M i. seeds of Fennell, Annise, Amis, Dill, ana 3 i. boyl these in water q. s. untill the third part be consumed. But the following quilt is better than the bath.

A Baib.

Rx flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot, ana M i. Pennyroyall, Branne of panicle, ana M ii. *Nigella Romana*, 3 iiii. seeds of Annite, Cummin, Fennell, ana 3 ii. β, of Salt, 3 v. heate these in a vessell, without water (the flowers excepted) these must all be put in a bag, and be moystned with hot wine; and it mult be laid to the belly.

A Quilt.

Rx *Unguenti dialthea*, oyl of Camomile, ana 3 vi. oyle of sweet Almonds, Dill, Lillies, ana 3 iiii. oyle of Spike, 3 β, fresh butter, Capons greafe, Mans fat, ana 3 v. if this disease be caused by drinesse, and retaining of the excrements.

An Oyntment

Rx oyle of white Lillies, 3 i. β, Beaver-stone, 3 i. *Olei petrolei*, Rew, ana 3 β, roots of Galingale, 3 i. *Gulbani*, 3 iiii. of Wax q. f.

Another.

Rx Emplaysters of Bayberries, 3 ii. β, oyl of Lillies, Rew, ana q. f.

An Emplaster.

Rx Emplayster of Bayberries, 3 ii. *Unguenti Agrippa*, 3 i. oyle of Lillies q. f.

Another.



An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
COLLICK.

**I**F the pain be immoderate, first that shall be asswaged, & the cause by degrees shall after be taken away, the pain shall be eased by lenitive medicines, and if these wil not prevaile, stupefying medicines must be then used: these may be used also at the first, for in delay there is danger: and yet they must not be used, except the case be desperate, for if the cause be first taken away, the pain will bee mitigated. This disease for the most part is caused by windes and phlegmy matter, and then the pain will also be mitigated, if the cause be taken away, ( which is the matter that doth cause the Collick ) by a gentle Clyster, and this is better than that which is taken in at the mouth: but in the *Iliaca passio*, medicines given at the mouth are best. Yet because the Collick and *Iliaca passio* have one, and the same cause, one and the same way of curing shall be used; onely herein they doe somewhat differ, because *Iliaca passio*, is caused by an obstruction in the thin bowels: the Collick is caused by obstructions in the thick and lower bowels: Wherefore at the first a purging medicine is good, and within one hour after, a Clyster will be good. Amongst all medicines that are used, discussors of the winde, and asswagers of the pain shall be mixed, and then such medicines shall be prescribed that doe strengthen the bowels, and amend the distemper. For this purpose a Clyster made of Hypocras is best. If part of the matter be voided by Clysters from the inward parts, and if the residue doe fall from some other parts into the belly, then the whole body shall be purged; when as preparing medicines have been duly used. In strong obstructions ʒv. of common oyl with the broth of Chickens, wherein the flowers of Camomile have been boyled, may be taken; and then for the space of four  
hours

hours nothing else shall be admitted. The patient must not drinke water. And also strong purging medicines must be avoyded, especially in the beginning of the disease; lest the matter that is at a stand, should fall down into the belly, & so the disease become worse then it was. Beaverstone often drunk, is a very good remedy against this disease.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*

**DROPSY.**

**T**He Dropsy is such a passion, that it is not without plenty of watery humors, because the blood-making faculty is vitiated; it is a long disease, and for the most part caused by coldnes of the liver. There bee three kinds of Dropsy, *Anasarca*, *Ascites*, *Tympanites*, which are distinguished both by their matter and place. *Anasarca* is a dispersing of phlegmy humors over the whole body. In this disease, the whole body increaseth most unnaturally, for it is all over swelled, and a humor mixed with phlegmy blood is spread over all the body, between the skin and the flesh, & the body doth suck it up, even as a sponge sucks up water: and by reason of this, an ill colour possesseth the whole body. *Ascites* is that, when great store of winds, but greater of water, is gathered together in that place, which doth lie between the guts and *Syphach*. In this disease first the belly and *Abdomen* by little and little, then the thighs are swelled, and all the other parts of the body waxe leane. But when there is greater store of wind then water, whereby the *Abdomen* is stretched beyond measure, then it is called *Tympanites*, and then rather a noyse of wind then water, is perceived; if the belly be strooke, for there is the sound of a Taber, from whence this disease hath taken its name. Also the naturall colour of the face is not altered. Such a sound as this, is not heard in *Ascites*, but when



the patient doth turne himselfe from the one side unto the other, his belly waves and swags as a bladder that is halfe filled.

*The part affected.*

The liver for the most part is affected: for hereby the blood is generated, and from this the Dropsie is caused. The Dropsie is caused by the primary affect of the Liver, and then a small Cough comes withall, because the hugeness of the Liver causeth obstruction about the lungs: also the excrements are not very liquid; sometime the disease is caused by consent of the mesentery, spleen, stomach, mesentericall veins, and *Jejunum intestinum*. Whereof a weaknesse of such veins doth follow, as did convey food to the liver, and then excrements are heaped together in the lower parts, untill they be corrupted, and so surcharge the body, and afflict the patient with a lax.

*Signes.*

The common signs of a Dropsie are these. They are for the most part troubled with a Feaver, and doe thirst very much, especially if they be troubled with *Ascites*: and because of Salt and putrefied humors, they loath meat, the colour of their face is whitish, hardnesse of breathing, and heavinesse of the body concurs, also swelling of the feet, because of the far distance from the heart. In *Anasarca*, the whole body is weakned, and doth faint and swell equally, yet for the most part the swelling is in the shinnes and feet, so that the prints of ones finger being thrust into the flesh, will remain a long time. The belly is not here puffed up as in *Ascites*, yet being touched, it is felt to be thicker, and their flesh like unto those that are dead, is stiffe, loose, and pale: a lingring Feaver concures, their urines are thin and white, especially after meat, they alwaies draw breath with great difficulty, but in the *Ascites*, the belly is more swelled and the other parts of the body doe wither away; they do also breath with difficulty, because the *Diaphragma* is oppressed and kept down by the tumour. And as the dis-

ease

ease doth increase, so the cods, thighs, and feet do by little and little swell: if the patient do stirre himself from one side unto the other, the belly wames and swags, and this is caused by watry humors which remaine in the *Abdomen*: and no marvaile, for the inward parts do as it were swim in water. Also in the beginning of the disease, they do void much by urine, & by little and little they do voyd lesse, and do wax more red, and grosse. The patient also is very thirsty, and also an Ague seizeth on him in *Tympanites*, the face swerves not so much from its naturall colour, and a noyse, like unto the sound of a taber, is heard, if the belly be somewhat beaten upon. Here the swelling is not so great, nor so troublesome as in *Ascites*: from hence it is, that the guts rumble, and many signes of windines concur.

*The Causes.*

A great cooling of the veins and Liver, is the cause of this most long and sore disease, whereof a great abundance of humors are generated. This happens to the liver, either by it selfe, or else by the coldnesse of the Spleen, guts, mesentery, kidneys, midriffe, which sometime because of their obstruction, sometimes because of their weaknes, draw not unto them too much blood; also it is caused by too much bleeding at the nose, or by immoderate running or staying of the monthly courses, or hemroids: for so the naturall heat is choaked by the losse of spirits with the blood. Sometime this disease is caused by the flux of the belly or stomach, if they do last long: for the natural spirits, and native heat are scattered. Also they who are sick of a Jaundise, or the joynt gowt, as of the feet or hips, often fall into a Dropsie. Also they who are spent with long Agues, whereby naturall heat and spirits are scattered: as also failing of the Liver, too much drinking of cold water after heat or exercise of the body, is cause of it. In conclusion, whatsoever doth breake the force of the Liver, so that it cannot turn the juice into blood, doth also cause a Feaver, but *Ascites* doth arise not onely of too much cooling,



or crudity of the parts, as *Anasarca* doth, but is often caused by the solution or fretting in two of some bowell, or vessell, wherein the humors are contained. And for that reason, all things that doe dry the Liver, as burning Feavers, too much use of strong Wines, and hot nutriments doe often cause a Dropsie: because the bowels, but ofner the Liver by too much drynesse, wither away; whereby the humors doe slide thorow some chinks in the bowels, caused by drynesse in the *Abdomen*, by sweating out, and dropping. Oftentimes it is caused by a hard tumor of the liver, Spleen, or other parts, for so the bowels are cleft by too much drynesse, and want of moisture, whereby in time the films, going round about them, do break, and so by little and little, watrish and wheyish excrements fall down into the *Abdomen*.

*Prognostiques.*

If Ulcers arise in the body by water that is between the flesh, because of the great plenty of humors is hardly to be cared. They who are suppurated, or have a Dropsie, when they be cut or burnt, if that water or matter doth run out, they dye presently. Also if a Cough doe seize on them that have a Dropsie, or if the disease doth come again after the patients are cut, they are in a desperate case.

Of all these Dropsies, *Tympanites* is the worst, next unto that, *Ascites*, but *Anasarca* is easier then all the rest to be cured. For it is a sign that nature is not quite decayed, when that which is hurtfull, is spread over the whole body. All ancient Dropsies, and such as have corrupted the habits of the body, are very dangerous, and not very easily cured. If the Dropsy be caused by a hard tumour of the Liver or Spleen, the disease is incurable. They that are in a consumption, for the most part fall into a Dropsy, because this evil is communicated unto the Liver: for matter, and venomous filth, having found a way into the Liver, get in and stick fast therein, and so do corrupt the substance of the Liver.

A method serving for the cure of the  
DROPSY.

**T**He ayre must be cleer, and it must somewhat incline unto heat and drynesse, moyst and windy ayre do increase the disease. They may eat the flesh of Hares, Connies. Pheasants, Partridges, Chickens, Hens, Larkes, reare Eggs, Henlivers are accounted good against this disease. At supper rost meat is better than sod. Beef is not good, because it is hard of concoction; also fresh broth may not be given unto them, unlesse they doe take purges. Their cates may be seasoned with Cinnamon and Cloves: and even as fishes are torbidden, in like manner white meats, and Pulse is disallowed. They may drink thin wine, but not sweet, because this will not quench thirst. And they must also abstain from drinking of water: and as it is good for this disease to indure hunger, so to thirst long is very dangerous. Moderate exercise before meat is good, riding, sayling, walking, frictions, and dry baths are good. They may sleep in the night, but not much. The excrements must be answerable to nature: they must also abstain from Venery: and even as fear and sadnesse do hurt very much, because they do hinder digestion, so anger and care are very good.

Syr. of Agrimony, Worm-wood, Endive juice, Succory: *Acetosus simp.* *Oxymel simp.* water of Dodder, Worm-wood, Hore-hound, roots of Radish, Sparage, Fennel, Parsly, Dane-wort, Dodder, *Alkekengi*. A decoction of Worm-wood, Hore-hound, Agrimony, Dodder, Sparage, Roots of grasse, Fennell, Smallage, *Asarum*, seeds of Annise, Fennell, red Ciches, Licorice. This decoction must be made in white wine. *Syr. Byzantium*, Endive, Pomgranats, *Oxyfaccarum*. The waters of Mayden-haire, Endive, Hops, Worm-wood, Hore-hound, Fennell. Because a hardnes of the liver doth concur, therefore such medicines as do bring down the urine, and open the body are very good.

*Diatribik*

*Preparers.*



Purgers or  
cleansers.

*Diarrhœa* with *Rhab.* *Hiera diacoloc.* *Hiera logedii*, *Electuarium Indum.* Pills of *Euphorbium*, *Mezerum*, *Rhab.* *Agrimony*, juice of flower-de-luce, of *Agarick*, *Sagapenum*. A decoction of the roots of *Elder*, *Dane-wort* in wine. *Sagapenum* made into Pills; it is as good as *Sea-colewort*. The juice of wild *Cowcubers* dried, or *Elaterium*. The juice of *Sea colewort*, or *Soldanella*. The juice of the roots of wild *Flower-de-luce*, or else the decoction hereof is very good. Also small stickes of this root must be macerated in white wine for the space of 12. houres, and then strayn it: that which is strayned out, must be drunk: this is very good against this disease, if it will admit of any cure. *Rhab.* doth strengthen the liver, *Agarick* and *Sene* doe as much. The *Electuary* of *Alesue*, made of *Thymelæa*, expels great quantity of water out of the body. But it is very troublesome, and hurtfull unto the liver: the distilled water of the barks of *Elder*, flowers of flower-de-luce. Some graines of *Alkabengi*, leaves of *Fumitory*, *Dodder*, *Wormewood*, seeds of *Annise* and *Fennell* must be infused in the Whay of *Goats-Milke*. A vomit herein is also very good. A veine shall not bee opened, although the urine bee red, because it doth increase the distemper; yet in this case it may be lawfull, if there be danger of the suppression of the monthly courtes, or hemroids, because else the blood would run unto the Liver; and by reason of the same corrupt quality, or else because of the great abundance, would oppresse the native heat thereof. Clysters in this disease are very good, and they shall be made of some of those medicines formerly recited; but in the Dropsy called *Ascites*, use the juice of flower-de-luce, an unguent of *Swine-bread*; if these will not prevaile; (if the patient be young and strong) an incision shall bee made foure fingers breadth above the navell, but then there must bee no tumour, or *Schirrus* of the Spleen, or Liver, or ulcer of the Lungs. The incision knife must bee drawn to the right or left side: for it skills not much which side is launced; the outward skin

skinne shall bee drawn downward, for so the mouth of the wound will bee better closed, and the outward skinne returne to its naturall place. But here care ought to bee had that too much water runne not out at one time; but a certaine quantity may twice or thrice in one day bee drawn out by a pipe; therefore it is good to take time enough for the drawing out of the water. In stead of incision we may use a potentiall cautery, and after that an actual, so a hole will with more ease be made: also vesicatories, and scarifications of the Cods, and illnes in the Legs may bee here admitted: no greatevacuations must be made, lest that the strength of the Liver be overthrown, but empty it a little at one time, and often, and at certaine distances of time, these following strengthners of the stomach and Liver may bee given.

*Trochisci de Rhab. Diacureuma, Dialacca, Diarrhod, Ab-*  
*batis, Diarion sandal.* old Triacle, syrup of Wormewood,  
Agrimony, Mayden-haire, Hore-hound, the juyce of  
Agrimony, Dodder, Wormwood, the waters of Agrimo-  
ny, Dodder, Hore-hound, Wormewood: the decoction of  
*Gusiacum*, roots of *Cyna*, *Sarsaparilla*. *Rhab.* Dodder.  
Agrimony. A fomentation must bee made for the belly of  
the decoction of the flowers of Cammomile, Mellilote,  
leaves of Bayes, Origan, Rosemary, Sage, Calamint, Ma-  
joram, Dill, Penny-royall; with Branne and Allome. Part  
of these must bee boyled in lye, the rest in white Wine. And  
that it may not suddenly wax cold, hot stones shall be put  
under the vessell when it is taken from the fire. A Quilt of  
branne, salt, sand, leaves and berries of Bayes, seeds of Annise:  
this must be laid to the belly. Baths both naturall, and ar-  
tificiall, with the water of the decoction of flower-de-  
luce, Briony, Hyssop, Majoram, Penny-royall, Calamint,  
Rosemary. Fennill, Rue, Cammomile, Dill, Bay-berries,  
Juniper, Bran, salt. This hath a resolving force. Vesicatories  
must bee made in divers places of the belly with leaven,  
*Cantharides*, strong Vineger: let them lye on for the space

Strengthners.



of ten houres, and when the blisters be raised, they must be opened, and kept open for the space of 40. dayes. The leaves of Colewort must bee put upon them, and anoynted with Butter, or Oyle, also a little bit of Waxe must be put into the blyster to keepe it open. The Thigh and outward skin of the codd shall be scarified, and little wounds shall be made therein; also an issue shall be made in the Legge two fingers breadth above the Ankle. *Unguentum Agrippe*, whereunto Oyle of Lillies, and Dill shall be added. Emplaysters with Baberries, the roots of Cyperus, Goates, or Cowes dry dung being hereto added.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of*

*the DROPSY.*

*A Clyster.*

Rx roots of *Cyclamen*, Danwort, *Asarum* ana  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , leaves of Mercury, Sea Colewort, Agrimony, Wormwood, Penny royall, ana M i. seeds of Carrowayes, Parsly, Broom, Annise, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij. *Polypodii quercini*, *sene Alex.* ana  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , flowers of Broome, M i. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb i.}$  adde to the strayingning, *Diatribish* with *Rhab.*  $\frac{3}{4}$  v. *Benedicte laxative*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij. oyle of Rew, Flower-de-luce, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Salt,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.

*A Julep.*

Rx syr. *de quinq; radicibus*, of Agrimony, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. Endive *Acetosin comp.* ana  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , water of Dodder, Succory, Radish, Claret-wine, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij.

*A Potion.*

Rx roots of Danewort, *Rubia tinctorum*, *Asari*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. Fennill, Smallage, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\beta$ , Dodder, Agrimony, Endive, Betony, *Scolopendria*, Wormwood, ana M i. seeds of bastard Saffron bruised  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. *sene Alex.*  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Polipodii quercini*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  v. of white and light Agarick,  $\frac{3}{4}$  ij.  $\beta$ , seeds of Fennill, Mellons, *Daucus*, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. flowers of Broome M  $\beta$ , Ginger, Cinnamon, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  i. Licorice,  $\frac{3}{4}$  v. Rayns the stones being taken out  $\frac{3}{4}$  ij. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lb i.}$   $\beta$ , adde to the strayingning syrup *Byzantini*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij. *Aceti squillis*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  ij. of the finest Sugar,  $\frac{3}{4}$  i.  
Rx *Dia-*

# The Physicians Practice.

327

R *Diacath.* ʒ iij. *Disturbib.* with *Rbab.* ʒ β, *Agarici trochiscati*,  
 ʒ β, water of Agrimony ʒ iij.

A draught.

R *Pills of Rbab.* ʒ ij. *Agregativarum* ʒ i. β, *Elaterii*, gr.  
 iij. juyce of the roots of flower-de-luce q. f. make hereof 8.  
 Pills.

Pills.

R *Hiera diacolec.* ʒ i. *Pillul. de Rbab.* ʒ β, *Oxymellin com-*  
*positi*, q. f.

Pills.

R *Pillul. de euphorbio*, ʒ ij. β, *de Rbab.* ʒ i. syr. of Agrimony,  
 ʒ i. water of Agrimony ʒ iij.

A draught.

R *Dialacca, Diacircume,* ana ʒ iij. Nutmeg, seeds of smallage,  
 ana ʒ ij. Licorice, ʒ i. syrup of Wormwood, Agrimony, ana  
 q. f.

An electuary.

R *Sp. Diarrhod. abbatis*, Trochisks of Agrimony, ana ʒ ij.  
 juyce of the roots of Flower-de-luce, ʒ vi. water of Honey  
 ʒ iij.

A draught.

R *Rbab. electi*, ʒ ij. Mastic, Spike, Roses, *Lacca*, ana ʒ i.  
 leaves of dryed Bayes, and infused in Vineger, ʒ i. of white  
 and light Agarick, *Turbith*, ana ʒ β, of Euphorbium wel brui-  
 fed, gr. vi. dryed Wormes, ʒ i. beat all these into a smal powder,  
 then adde *Elaterii*, ʒ β, juyce of the roots of Flower-de-luce,  
 ʒ i. β, of fine Sugar dissolved in Endive, and Succory-wa-  
 ter, q. f.

Lozenges.

R *Diarrhod. abbatis* without Muske, *Dialacca*, con-  
 serve of Roses, *Troch. de Rbab.* ana ʒ β, of fine Sugar dissol-  
 ved in the water of Endive, Succory, and Agrimony, ana  
 q. f.

Lozenges.

R *Troch. alkekengi*, ʒ i. the flesh of a hedge-hog dried in  
 the Sunne, ʒ ij. β, roots of *Asarum* ʒ β, *Oxymellin squillitici*,  
 ʒ i. the decoction of the roots of Radishes, Danewort, Lico-  
 rice, ʒ iij.

A Potion to  
 provoke urine

A Vomit in the beginning of the disease is good, but  
 it is bad, when the disease hath beene long upon the pa-  
 tient.

R *roots of Asarum, aristolechie rot.* ana ʒ i. β, Rew, Lupines,  
 Parsley, Cummin, ana ʒ ij. red Ciches, ʒ i. juyce of Swines-  
 bread, Sea-Colewort, ana ʒ β, Bayes, *Thymelea*, ana ʒ iij.

A Liniment



oyle of Scorpions,  $\text{℥ i.}$  of waxe q. s. this may be used about the region of the reines and navill.

*An Ointment*

Rx *Unguenti Agrippæ*,  $\text{℥ i.}$   $\beta$ , *Arianite*,  $\text{℥ i.}$ , *Martiat*, oyle of Nard, Scorpions, ana  $\text{℥ } \beta$ , juyce of Rew,  $\text{℥ iij.}$  *Aqua vite*  $\text{℥ } \beta$ , some drops of vineger.

*A Cataplasim.*

Rx roots of Danewort,  $\text{℥ i.}$   $\beta$ , Bryony, Flower-de-luce,  $\text{℥ i.}$  Bayberries,  $\text{℥ vi.}$  flowers of Cammomile,  $\text{M ij.}$  seeds of Annise,  $\text{℥ i.}$  boyle these in water and wine q. s. untill they be soft, then well beaten together; adde the flower of Lupines, Cummin, ana  $\text{℥ i.}$   $\beta$ , of Brimstone,  $\text{℥ i.}$  Goats or Cowes dung,  $\text{℥ viij.}$  of Hony q. s. this is for the belly.

*Another.*

Rx Emplayster of Bayberries,  $\text{℥ i.}$   $\beta$ , *Unguenti Agrippæ*, roots of Danewort, ana  $\text{℥ } \beta$ , Pigeons and Cowes dung, ana,  $\text{℥ ij.}$  natural Brimstone,  $\text{℥ iij.}$   $\beta$ . infants urine and Hony q. s. this must also be applyed to the same place.

*An appendix serving for the cure of the DROPSY*  
*called in Latine, ASCITES.*

**F**irst, the humours shall bee well concocted, at the length such things shall bee prescribed that doe take away the water out of the body; to these such things shall be added, as doe comfort the liver, and amend the distemper, and this may be effected both by inward and outward medicines: the accidents also that doe follow this disease must bee amended, viz. thirst, swelling of the parts of the body, the stopping of urina, and many other accidents formerly recited. Cataplasmes and Unguents, must bee applyed to the belly with great care, for they must not touch the region of the liver. For the swelled legges, a bath may bee made with lee made with the ashes of Cabbages, Fig-trees, Vines, Alome, salt, and the root of Daffodill. And then cataplasms, may

may bee made with Cowes and Goats-dung, figs and wine. In the tympany those things shall be prescribed that doe dis-  
casse the wind. And for this purpose employsters that heate  
and dry, are very good. *Anasarea* will be cured by purging  
medicines, and such as doe provoke vomiting: after that  
baths, and dry stuphes, and such as cause sweat are good, if  
the strength will permit, or if the disease bee caused by the  
suppression of the monthly tearmes or hemroids, a veine  
shall bee opened, but in *Tympanite*, and *Ascite*, a vein shall not  
bee opened although the urine be very red, for hereby the  
cold distemper of the liver would bee increased. Yet in the  
latter of these two, rather then the monethly termes and  
hemroids shall bee suppressed, a veine shall bee opened, lest the  
matter should runne to the liver, and so the liver be over-  
charged.

A method serving for the knowledge of the

STONE.

**T**He stone in the kidneys is a hard substance, bred like un-  
to a stone, or sand-stone in the substance of the reines,  
from whence by the force of the urine, it is often convey-  
ed through the straight pipes into the bladder, if it bee not  
too great, which doth so stretch the passages of the urine,  
that great pain doth follow, and if through weaknesse of the  
urine, it cannot be brought out, it growes bigger, and as  
it doth increase, so the paine doth likewise increase. The big-  
nesse of the stone is uncertain, and as they have divers colours,  
and formes, so they are not alwayes of one bignesse. For some-  
times small stones are bred in the reines, sometimes great,  
which doe vary much in form, roughnesse and colour. This  
disease doth differ from the collick: for that doth straggle over  
the whole region of the belly, but in this disease, the paine is  
more settled: This disease doth take its name from the efficient  
cause.



*The part affected.*

The settled pain is in the reins, and sometimes the right side, or the left side is affected, or both sides at one time, even as the right or the left Kidney is affected: for the gravell is bred in the mouth of the kidney, or flesh and substance of them; sometimes stones doe breed in the liver, lungs, guts, joynts, and other parts of the body, but for the most part they doe breed in the bladder and Kidneys. And hereof wee now treat.

*Signes.*

A great loathing of meat, frequent belchings, and extreame paine in the reins, are signes of this disease, and then the paine is great, when the stone doth passe through the passages of the Urine, or when it doth move to and fro in the Kidney, and so toucheth the filmes, but then the paine is greatest, when the body is exercised with violent motions, and when the patient bends forward too often; this paine is not exasperated by touching, as it is by the *Catarrhe* or rheume falling upon it; but the stone doth so paine the patient, as if thornes were put into the passages of the Urine. Yet so long as the stone moves not, rather a loading then pricking pain is felt lying upon the Kidneys, which for the most part is settled, and stedfast, and which doth sometime reach unto the neereſt testicle, sometime to the hippe: the belly for the most part is bound, whereby the paine in the kidney is increased, because the kidney is crushed by wind and abundance of excrements, a queisinesse of stomack and propension to vomit concurre: when the paine is increased, the patient hath a greater desire to vomit; at the length they doe vomit phlegme and choler, and sometimes greenish choler is voyded, whereby the paine is asswaged, for the reins are joyned to the stomack by *Peritoneum*. Also the paines doe increase by lying on the contrary side, and when the patient is full fedde: an

emptinesse

emptinesse doth diminish the paine, though it doth not take away the affect. The patients cannot well endure bending forward; there is no tumor discerned about the part affected; the Leg and thigh of the affected side is benumbed, because of the crushing of the sinews, also the testicle on the same side is as it were pulled back: this happens because the stones and Legs have some affinity with the Reines, by the meanes of arterie, sinewes, and veines, which lye upon the back, and are spread through those parts of the body; the urine in the fit time is thiane and little, and oftentimes bloody, chiefly after riding and immoderate exercise, and also when the stone is conveyed from the Kidneys; If the stone do stop the passages of the urine, an extreame pain is caused, especially if the stone be rough, but when the stone runnes back to the Kidneys, or when it is thrust down from the urine-pipes into the Bladder, thick, and great store of urine is voyded, and therewith sometimes gravelly and uneven stones. This for the most part happens, because they that have been long troubled with this disease, doe void a thick and reddish blood, which sometimes is muddy; sometimes that which is settled in the bottom, is sandy, red and slimy. Urine of this kinde, is voyded without any danger for the space of many months and yeares. And no marvaile: for great stones have been often found in dead mens Kidneys, without any paine in the back; when the stone sticks in the Bladder, a pain is felt in the privy parts, and an itching in the passages of the yard. Retention of the urine is common to both diseases, and when the patients doe endeavour to make water, an extreme and most bitter pain torments them, which for the most part is pricking and shooting.

*The Causes.*

The cause of the stone is a gravelly and sandy constitution of the Kidneys immoderate heat of the Kidneys concurring and for the most part grosse and slimy humors.

*Prog-*



*Prognostiques.*

They that are loose-bellied and doe often vomit, are seldom troubled with this disease: the stone in the kidneys of old men is hardly cured; and besides it is incident to old men rather then young, also the stone is rather in the Bladder. Grosse and corpulent bodies are very seldome troubled with this paine. This is often an hereditary disease; smooth and round stones, are with more ease voyded then long and rough. They that were never troubled with this disease before, are extremely pained with the least stone that is in the passages of the urine. For the most part the stones of the Kidneys are red, sometimes white, when the Kidneys are bespred with matter. In such as have life, the stone hath been perceived onely by the mixture of the blood, no other discommodity chancing, in whom sometimes a very sore pain is caused, contrary to the opinion of many men, and this paine doth returne after long distances of time; the ulcer of the Kidneys is caused by the stone of the Kidneys, because it doth fret and waste the Kidneys by rubbing, and then for the most part bloody urine goes before matter without a Feaver; also the stone of the Kidney is sooner wasted then the stone of the Bladder: first in regard of the places distance: Secondly, because of the hardnesse which the stone maketh in those places. In conclusion both are dangerous, because by the suppression of urine, an imposthume is oftentime caused by paine, or else some other disease comes upon the patient. If the stone in the Bladder bee great, it cannot be taken away but by cutting.

*A method serving for the cure of the  
STONE.*

**T**HE Ayre must bee cleere and bright; they may eate Veale, Lambe, Larkes, and they must rather bee sod then rost

roft. They must eat moderately: for satiety doth not onely exasperate the disease, but also breeds it at the first. White meates, and all slymy meates must be avoyded. They may drink wine that is not too strong, ptisan, and flesh-broths. Their exercise must be very moderate; and they may sleep more then ordinary. The belly must be kept loose; and for the better preservation of health, it will be good for the patients to take once in every month ʒ x. of new extracted *Cassia*, with flesh-broth wherein *Semina Alkekengi* have been boyled. All perturbations of the mind must be avoyded.

Syr. *Byzantinum*; de quinq; radicibus: *Acetosus simplex*, *Oxymel simplex*; water of Saxifrage, Betony, Penny-royall, Calamint.

Preparers.

A Clyster of the decoction of the roots of March-mallows, seeds of Annise, Fennell, Carrowaies, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Dill, Mallows, Violets, Figs, *Benedicta laxativa*, Oyle of Camomile, Dill, Scorpions, fresh Butter, Oyl of sweet Almonds, and *Cassia fistula* must be mixed with them. *Diacath. Electuarium eleusopi*, *Benedicta laxativa*, *Hiera picra*, *Cassia fistula* may be given every other day with the common decoction; *Rhab. Agaricus*. A vomit and suppositories are good. The elbow vein of the pained side shall be opened, if the body be full, or if there be danger of an inflammation, by the humors that do assaule the body. Clysters in the time of the fit are better then medicines taken in at the mouth, for these do sooner assuage the pain, because they doe free the body of an unprofitable burthen. Also by them, the vertue of softning and asswaging medicines will sooner come to the reins, whereby also the heaviness, and pain of the loyns is not so great; and that the reins be not too much overcharged, a small quantity shall be injected.

Emptiers.

The former Clyster, or else a Clyster with the Oyle of Camomile, with a small quantity of *Cassia fistula*: they may eat the fat broths of flesh wherein *Alibea*, Mallows,

Mitigaters of pain.



and Butter were boyled: they may take Turpentine, mixed with Nutmeg, and after it drink a draught of white wine. A fomentation may be made with water, wherein the leaves of *Althæa*, Camomile, seeds of Annise, Fennell, Carrowaies, and Bran have been boyled: a bath of the decoction of Lin seed, Fennegreek, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Mallows, roots of *Althæa*. An oyntment for the region of the reins with the Oyl of Lillies, sweet Almonds, Violets, Camomile, Hen-grease, fresh Butter, *Unguentum Agrippæ*, *Dialthæa*, Cupping-glasses fastned along on the urine vessels, one after another coming down to the privities: for they do so stirre the stone, that the pain is presently suppressed, the stone being conveyed into the Bladder. A Cataplasme of the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, meale of Linseed, Fennegreek, Wheat and Lupines.

Breakers and  
drivers out of  
the stone.

*Lybontripon*, with Turpentine, washed, or with the decoction of the roots of *Gramen* and Fennel. *Elect. Iustinum*, of the ashes of Scorpions, *Dialacca*. The decoction of the wood *Guziacum*. The ashes of a Scorpion, the jaw of a Pike, Eg-shells when the Chickens are hatched. The great conserve of our description is a good preservative against the stone. Conserve of the roots of Parsley, Radish, water-Cresses, Turpentine burnt upon a hot Tile, the stones of Peaches, and Cherries. Hot Goats-blood, that it may not curdle in the belly, a little of the *Coagulum*, or seed of the Goat must be added. The powder of a Hare with the skin dried in the furnace; the fruits of *Alkekengi* bruised, and strained, when they have been steeped in wine. *Lapis Judaicus*. A Wagtail, Sampier, seeds of Saxifrage, Burnet, *Ruscus*, Fennell, Parsly, Radish, *Milii solaris*, Broom. A decoction of Radish, red Ciches, Parsley, *Ruscus*, Sparage. Mallows, Fennell, Nettle, Saxifrage, roots of Grasse. The rinds of the most sharp and biting Radish bruised, and macerated in white wine. The flowers of Broom, steeped in the oyl of Camomile, and so set in the Sunne. Oyl of Cherries and the simple oyl of Scorpions; let him use these medi-

cin

cines, when he takes that doe break the stone. Cupping-glasses must be applyed as was formerly shewed. A bath of Brimstone if the urine be stopped, it may be fetched out with a siringe, they must sit upon a form, and spread the Legs abroad, that after the urine is voyded, some urinary medicine may be injected, as namely the oyl of Scorpions. Whensoever the urine shall be brought down, a double thread shall be run thorow the hollownesse of the siringe, and at the one end of the thread a piece of Cotton shall be tyed, the urine must needs follow if the thread be neatly put into the yard. But before medicines that break the stone, be administred, the pain must be asswaged, and the body purged of corrupt humors: or else the humors lying there-about will be carried to the part affected.

*A more particular method serving  
for the cure of the  
STONE.*

R roots of Parsley, *Aristoloch. rot. Albea*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , leaves of Beets, Mallows, Mercury, ana M j. Branne,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M j.  $\beta$ , seeds of Broom,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. fruits of *Alkekengi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. Lin-seed, Fen-greek, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. Figs, n<sup>o</sup> 8. boyl these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{lb}$  j. adde to the straying *Elect. elscopi*  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. *Benedictæ laxative*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ . Oyle of Rew, Camomile, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , Oyl of Scorpions,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. Venice Turpentine,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Salt  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. After this is given, the patient must take of the Oyle of sweet Almonds  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. Malmsey,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

R Oyle of Camomile, and of Lin-seed, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. sweet Almonds,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. Rew,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j.  $\beta$ , this by provoking to sleep, takes away the pain: this ought to be given often, or in the room of it Sallet-oyle only.

*A Clyster.*

*A draught.*

*A Clyster.*

X x 2

R leaves



A Bath.

R leavs of Mallows, M ij. Pellitory of the wall, M iij. Mugwort, Rew, St. Johns wort, ana M j.  $\beta$ . roots of Fennel, Smallage, ana M iij.  $\beta$ . flower of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ij.  $\beta$ . Lin-feed, Fengreek, ana  $\zeta$  iij.

A Fomentation.

R roots of *Althea*,  $\zeta$  j. leaves of Mallows, *Althea*, ana M j.  $\beta$ . Branne, flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ij. juice of Figs,  $n^o$  8. Lin-feed, Dill, Fengreek, ana  $\zeta$  j.  $\beta$ . boyl these untill the third part be consumed: this must be used about the reines and Bladder.

An Oynment

R Oyle of white Lillies, Mans-fat, ana  $\zeta$   $\beta$ . Oyl of Camomile, ana  $\zeta$  j. Oyl of the stones of Peaches,  $\zeta$  vj. Anoynt the back herewith.

A Cataplasme.

R of Pellitory, M iij. flowers Camomile, Mellilot, ana M ij. Figs,  $n^o$  x. leaves of Mallows, M ij. *Seminum milii solis*, Lupines, ana  $\zeta$  v. boyl these in water q. s. untill they be soft, adde hereto the meale of Lin-feed, Fengreek, Barley, Wheate, ana  $\zeta$   $\beta$ . Oyl of Camomile, Dill, fresh Butter, fat of a Coney, q. s. Saffron,  $\vartheta$  j. Beat all these together in a mortar.

A Vomit.

R of hot water,  $\zeta$  iij. of new made Oyle,  $\zeta$  j. syr. *Acetosi simp.*  $\zeta$  j.  $\beta$ . this as the former doth ease the pain wonderfully.

A Potion.

R seeds of Annise, *Milii solis*, ana  $\zeta$  iij. roots of Fennel, Parsly, *Althea*, ana  $\zeta$  i. seeds of Smallage,  $\zeta$   $\beta$ . Licorice,  $\zeta$  vj. wood Guaiacum.  $\zeta$  j.  $\beta$ . leaves of Mallows, tops of *Althea*, ana M j.  $\beta$ . fruits of *Alkekengi*,  $n^o$  xiiij. Figs, Prunes, ana  $n^o$  vj. Raylins, the stones being taken out,  $\zeta$   $\beta$ . leaves of Violets, flowers of Buglosse, Borage, ana M i. of the four colder seeds, ana  $\zeta$  j. *Turbith albi* & *gummosi* white and light Agarick, ana  $\zeta$  j.  $\beta$ . boyl these in water q. s. unto  $\text{lib i.}$   $\beta$ . adde to the straying *Electu. elestopi*, *Benedicta laxativa*, ana  $\zeta$   $\beta$ .

A draught.

R of *Cassia* newly extracted  $\zeta$  i. he must take hereof between meals, with the decoction of Licorice, Damask Prunes, and Raylins. This must be drunke for the space of two dayes, before medicines that should break the stone be administred.

R *Electu.*

R<sup>x</sup> Elect. *elefcope*, *Benedicta laxativa*, 3 iij. β. *Diaturbitb.*  
with *Rbab.* 3 j. β. of fine Sugar q. s.

*Bolus.*

R<sup>x</sup> Elect. *elefcope*, 3 iij. β. of *Cassia*, 3 β. seeds of Smallage,  
Nutmeg, ana ʒ i. the water of Beane-flowers, 3 ij.

*A draught.*

R<sup>x</sup> of Dropwort, 3 β. *Rubia tinctorum*, 3 ij. roots of *Al-*  
*thea*, 3 β. red Ciches, M i. β. seeds of Juniper, 3 β. Annise,  
Fennell, Carrots, ana 3 i. seeds of *Alkekengi*, 3 v. flowers of  
Keiri M j. seeds of Chervell, 3 ii. of Raylins, the stones be-  
ing taken out, 3 β, Licorice, 3 iii. boyle these in an equall  
quantity of water and Rhenish wine, unto lb i. β, adde to  
the strayingn a little quantity of Sugar.

*A Potion.*

R<sup>x</sup> the blood of a Goat newly killed, 3 i. Gumme *Tra-*  
*gacanth.* 3 β. *Milii solis*, the shels of Eggs, when the Chickens  
are hatched, ana ʒ i. Nutmeg, 3 i. drink this powder with  
white wine, and let it be taken at four times in the former  
portion.

*A Powder.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Milii solis*, 3 ii. *Semina Petroselini Macedonici*, ʒ ii.  
Annise, Fennell, Bay-berries, Lovage, ana ʒ i. Long Pepper,  
Saxifrage, Carrots, ana gr. xv. of Mace, ʒ ii. β.

*Another.*

R<sup>x</sup> *Sp. Electuarii dulcis*, ʒ ii. *Pulveris regine. Lithonripi*,  
ana ʒ i. *Diatrii sandal.* without Camphire, powder of  
the Electuary of Bayberries, ana ʒ β. seeds of Saxifrage,  
Nutmeg, ana gr. v. Saffron. gr. iij. Cinnamon 3 β. fine Sugar,  
dissolved in the water of *Cardus benedictus* q. s. Give here-  
of to the patient 3 i. β.

*Lozenges.*

R<sup>x</sup> of red Ciches, 3 i. β. seeds of Broom, Smallage, Carrots,  
*Milii solis*, ana 3 ij of Mace, 3 j.

*A Powder.*

R<sup>x</sup> seeds o Broom, 3 ij. roots of Saxifrage, 3 iij *Specie-*  
*rum Lithonripi*, 3 β. powder of Licorice, 3 β. Give 3 j. of  
this powder with 3 j. β. of white wine, Smallage, juice of  
Fennell.

*A Powder.*

R<sup>x</sup> Smallage, seeds of *Milii solis*, Cowcumber, *Alkekengi*,  
Grummell, ana 3 ij. red Ciches, Saxifrage, *Chamedris*, ana  
3 ij. Scorpions ashes, 3 j. Give of this powder 3 i. with wa-  
ter distilled out of such Hearbs as doe provoke u-  
rine.

*Another.*

X x 3

R<sup>x</sup> Olei



A Liniment.

Rx Olei keirini, ʒ i. of Scorpions, Camomile, Dill, ana ʒ ʒ, Goats greafe, ʒ ii. a little quantiey of Wax.

An Unguent.

Rx Of Linfeed Oyl, white Lillies, Mans fat, ana ʒ ʒ, Oyle of Camomil, Scorpions, ana ʒ j.

Another.

Rx Unguenti Agrippæ ʒ j. Oyl of Scorpions, ʒ ʒ, Oyle of Peach-stones, ʒ iij. Also a playster may be made of those things that are used for the Fomentation; whereto oyl of Lin-feed, Camomile, May-butter or new Butter, and Hens-grease must be added.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
STONE.

Twice in every weeke the belly shall be kept loose by a Clyster, and such medicines shall be joyned with it, as do discusse the wind in the body, and assuage paine. But Clysters that are too strong are prohibited, for hereby the humors would be drawn inwards, and by that means, the passage or the urine is hindered. If necessity require, a vein shall be opened, but the best way to mitigate the pain, is by applying inward and outward medicines, such as by provoking to sleep do take away the sense of pain. After these, the humors that are gathered together shal be softned, and the passages from the reins unto the Bladder shall be made wider, and this may be effected by baths of fat broth, and the use of Cataplasmes, and then the gravel and stones wil with more ease be voyded. But before these be administred, the safest course would be to purge all the body, if it can be perceived that the body is full: otherwise not. After all this another Clyster may be made with *Hiera picra*, *Lithentripum*, *electu. elefcopi*, *Benedicta laxativa*, Oyle of Rew and of Camomile: and at the length somewhat shall be taken at the mouth to expell the stone. And even as the stone of the Kidneys and Bladder have gerat affinity, because they have one and the same cause, and are alike generated; so they may bee both cured after one manner;

but

but the stone will require stronger medicines, because it hath a harder substance; in this disease the Ventricle shall be strengthened with the Oyles of Mace, Mints, Wormwood, Roses: If the patient be pained with great heat in the reins, they shall be anoynted with the Oyle of Violets and Roses, whereto some Vineger shall be added. If the stone have fallen once into the Bladder, it cannot be expelled by medicines, because of its greatnes, and therefore it must be cut out.

*A method serving for the knowledge of DIABETES,  
or involuntary pissing.*

**D**iabetes is a default of the Kidneys, and a swift passage (of that which is drunk) thorow the body, the drink being nothing altered; also an unmeasurable thirst follows: or else *Diabetes* is a long continued affection resting about the Kidneys, which doth cause great desire to drink, and drink being received into the body, it is but as it were strayed thorow the reins, and so voyded: for the beer is not much altered or changed.

*The parts affected.*

Both the Kidneys are affected, as appears by the action that is hurt. For the reins do purge all the other veines from their watery blood: but in this disease the reins snatch it away by force from the neighbouring parts. The veins by these meanes being dry they doe draw moysture from the Liver, and by a continuation of order, from the stomach; this is the cause that a man doth desire drink, onely to satisfy the reins. For this cause *Diabetes* may properly be said to be an affect of the reins: the disease of the reins, and of the mouth of the stomach are somewhat alike, when as the stomach continually gapes for more. The attractive faculty of the Kidneys drawes immoderately, and the retentive faculty is so weak, that it cannot retain the



the moysture that is extracted, unlesse it were altered: and then because the quality is not changed, it doth passe thorow without any resistance.

*Signes.*

A great heat is felt in the reins, and such an insatiable thirst doth follow, that no liquor can quench their thirst; the proverb is verified, Ever drinke, ever dry. If they do strive to hold their urine, their Itones, Hips, and L. ynes swell, and so great heat is felt in their inward parts, as though their Bowels were burnt, because the watry moysture of the blood wherewith the blood is usually tempered, is drawn from the reins; and at the length the solid parts, humors are drawn from the reins, and then the heat increasing in the Bowels, a consumption followes, because the body is melted away with heat.

*The Causes.*

It is too hot distemper of the Kidneys, wherewith the feebleness of the retentive faculty may bee joyned. It is sometimes caused by sharpe humors in the Kidneys; also it is caused by brinish phlegme. Sometimes it is caused by a venemous matter, sometime a pernicious quality mixed with the blood or humors salted to the reins. Also it is caused by too much drinking of thinne Wine. But none of these are here treated of, unlesse a great thirst concurre.

*Prognostiquer.*

In time a great drynesse, and consumption of the body followes, because the reins do not only draw the humors of the veines, but also those that are in the whole body, because of the immoderate heat of these parts, in a young man this disease is curable; otherwise not. If the patient have a burning Feaver, it cannot be cured, because radicall moysture is wasted by two strong causes.

A method serving for the cure of the involuntary Pissing.

THE Ayre must incline to cold and moist, and their diet such as will breed good, but thick juyce, and such as will qualifie the sharpness of the humors; they may eat freely of them. Almond, Milk, reare Egges, ptisan, fishes, that doe breed in stony places, Apples, Peares, Rice, new Cheese not salted Beefe, leane Porke, and Veale well boyled, are good. Amongst hearbes, Endive, Lettuce, and Purslane, are allowed; such things as provoke urine, are not good; also all salt and sharpe meats must be avoyded. They may drinke strong astringent Wine, the juyce of Pomegranates, and Raspberries with the decoction of Endive, Lettuce, and Myrtles. Rest is best, because it doth stay the motion of humors. The belly must be kept loose by art or nature, and perturbations of the mind avoyded.

Syr. of Poppy, *de acetositate citri*, of water-Lillies, Buglosse, of Violets, Roses, Myrtle, Sorrell, dry Roses. Waters of Purslane, Violets, water-Lillies, Endive, Sorrell, Plantane, Buglosse. A decoction of the roots and flowers of water-lillies, and Plantane, whereto some Sugar must be added.

The cubite-veine shall be opened at the first; for it doth not onely draw back the humors, but it doth also allay the heat. If the disease be old, a vein shall not be opened, because hereby the body is more heated, and the weak strength too much weakned. *Manna, Cassia, Tamarindi*. Syr. of manifold infusion of Roses. *Diaprunum simplex*. *Diacath. Rhab.* A Clyster of the water, wherein the leaves of *Alibea*, Mallowes, Violets, and damaske Prunes have beene boyled; unto this decoction also *Cassia* newly extracted, and Oyle of Violets, shall be added.

A vein shall be opened. A vomit may be given with Oyle and lake-warm water; use also frictions of the Armes, Head, and Shoulders.

Emptiers.

Averters.



An Eleuary made of Harts-horne burnt, red Roses, Blossomes of Pomegranates, seeds of Plantane, Purslane, Quinces, Sorrell, Endive, *Myrobal. Citrin. Hypocistid.* Bole Armony, Corral, Camphire, Syrup of Myrtle, of Violets, Gumme, Arabick, *Saccharum rosatum*. These also must be boyled in red wine, astringent, and if 3 i. of *Myrobal. Citrini* be added to the straining, it is then a good medicine. *Troch. de spodio, de succo, Polygonii, de terra Lemnia, de campora.* Triacle, *Athanasia magna, Diacydonites sine sp. Saccharum rosatum.* Conserve of the flowers of water-Lillies, Roses, juyce of Raspberries, *Sanguinaria*, with astringent wine. *Myrobal. Condit.* and Hedge-Hogs flesh dried in an Oven; 3 i. hereof is good with astringent wine, also fried Mice eaten. A Cataplasme for the privy parts, loyns, and sides, with Lettuce, Purslane, Pellitory, Vine-leaves, Barley-flowers. An oyntment of the oyle of Roses, of Myrtle, *Acetum rosaceum, Unguentum rosatum. M. Ceratum refrigerans Gal.* thin plates of leade wherein many holes are bored, must be laid to the region of the reins. Emplasters also of Maticonum, of the seeds of Quinces, Shepheards-pouch, Barley, flower of Pomegranates, Purslane, red Roses, Bole Armony, Gumme Arabick, Oyle of Myrtle, Roses,

## Strengikners.

*Troch. Alkekengi*, with astringent wine or Honyed-water. An epitheme for the Liver with the water of Roses, water-Lillies, Endive, Sorrell, Vineger, white and red Corral, white Sanders, seeds of Purslane, Sorrell, Spikenard, Camphir. An oyntment for the reins, privy parts, sides, and loyns with the oyle of Roses, water-Lillies, Poppy, Myrtle, Spikenard, red Roses, the cooling unguent of Poplar. *Rosatum Mesue.* A Quilt of the flowers of Violets, Roses, seeds of Endive, Purslane, Sorrell, white and red Sanders, Spikenard, Plantane, Succory. A Cataplasme of Purslane, Roses, Barley-flowers, seeds of Poppy, flowers of Pomegranates, of the Sanders, Oyle of Myrtle, Roses, Quinces, Wormes, of the earth. An emplayster of Barley-flowers, Plantane, red Roses,

Roses, Oyle of Myrtle, *Hypocistis*, flowers and rindes of Pomegranates.

A Sowes Bladder softned with Oyle must be fastned to the top of the yard, so that the urine may fall into that bladder. Triacle, syr. of the juyce of Sorrell, syr. of Pomegranats.

*Agresta*. The former of these will prevent the sinking of the bed, or breeches: the latter of these do quench the thirst.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
DIABETES, involuntary  
pissing.

Rx syr. of Water-lillies, Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , Myrtle, juyce of Sorrell, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , of the decoction of Plantane, Myrtle, Violets, *Sanguinaria*,  $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{i}$ .

Rx rootes and leaves of *Althea*, ana M i.  $\beta$ , leaves of Violets, Mercury, Beet, Mallows, ana M i. cleansed Barley, M ij. *Rhab. electi*  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Mirob. citrinorum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. the greater foure cold seeds  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{i}$ .  $\beta$ , adde to the strayingning *Diacath.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , Oyle of Violets,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

Rx *Pulpa cassie fistule*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. *Tamarind.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{d}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Sacchari rosacei*, q. l. and if the patient like it better in broth, they may therein bee dissolved, give it in a morning.

Rx *Diacath.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. syr. of the manifold infusion of Roses  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Cassia*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Myrobal. Citrinorum*  $\mathfrak{d}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{d}$   $\beta$ , water of Sorrell, Violets ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ .

Rx roots of Borage, Buglosse, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. leaves of Violets, Plantane, ana M i. seeds of Plantane, Purslane ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. flowers of Borage, Violets, Water-lillies, Buglosse, ana M i. *Myrobal. flavorum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{b}$  i.  $\beta$ , add to the strayingning syr. of manifold infusion of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. add unto  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. of this strayingning, when occasion shall serve, *Rhab. electi*, *Mirob. citrinorum*, ana  $\mathfrak{d}$  ij. and give it in the morning.

Rx conserve of Buglosse, pulp of Quinces, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Gumme

Correctors of  
accidents.

A Julep.

A Clyster.

Bolus.

A draught.

A Potion.

An electuary.



- Tragacanth*. dissolved in Rosewater, 3 iij. *Sanguinis Draconis*, Bole Armony, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij.  $\beta$ , mixe these with syrup of Poppy.
- Lozenges.** R of Harts-horne burnt, the flesh of an hedg-Hog, dried in an oven, ana 3  $\beta$ , seeds of Plantane, Purslane, Roses, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , fine Sugar dissolved in Plantane-water q. s.
- An electuary.** R *Troch. de spodio* 3 v. of the cups of Akor nes, 3 i.  $\beta$ , seeds of Roses, Purslane, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. pulpe of Quinces without seeds 3 ij. syrup of Myrtle q. s.
- Another.** R the flesh of a Hedge-hog dried in a furnace, 3 iij, red Roses, 3 i.  $\beta$ , *Spodii. gr.* iij. Bole Armony, 3 i. seeds of Coriander, prepar'd Lettuce, Purslane, ana 3 ij.  $\beta$ , Camphor,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , syr. of Violets q. s.
- Pills.** R Bole Armony, 3 i. red Roses, *Spodium*, flowers of Pomegranates, ana 3 i.  $\beta$ , seed of Lettuce, Plantane, Purslane, ana 3 ij. Gumme Arabick, 3  $\beta$ , Camphor  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , syrup of Myrtle, q. s.
- A Powder.** R *Troch. alkekengi*, 3  $\beta$ , de *Carabe*, 3 i.  $\beta$ , Frankincense, Gumme Arabick, ana 3 i. Cinnamon,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij.
- A mixture.** R *Myrobal. citrinorum conditorum*, 3 ij. conserve of the flowers of water-Lillies, 3 i.  $\beta$ , *troch. de spodio*, 3 i.  $\beta$ , red Roses 3  $\beta$ , *Saccari rosati*, 3 i.  $\beta$ , syr. of water-Lillies q. s.
- A Fomentation.** R roots and leaves of Plantane, ana Mij. grains of Sumach. 3 iij. red Roses, M i. seeds of Purslane, 3 i. Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij. red and white Sandals ana 3 i. boyle these in water q. s. for the reines.
- An Epitheme.** R Rose-water, 3 vi. water of Endive, Succory, ana 3 viij. Vineger 3 i. of Sandals. 3 ij. seeds of Plantane, 3 i. the region of the liver must be washed herewith.
- An Ointment.** R of Sandals,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Harts-horn burnt,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , red Roses, seeds of Purslane, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , Oyl of Roses, Myrtle, ana 3 i. oyntment of Popler, 3 vi. of Wax, *Aceti rosacei*, q. s.
- Another.** R the cooling oyntment of Roses, of *Galen.* the oyntment of Popler, ana 3  $\beta$ , Camphor, 3 i. Oyle of Roses, Quinces, ana 3 iij. of Wax, and Vineger q. s. the reines and the whole back-bone shall be anoynted herewith.

R leaves

R leaves of Plantane, Shepheards purse, Willowes, ana M i.  $\beta$ . red Roses, M  $\beta$ . Graines of Sumach,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiii. rinds and flowers of Pomegranats, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. boyle these in water q. s. untill they be soft; then beat them together, and adde hereto of barly-flower,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ . oyle of Violets, Myrtle, *Sacebari rosati*, q. s.

A Cataplasme.

R leaves of Violets, Endive, Mallowes, and Marsh Mallowes, Plantane, Water-lillies, ana M iij. red Roses, M iij.  $\beta$ . seeds of Quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. Barley,  $\mathfrak{lb}$  i.  $\beta$ . boyle these in water q. s. mixe herewith a good quantity of new milke when you would use it.

A Baib.

An appendix serving for the cure of the involuntary pissing.

**F**irst the offending humors shall be made obedient unto nature, and then expelled by a purging medicine: also the violence of the humors shall be brought back againe by Frictions of the head, armes, and shoulder; or by vomits, for diversions are of great moment. But first such shall be given as may hinder the humors running to the reines, whether they be inwardly taken, or outwardly applyed, it is no great matter. Lastly, the reines shall be strengthned, and the hot distemper amended. If all this will not prevaile, but that the disease doth rather increase then decrease, stupefying medicines must be used, for which purpose *3i. Philonii Romani* is good. Or else R *Philonii Persici*, of new Triacle ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ . give them with the decoction of *Polygonium*. Such medicines as provoke urine must especially be avoyded.

A method serving for the knowledge of the HEMROIDS, or PILES.

**H**emroids are veines of the fundament, stretched beyond measure, or swoln most excessively, which doth happen because of melancholy blood. Sometime they do appear about the fundament, and then they are called outward

Hemroids



hemroids. Sometimes they swell inward, and then the swelling is not so great, and therefore the veines doe not appeare outwardly. These are called the inner hemroids. Also the veines doe often bleed, without either payne, or swelling. This flux of blood is provided by nature, whereby melancholy blood is evacuated at appointed seasons: and if then it be voyded in a meane, they doe prevent imminent danger of diseases, and free them from those which are already come. For it doth purge the whole body from the obnoxious humors, and soon evacuates the superfluities of good blood. Sometimes it comes by fits, and at uncertaine times, and yet this Flux is naturall, because without impairing of the strength, it casteth out naughty and corrupt humors. Sometimes good blood is voyded at these veines, and in such abundance, that the strength is weakned but not a jot relieved. Sometimes it is voyded with such force, that in stead of grosse, black & melancholy blood, great store of pure blood is voyded. Sometimes these veines are stretched and swelled, and yet no blood is voyded: and this is as much against nature, as the former, and then is a man afflicted with great paine, and then they are called obscure hemroids. An inflammation is incident to both kindes of hemroids: the obscure hemroids are sometimes hard like warts, and then they be called *Verrucales*, and are worse then all the rest. Some are gentle and soft, called *Morales*, sometimes they are spred with a purple colour like Grapes, and then they are called *Duales*; It is better to close the obscure hemroids, rather then to open them, if they swel too much: yet if extremity of paine require, they shall be caused to flow. Partly these veines goe into the straight gut through the branch of *Vena porta*, partly from the hollow veines, and are terminated with the fundament, and are called outward hemroids. If the melancholy blood be carried downe by the former veines, when the veines lye so deepe within, that they cannot bee discerned, without a glasse or turning *Anus* upward, then they

they are called inward hemroids. Here blood is voydea with the excrements, but is not mixed with them, but rather doth lie above the excrements, no paine concurring; but in the flux of the belly, the excrements and the blood are mixed together: nature helps the diseases of the reins and Liver by such excretion, through the former branches: the latter branches nature useth, for to helpe the default of the Spleene, the meseraick veines, and other adjoyning parts, the part affected is formerly mentioned to be the veins in the Fundament.

*Signes.*

When they runne too much at the first, they doe voyd melancholy, black & thick blood, but after it, good and red blood is perceived to issue, at the length the blood is of a citrine and pale colour, whereby the strength of the body failes, weaknesse of the Legs, and a heavy paine about the Hips concurre. If the Hemroids be stayed against nature, then the Back, Hips, Kidneys, Brest, and Fundament are pained; if blood from the Hemroids be stayed in the straight gut, it doth resemble a clod of red blood, if the blood come from a weak Liver, it is like unto the water wherein raw flesh newly killed hath been washed; the mesentery veine sheds a small quantity hereof: If any veins of the upper parts be burst, or eaten through, or too much opened, the blood which is shed by continuall boyling, doth resemble pitch; for it lookes black and is as it were burnt. If blood bee voyded because of the flux of the belly, the signes hereof were formerly mentioned. By these signes may be discerned from whence the blood comes, because the blood runs out at the fundament, from many parts of the body. Therefore all the blood that is voided at the fundament, is not presently caused by the Hemroids.

*The Causes.*

The blood is oftentimes this way evacuated, because abun-



abundance of dreggy blood, which is generated in the body by evill digestion, would else rot and putrefy the body; wherefore nature hath provided, that the liver, Spleen, and other parts adjoyning, through the former branches should send all their corrupt blood by the fundament. Sometimes the Hemroids are caused by thinnesse and sharpenesse of the blood; sometimes it doth happen to women with child, or to such whose monethly termes are stayd: for sometimes nature drives out superfluous blood, by branches derived from the hollow veines, close by the bottome of the flanks through the fundament, even as men are relieved by her. Sometimes it is caused by opening, breaking, or exulcerating of veines, and such superfluous blood is unnaturally stayed by contrary causes.

*Prognostiques.*

If the hemroids flow naturally, neither inflammation of the Lungs, or sides, or else eating ulcers or leprosy, melancholy or quartane Feaver wil molest any one. Hemroids comming upon such as are madde, or are troubled with black choler, or the affects of the Kidneys, are good. Yet if they doe bleed too much, there is great danger; for it doth threaten a Dropsy, because the strength is too much spent, wherefore if they flow too fast, let them be stopped, because otherwise the Liver and the whole body is thereby cooled, and the strength cast down. Yet if one hemroid vein be not left open, there is danger of a Dropsy, Plurisy, inflammation of Lungs, Leprosy, quartane Ague, melancholy, *Mania*, or Consumption of the Lungs; for these bad excrements flow back to the Liver and heart walles; wherefore there is great danger by untimely stopping of the hemroids, as there is by their too much running.

A method serving for the cure of the HEM-  
ROIDS too much  
flowing.

**T**He ayr must be somewhat dry, and their meat must be such as do breed very few excrements, and that doth bind moderately. Fat flesh-broth is good for this purpose, lest the excrements being hard cause pain, and the juice of Quinces must be added thereto. In like manner Frumenty of Wheat and Rice is good. Their drink may be Wine somewhat binding.

Syr. of the juice of Sorrell, of Roses, dry Roses, of Quinces. Waters of Plantane, Sorrel, Water-lillies, *Mel rosatum*, Syr. of Worm-wood, *de myrobal. Citrinis*. Waters of worm-wood, Buglosse, Mints. If the blood be cholerick, and thinne, the former may be given. If it be watery, the latter shall be prescribed, the like in the following medicines.

Syr. *Rosarium solutivus*. *Diasena*. *Rhab. Myrobal. flavi*. *Pillul. de bdellio*; *Myrobal. Kebuli*, *Emblici*. *Polypodium quercinum*, seeds of bastard Saffron. Sharp Suppositors may be given to loosen the belly: a stool may be procured by a candle made of tallow, or with fat lard.

The Liver vein of the right arme shall be opened, for it not only diverts, but hinders the breeding of melancholy blood. Cupping-glasses may be fastned to the right and left side, and upon the region of the Liver. The Arms and Hands must be well rubbed, also painful ligatures of those parts, and fomentations, and baths for the same.

*Trach. de spodio*, with the seed of Sorrell, *de terra sigillata*. *Confectio de scorio ferri*. The great conserve of our description is good to hinder the disease in the beginning. *Saccharum rosatum*, Conserve of Roses. *Pillule de bdellig*, *Sanguis dragonis*. Bole Armony and the seed of Sorrell,

Preparers.

Emptiers.

Averters.

Closers of the  
mouth of the  
veins, and  
thickners of  
the Blood.



Sorrell are passing good. *Terra sigillata*, the confection of the droffe and scales of Iron, rindes of Pomegranats, *Rhus obsoniorum*, *Hypocistis*. Waters of Plantane, Roses, Eybright, *Gabinum*, *Philonium Romanum*, *Triphera Persica*, *Pheonix Asbanasia Nicolis*. A bath of astringent medicines. Fomentations with astringent wine, wherein the roots of Plantane, red Roses, flowers of Pomgranats, Myrtle, *Terra sigillata*, Bole Armony, *Rhus obsoniorum*, Harts-horn burnt, *Galla*: out of these, juice may be strayned, and so put into the veins with a sirenge, if the hemroids be inward, Galls with the Oyle of Myrtle, made into the forme of a playster is good. A suppositor of lead burnt, white lead, *Colophonis*, *Acacia*; *Unguentum comitisse* is very good, if it be layd to the Loynes, and Fundament. An emplaister of *Aloes*, Frankincense, new laid Egges, Haires of a Hare, Emplaisters of the droffe of Iron, the greafe of a Snake roasted and tempered with the roots of *Filipendula*, either laid to the Fundament, or put into the body with a suppository, this doth stop the blood of the Hemroids, and yet the Hemroids must not suddenly be stayed, because there would be danger either of a Dropsy or Consumption.

Correctors of accidents.

*Philonium Romanum*, *Asbanasia N*. An oyntment of the oyl of Lillies, Violets, Belly-Worms, Lin-seed, Poplar, yolk and white of an Ege, with a little *Opium*. Oyntment of Poplar. The patient must sit in water wherein steel hath been quenched, and wherein Linseed, the leaves of Mullein, Plantane, Mallows, Violets, Flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, heads of white Poppy, Myrtle, bloomes of Pomegranats, are boyled. The mucilage of Linseed and Fengreeke are very good. An emplaister or cataplasme of Barley-flower, Fengreek, *Mucilago Althea*, *Psyllii*, Mellilot, Purslane, Oyl of Roses, whites of Egges, crummes of bread and Milke boyled, *Diachylum* with a little Saffron, and *Opium*. Long tents may be made and dipped in the former Oyntments, and so put them into

into the fundament, if the Hemroids be inward. If with the Flux, the Patient be in pain, that must be asswaged, lest that the pain be doubled by the sharpnes and hardnesse of the excrement: to these must be added such medicines as do hinder an inflammation, which for the most part accompanies this disease.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the HEMROIDS.*

Rx syr. of Myrtle, Roses, Quinces, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , decoction of Myrtle, Sumach, flowers of Pomgranats,  $\mathfrak{z}$  viij. of red altringent wine,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij.

*A Julep.*

Rx *Pillul. de Bdellio*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. *Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{g}$   $\beta$ , syr. *solutivi rosarum* q. f. make hereof 8. pills, and give of them after the first sleep.

*Pills.*

Rx *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{g}$  ii. *Mirobal. citrinorum*,  $\mathfrak{g}$  j.  $\beta$ , syrup of Mints,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. the water of Buglosse,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij.

*A draught.*

Rx syr. of Quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , Bole Armony washed in Rose-water,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Mattick,  $\mathfrak{g}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Sacchari rosacei*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , water of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij.

*Another.*

Rx conserve of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Troch. de spodio, de succino*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. red Corall, Date-stones, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii. Bole Armony, blossomes of Pomegranats, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. syrup of Roses, Myrtle, ana q. f.

*An Electuary.*

Rx of Date-stones, *Myrobal. Indorum*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Coriander, red Corall, ana  $\mathfrak{g}$   $\beta$ , red altringent wine, and fine Sugar, q. f.

*Lozenges.*

*Troch. de terra sigillata*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. syr. of Quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. water of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij.

*A draught.*

Rx roots and leav of Plantane, ana Mi. *Rhois obsoniorum*, flowers and rinds of Pomegranats, fruits of Sumach, ana Mi.  $\beta$ , of Date-stones,  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. Linseed,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , seeds of Myrtle,

*A Fomentation.*



Myrtle,  $\text{z ii. } \beta$ , Bole Armony, Harts-horn burnt, ana  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , boylall these in red astringent wine, q.  $\bar{c}$ . wash the fundament herewith.

*A Liniment.*

Rx of Frankincense,  $\text{z } \beta$ , Aloes,  $\text{z ii.}$  mixethese with Eggs and spread them upon the soft belly-haires of a Hare, and so apply them to the part affected.

*Another.*

Rx oyle of Myrtle,  $\text{z i.}$  *Unguenti comitissa*,  $\text{z ii.}$  Bole Armony, *Sanguinis draconis*, ana  $\text{z i.}$  Harts-horn, white Lead, *Lithargiri*, Antimony,  $\text{D } \beta$ .

*An Unguent.*

Rx oyntment of Poplar,  $\text{z iii.}$  oyl of Violets,  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , Goose and Hens-grease, ana  $\text{z } \beta$ , oyle of sweet Almonds,  $\text{z vj}$  Saffron,  $\text{D } \beta$ , the yolkes of two Egges.

*Another.*

Rx *Unguenti comitissa* q.  $\bar{c}$ . anoynt the back-bone herewith.

*Another.*

Rx oyntment of Poplar,  $\text{z i.}$  oyl of Linseed,  $\text{z } \beta$ , the yolke of an Egge, *Opii*,  $\text{D } \beta$ , Saffron,  $\text{D i.}$  This must be used in extremity of pain, or in stead hereof.

*A Cataplasm.*

Rx leaves of Violets, *Miii. Psylli*, *M i. } \beta, boyle these in Cowes-milk, untill they be soft, add unto them, of Barley-flower,  $\text{z } \beta$ , of wheat-flower,  $\text{z i.}$  two yolks of Egges, oyle of Roses, Violets, ana q.  $\bar{f}$ .*

*A Fomentation.*

Rx roots and leaves of Plantane, *M iii.* red Roses, *M i. } \beta, flowers of Pomegranats,  $\text{z } \beta$ , boyl these in astringent wine. Use this about the part affected.*

*An Emplaster.*

Rx the pulpe of Quinces roasted in the embers  $\text{z iii.}$  Bole Armony, flowers of Pomegranats, ana  $\text{z ii.}$  Oak Apples, and Frankincense, ana  $\text{z i.}$  this is an excellent emplaster.

*A Suppositor.*

Rx of burnt lead,  $\text{z i.}$  of white Lead washed,  $\text{z } \beta$ , Bole Armony, Scammony, ana  $\text{D ii.}$  juice of Plantane, white of an Egge, and oyl of Violets, ana q.  $\bar{f}$ .

*A Cataplasm.*

Rx roots of Marsh-mallows, seeds of Myrtle, flowers and rindes of Pomegranats, ana  $\text{z vi.}$  of Mullein, *M iii.* boyle these in astringent wine, then adde hereto the powder of Dates-stones, Oak-apples, Frankincense, ana  $\text{z i. } \beta$ , oyle of Violets, Roses, ana q.  $\bar{f}$ .

*An Emplaster.*

Rx Bole Armony, Frankincense, Aloes, Mastick, ana  $\text{z } \beta$ ,

*San-*

*Sanguinis draconis*, ʒ iii. β, *Ossium mirobal. Inderum*, stones of Pine-apples, ana ʒ i. mixe them with the white of an Egge and the juice of Plantane.

Rx *Troch. de terra sigillata*, ʒ i. β, of the white of an Egge beaten q. s. also an Emplaiter of Figges and Aloes may be laid upon that veine that runnes, that it may bee kept open.

A Cataplasme.

An Appendix serving for the cure of the

HEMROIDS over-

much flowing.

THAT the liver be not cooled by immoderate evacuation of blood, or that the strength of the body be not cast down, the course of the blood flowing too fast shall be hindred. If sharp and thin humors bee mixed with the blood, first they shall be made obedient to nature, and then expelled by purging medicines. After this a vein shall be opened, (if the patients strength will permit) partly that the superfluity of the blood may be diminished, partly that the force of the blood running another way, may be hindred. For this purpose, Averters are prescribed. When all this is done, such medicines shall be prescribed, as wil close up the veins, and thicken the blood: and also the pain must be mitigated: but if the Hemroids be not apparent, the belly shall be loosned with fat flesh-broth, or extracted *Cassia*, because the pain is caused by sharpe and hard dregs settled in those parts. And when they first break forth, the first and chief care shall be, that the pain be asswaged, and afterwards that they be dried up, because this evacuation is unnatural; neither may it be lawfull to provoke the Hemroids, unless extreme pain or swelling forceth us: or unlesse a man be in danger of death by their not flowing, their removal be needful: so for Horse-leaches to the part affected, but first that part

must



must be washed with warm water, or else with wine: it may be done also with a small penknife, then a fine cloth dipped in the white of an Egge, and laid to the part affected, will provoke them, but the cloth must not be plucked from the place, until the moisture be quite dried up. Or els *R Colocyntib. ʒ ii. β*, oyl of bitter Almonds *ʒ i.* a little quantity of Cows-dung, make hereof a cataplasme. Or else, *R* the pulp of an Apple roasted, Pigeons-dung ana *ʒ i. β*, juice of an Onyon q. s. make hereof an Emplaster for the fundament, which must be first washed, before the emplaster be layd on. If the hemroids shall be dried up, *R Viridis aris ʒ β*, Pine-Apples, Mastick, Bole Armony, ana *ʒ ii.* water of Plantane or red astringent wine, *ʒ xii.* boyl these untill they be boyled unto the thickness of Hony, and then apply it hot to the part affected. *R Viridis aris usti ʒ ii.* Alome burnt, *ʒ iii.* boyl these in astringent wine, until it be as thick as Hony, and a piece of wool must bee dipped in it, and laid to the part affected. If it may be discerned that there is an ulcer within, an unguent shall be made of Ceruse, and *Lithargirum*. This must be injected very cold, that it may work the better.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the  
overflowing of the monthly tearms.*

**T**He superfluous Flux of months is, when as it doth tend rather to the hurt than good of the women, because hereby they be purged more than they should: but in such women that are of a moister constitution, because of their good diet and much ease, the months may be suffered to flow more than ordinarily they are wont: wherefore not so much the quantity, quality, or kind of substance must be observed, but rather whether they flow in season, or out of season, or else for the good of the patients in such women that are with child, or that do give suck, or are lately delivered of their child, they must be let alone; yet they

they break forth in the first month, when women be with child, and not against reason, because the mouth of the wombe is not so fast bound, as it is afterwards, when as the smallest body cannot get in. And sometimes in women with child, after that the mouth of the womb is closed up, either months, (as it doth sometimes fall out in maids) or somewhat like unto the months is voided through the branches of the hollow veines, which are fastned to the neck and mouth of the womb, in such sort, as the Hemroids veins are terminated in the end of the right guts.

*The part affected.*

The wombe is chiefly affected, when the moneths overflow, sometimes the whole body sympathizeth, and is alike affected. This affect is an accident which appertaines unto immoderate excretion, and it is not altogether against nature, as it is in the bleeding of the Nose, or other bleedings, for herein only too great a quantity of the monthly Flux is unnaturall.

*Signes.*

If the months flow immoderately, the appetite is taken away, the digestion is hindered, & crudities are in all parts of the body. The whole body is weake, and a great feebleness of strength followes, and this is a certaine signe that the months flow too fast. The color of the face is changed, feaverish heats arise in the body: sometime the whole body with the feet is swelled, and a Dropsy followes.

*The Causes.*

Superfluity of months run out, first by reason of the heat of blood, thinnesse, or abundance, more then is requisite: or els because of the continual motion thereof, for when these

con-



concurr, nature is defeated. Sometimes there is such store of blood, that it doth not onely open the veines, but doth breake them open by force, which sometimes happens by too violent exercises. This doth chance to those that are untimely delivered; and also to those that are delivered with pain, whether it be by the infants crosse comming out, or else by his bignesse: the hot season of the year, the use of hot baths, and such like do cause the opening of the vessels. Sometimes this Flux happens, because some veines are open by a fretting exulceration, which happens in the neck of the wombe, by the sharpnes of blood: and this is known by that which is voyded, because mattery and virulent matter is voyded with the blood, and sometimes it is stinking. Also a greater pain is felt about the wombe: Sometime store of blood is voyded by the rupture of the greater veins, whereof many are terminated in the mouth of the wombe. The lesser veines void but little, and that confusedly. Again this Flux is caused by too frequent copulation, as also by the weaknes of the retentive faculty; and in conclusion, venemous, putrefied and biting humors cause this Flux.

*Prognostiques.*

Immoderate Fluxes caused by the birth of a great Babe, are lesse dangerous, because they will stay of their own accord. If by untimely birth, the danger is sudden, and therefore the greater: If it be caused by fretting or an ulcer, it is hardly cured; because of the evill complexion of the humors which are gathered about the wombe, and because many superfluities are mixed with the blood, medicines are prescribed in vaine. And as by the utter stay of the moneths, there is danger of a Dropsy, so also by the immoderate flowing of the terms, the same disease is also to be feared; especially if the body be weakned, or the colour of the face changed, because a woman is hereby brought unto great coldnesse, faintnesse of the heart, swoounding, and sometimes death is like to ensue.

A method serving for the cure of the overcrossing  
of the MONETHS.

**T**He Ayre must be somewhat dry and cold. Their meat binding and thickning, and such as will generate good blood, as the feet of beasts boyled, Partridges, Pheasants, Black-birds, small Birds, Rabets, Kids, Hares, roasted meate is better then boyled. They may drink water wherein the seeds, roots, and leaves of Plantane, are boyled: exercise is altogether forbidden, rather let her rest. Sleep must be moderate, and all perturbations of the mind avoided.

Syr. of Endive, Quinces, Roses, Pomegranates. Of the juyce of Sorrell, the juyce of Barberies. Waters of Sorrell, Roses, Plantane, Purslane, Endive.

Preparers.

If the body be full, the inward veine of the right arme shall be opened, if the strength hold out, and the moneths looke red, this blood must be taken out by degrees. Rew, newly extracted *Cassia*, *Myrobal. Cuirini*, *Kebul*. Agarick is good, because watery phlegme is mixed with the blood. Syr. of the manifold infusion of Roses, *Rhab. diaphanicum*. *Elect. Indum-Hiera picra*, *Pillul. Majores de bdelio*. A decoction of the flowers of Violets, Roses, Buglosse, water-Lillies, Damsens; *Myrobal. Flavis*. *Rhab. jujuba*. to these also the syrap of manifold infusion of Roses shall be added.

Emptiers.

The *Basilica* veine shall be opened. Also painefull frictions & ligatures of the upper parts shall be used: one great Cupping-glasse shall be fastned to the right or left side under the paps, and this shall be many dayes renewed. Also another shall bee fastned to the region of the Spleene, and so be removed from thence to the belly, and also to the shoulders, especially if a veine may not be opened, because of the immoderate Flux, or weaknesse of the strength. A Fomentation for the belly and lower parts, with the decoction

Averters.



Thickners of  
the blood.

of Plantane, red Roses, rinds of Pomegranates, *Hypocystis* Ling-wort, Pine-Apples. Bole-Armony, *Acatia*, *Sanguis draconis*. A bath of the same decoction is good, wherein the patient must sit; in like manner vomit is good. If the blood be watery, causers of sweat are good.

*Diabolibanum*, *Triphera phenonis*, *Philonium Romanum*, *Opificum*, *Athanasia*, *Elect.* *Diatrium sandal.* *Troch. de terra sigillata*, *Carabe*, *Spodio*, Syrap of Myrtle, Roses, Pomegranates, of the juyce of Sorrell, Quinces. Conserve of dry Roses, of the juyce of Raspberries, they may drinke Rose-water, morning and evening. The pulpe of Quinces, Harts horne burnt, Shepherds-purse, *Balaustium*, the cups of *Acorus*, *Terra Lemnia*, *Polygonium*, *Hypocystis*, Pine-Apples, Roses, juyce of Plantane, or else the water hereof with the *Troch.* of red earth, juyce of Purslane, *Millesfolii*, Leaves of Oakes, *Sumach*, Gumme Arabick, Mastick, *Olibanum*, seeds of Coriander, burnt Alome. The waters of Plantane, Purslane, Lettuce, Sorrell, Roses, with the *Trochiscis* of *Carrabe*, *despodio*, *Terra sigillata*. A bath of the decoction of the roots and leaves of Plantane, Comfrey, Horse-tayle, Knot-grasse, Pine-Apples, graines of Sumach, the shell of an Acorne, rindes and Flowers of Pomegranates, Roses, *Rhoo obscurorum*. The patient must sit up to the navill, and take the fume of this decoction in at her wombe. A fumigation may be made with the fume of Mustard-seede. A Clyster with astringent wine, wherein Sage, Roses, Plantane, Bole-Armony, *Sanguis Draconis*, are boyled. Or else the Clyster may be made with the juyce of Roses, Plantane, Ey-bright, especially if there be any Ulcer. A pessary must bee made with Mummy, *Tryphera*, *Myrceta*, Bole-Armony, juyce of Plantane, Roses, Ey-bright. Or in stead of this Pessary; a soft linnen cloth dipt in the juyce of Plantane, and put into the privy parts. An epitheme may bee made of red astringent wine, wherein the roots of Plantane with the leaves of *Sumach* are boyled. Apply this to the privy parts. *Unguentum Comissae*, Roses, Myrtle:

Myrtle: when the region of the reins must bee anoynted herewith, let it be then cold, but if it bee used about the belly, it shall be hot. An Oyntment of the oyle of Myrtle, Roses, Quinces, juyce of Parslane, powder of Sandals, Roses, rinds of Pomegranates. *Ceratum sandalinum*. An Emplaster of Roses, flowers and rinds of Pomegranates, roots of Plantane, Pine-apples, *Sanguine draconis*, Bole-Armony; these shall be used at the first, for it is to be feared that nature being accustomed to this immoderate flux of termes, then it will prove too common and familiar with her. And the Orifices of the veins will scarce be closed up, and then it is incurable, if it doth continue so very long; & yet there be many that doe then undertake the cure. *Confectio Aibanassa*, and many other medicines of this kind, though they stanch the blood, may not be drunk, unlesse the strength will permit; or else they may be used in a desperate case, when as other medicines cannot prevaile.

*Amore particular method serving for the cure of  
the Inordinate flowing of monethly  
termes.*

Rk syrup of Roses, Myrtle, Quinces, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , water of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  v. of the decoction of Myrtle, Sumach,  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi.

*A Julep.*

Rk *Diacath.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. syr. of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. water of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij.

*A draught.*

Rk *Pillul. cochiarum*, de *Agarico*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Diagridii*, gr. iiij. with a sufficient quantity of Mugwort, make hereof 8. pills.

*Pills.*

Rk roots of Plantane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , *Rhab.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. *Myrobal. citrinorum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij boyle these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{z}$  iiij. or v. adde to the straying *Rhab. electi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , syrup of Quinces,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ .

*A draught.*

A a a 2

Rk *Pillul.*



## Pills.

Rx *Pillul. de Bdellio*: ℥ij. β, syr. of Succory with *Rbab.* q. s. hereof 8 pills must be made.

## A Potion.

Rx juyce of Plantane, *Millefolii* ana ℥ij. Gumme *Arab.* ℥i. make it sweet with fine Sugar q. s.

## A drink.

Rx *Vini stiptici*, lb. i. β, boyle a small quantity of dry Cheefe herein; this is good to stay the immoderate Flux.

## A draught.

Rx red Corall finely beaten into powder, ℥i. Plantane, ℥ij. syr. of Quinces, ℥i.

## A Potion

Rx roots of Plantane, ℥ij. Bole Armony, ℥i. boyle these in red astringent wine unto lb. i. Sweeten it with fine Sugar q. s.

## An electuary.

Rx *Troch. de terra sigillata*, de *Carabe*, ana ℥i. Mastick, Harts-horne, Frankincense, the rindes of Pomegranats, ana ℥i. seeds of red Roses, red Corall, ana ℥β, the conserve of old Roses, pulpe of Quinces, ana ℥β, syrup of Myrtles q. s.

## Another.

Rx conserve of old Roses, ℥i. *Olibani*, Frankincense, Myrrh, ana ℥ij. Bole Armony, seeds of Roses, ana ℥i. Mastick, ℥i. β, juyce of Quinces, ℥β, make hereof an Electuary with a sufficient quantity of the syr. of Quinces, and so give it to the patient in the morning.

## A draught.

Rx *Troch. de terra sigillata*, ℥ij. *Athanasia*, ℥ij. Give ℥i. hereof with ℥ij. of Plantane water, and with ℥i. of the syr. of Quinces.

## Bolus.

Rx Pills of Hounds-tongue, ℥i. *Philonii Persici*, ℥ij. β, Tricicle, Bole Armony, ana ℥β.

## Pills.

Rx Pills of Hounds-tongue, ℥i. *Philonii Romani*, ℥β, every other day the patient may take ℥β.

## An electuary.

Rx red Corall beaten to fine powder, *Ambra citrine*, ana ℥i. Bole Armony, ℥β, seeds of Roses, Plantane, ana ℥i. syr. of dry Roses, ℥ij.

## A draught.

Rx *trippera*, ℥i. Pills of Hounds-tongue, ℥β, syr. of Quinces,

ces, 3 β, red astringent wine, 3 iij.

Rx juyce of Plantane, 3 vi. Gumme *Tragacanth*. 3 β, if the patient will permit, this shall bee put into the wombe.

Rx *Troch. de spodio*, 3 i. β, juyce of Plantane, Sage, ana 3 ij. use this as the former is to bee used, or Plantane-water, wherein the mucilage of the seeds of Quinces is dissolved.

Rx *Mellis rosati*, 3 i. Aloes, Frankincense, Bole-Armony, *terra sigillata*, ana 3 i. Corall, Myrrhe, rindes of Pomegranats, ana 3 ij. 3 ij. is sufficient at one time. Use this as the former.

Rx juyce of Plantane, 3 iij. Bole-Armony, rinds and flowers of Pomegranates, Frankincense, ana 3 i. β, Harts-horn burnt, Pine-Apples, ana 3 i. β.

Rx roots and rinds of Plantane, Comfrey, ana M i. l eaves of Sage, M ij. rindes of Pomegranats, Roses, M i. β, Sumach, Galls, ana 3 iij. β, *Hypocistis*, *Rhoe Obscuriorum*, ana 3 ij. β, boyle these in red astringent wine q. s. untill the third part be consumed. Wash the belly and region of the reines herewith.

Rx *tryphera*, 3 β, Galls, Frankincense, rindes of Pomegranates, ana 3 i. Bole-Armony, Gumme Arabick, ana 3 ij.

Rx Frankincense, Mastick, ana 3 ij. Gumme *Tragacanth*. 3 iij. dried Eeles-skinne, Horses hoofe, ana 3 β, or else an equall quantity of sheeps-dung, and Frankincense; the patient must receive the fume in at the privy parts. Also a bath shall bee made of those things that were prescribed in the Fomentation: they must be boyled in the water wherein Iron hath been quenched. This is an approved medicine, especially if 3 i. β, of Bole-Armony be mixed with it. In this bath the patient must sit up unto the thighes, and so she may receive the fume into her body.

Rx *Unguenti cominisse*, 3 i. β, oyle of Myrtle, Quinces, Roses, ana 3 vi. Bole-Armony, *Sanguinis draconis*, ana 3 i. rinds

Aaa 3

An Injection.

Another.

Another.

A Pessary.

A Fomentation.

A Pessary.

A Suffumigation.

An Unguent.

of



An Emplay-  
ster.

of Pomegranats, 3 i.ß, *Acsi rosacei*, q. s. anoynt the reins and privy parts herewith.

Rx *Malicorii*, *Balaustiorum*, *Hypocystis*, Bole-Armony, Egge-shels, Mummy, *Olibanum*, ana 3 i. red Roses, Galls ana 3 i.ß, Frankincense, 3 iij. Beanes, and Barley-flowers, ana 3 iij.ß, oyle of Myrtle, 3 i.ß, of Waxe, and Rosin q. s. apply this to the region of the reins, and lower parts of the belly.

An appendix serving for the cure of the  
overflowing of the monethly  
termes.

**V**W Hen it shall bee perceived that the body is weak-  
ned by the overflowing of the termes, then they  
shall be suppressed. If plenty of blood be the cause of it, a  
veine shall be opened, and a slender diet shall be prescribed,  
and such meats as doe generate blood shall be avoyded: but  
if this disease bee caused by watery blood, or else the heat,  
sharpnesse, or thinnesse of the blood, first the offending  
humors shall be digested, and then expelled by a purge. At  
the length Cupping-glasses shall be used, that the course of  
the blood may be turned another way and then the course  
of the blood may be stayed, the Orifices of the veines clo-  
sed, and the blood thickned, whereof some shall bee taken  
inward, and others outward; and because in all fluxes the  
heart and liver are weakned, therefore both those bowels  
shall be corroborated. Injections, and pessaries of astringent  
things are herein of great force because they come sooner  
to the part affected, then they that are taken in at the  
mouth. If this disease be caused by some eating ulcer in  
the womb, it may be cleansed with water of Hony, and then  
healed with Frankincense, *Aloes*, *Terra sigillata*, and other,  
which

which were formerly mentioned. The same also may be used, if it be caused by a rupture. But they must be injected with red astringent wine, and if the body abound with ill humors, the body must be first purged. The juyce of Plantane Shepherds purse, whether they be injected or taken in at the mouth, are very good, wherewith Gumme Tragacanth or Arabick may be joyned.

*A method serving for the knowledge of  
the suppression of the*

MONETHS.

**A**S the overflowing is dangerous, so the retention on the contrary is as dangerous. The monethly tearmes are portions of blood destined by nature for generation, overflowing in the hollow veine<sup>s</sup>, from whence it doth slide into the veines of the wombe, and by the superfluity the mouth of the veines are opened, and then dropping out from thence, they runne out at the neck of the wombes once every moneth. But the straying of the months is altogether unnaturall, if they be of ripe age, unlesse they have conceived. This blood increaseth in women rather then in men, because a woman is weaker, and of a colder constitution of body then man is, and therefore also cannot so well digest the nutriment, neither can they, by reason of their coldnesse, concoct the nourishments in such sort as men can. Nature did order this for some speciall cause, which is, that they should give plenty of food to their children when they are with child: & as the months doe begin at a set time, so they have a time limited for their end. But if they be with child, as was formerly said, then they doe not flow at all, lest that a passage being open the nourishment which should preserve the child, might be avoyded with the ill humors; the like  
also



also happens to those that give suck; because the blood is carried to the breasts, and there turned into Milke: in some the moneths run at twelve years, in others at foureteene, or twenty; and they cease about the 50 or 60 yeeres of a womans age: here is onely mention made of unnaturall suppression of monethly tearmes, which brings great danger with it.

*The part affected.*

The wombe is chiefly affected in regard of the fatnesse thereof, whereby the veins are crushed together, and so the Flux is hindered. Sometimes flesh growing in the wombe, or else scarres left after an ulcer, are the chiefe cause: sometimes it is caused by the default of the other parts, and sometimes superfluities are not conveyed to the wombe, as usually they were.

*Signes.*

The forepart of the head is pained, and spreads it self unto the eye, neck, shoulders, and loyns; her appetite is taken away, and she is sad, musing and unquiet, the colour of her face is altered, queasinesse of stomack, and loathing of meat doth follow. She voids phlegm, & is for the most part taken with a trembling, as though she were presently to be delivered. Her urine is thick, red and muddy, and sometime blackish, with a red mattery substance in the bottome.

*The Causes.*

Grosse and phlegmy matter mixed with blood is the chiefe cause of this disease; because it stops the veines leading to the wombe, whereby a thicknesse of the wombe, and straitnesse of the veines doth happen. Sometimes it is caused by the inflammation of the wombe, or fatnesse thereof. Sometimes they come not at their accustomed season, because they are consumed by thin diet, feare, too much thought and grief, watching, sadnesse, violent exercises, too much

much evacuation at the stoole, sweat, vomit, bleeding and long diseases. And in these causes it is not good to provoke the months: sometimes it is caused by too hot or cold distemper of the whole body, or of the liver, lungs, spleen, stomach or wombe. For by a hot distemper the excrement is dried up and consumed: by a cold distemper it waxeth thick and more tough, whereby the vessels of the wombe are stopped.

*Prognostiques.*

If the terms be too long suppressed, they are the cause of most grievous diseases, as the drop sic, stopping of the matrix, gowt, pains in the joynts, head, back and loynes, difficulty of breathing, cough, melancholy passions, giddinesse of the head, resolutions of sinews, trembling of the heart, swelling of the bowels, swoounding, collick, paine in the reins; for hereby many corrupt humors are bred, and then conveyed to the liver, spleen, lungs, heart and head: in brief, unto every part of the body. But when the scars of ulcers have sealed up the mouth of the vessels in the wombe, and for that cause the months are suppressed, the disease is incurable. It is good for such as are troubled with this disease, to bleed much at the nose: and if the monthly courses be too long at a stand, the vessels by which blood is usually conveyed, are stopped, and so hardened, that they will scarce admit of any cure.

*A method serving for the cure of the too much oppression of the months.*

**T**He ayre must incline to heat, and her meat must bee heating: she may drink sweet wine; labour and exercise is very good for her. Shee must not sleep so long as usually she did; likewise she must avoid all passions of the mind.

*Syr. de quinq; radicibus, of Maydens-haire. Artemisia, Preparers.*

*Bbb*

*By xan-*



*Byzantium*, Agrimony and Maidens haire, *Oxymel composi-  
um*, water of Parsly, Dodder, Fennell, Baulm, Thyme,  
Mugwort, Wormwood, Penny-royall: A decoction with  
the roots of Fennell, Smallage, *Asarum, rubie tinctorum*,  
leaves of Smallage, Origan, Mug-wort, Savine, Penny-roy-  
all, Saffron, Cinnamon, seeds of Annise, Fennell, Carots,  
flowers of Elders, Rosemary, Buglosse, red Ciches: add to  
this straining *Oxymel composum*. The thick matter shall be  
made thin by attenuating medicines, the slimy matter  
shal be prepared by cutting and dividing medicines, because  
this matter is often times caused by grofs and slimy matter,  
which must in time be prepared: and for this very cause, a  
woman had need to be purged with these following me-  
dicines:

*Emptiers.*

The veine of the ankle bone must bee opened twice or  
thrice in every yeer, especially if the body abound with  
bloud. For by great store of bloud the obstruction is nou-  
rished. But the part from whence bloud must be drawn,  
must first be washed with the decoction of Mallows, Ca-  
momile, Mellilot, Lillies: for by this means the bloud will  
descend sooner to the lower parts. *Pillul. de agarico, Masti-  
china, Alephangina. Hier a simplex, Logodii, Dicolocynth. Diacath.*  
*Diaphanica. Benedicta laxativa, Electuarium eletcopi, Indum ma-  
jus. Pillul. Aggregativa, Fetida. de Sagageno, Alephangina. Agar.*

*Provokers of  
the months.*

The Triacle of *Andromachus*, Mithridate, with the decocti-  
on of Cinnamon, *Tripbera magna*, without any *Opium*, but  
with Cinnamon water. The Trochisks of Myrrhe are very  
good. Hypocras shall be made with white wine and Cin-  
namon: allay and mingle the decoction of *Eringus* here-  
with. Also the juice of *Eringus*, with white wine is good.  
Savine, and Dittany infused in wine. *Milium solis*, Savine,  
with white Wine. Cupping-glasses, with scarification  
shall be applyed to the share, hams, privities or hips, and  
so the bloud shall be drawne to the wombe. The lower  
parts shall be rubbed with a hot cloth, and the hips shall  
bee tyed very hard: quilts, fomentations, and sitting in  
baths

baths made with the decoction formerly specified : also a bath may be made with the flowers of Camomile, Mellilote, *Radice rubia tinctorum*, Hyssop, Baulme, Nepite; Majoram, leaves of Bayes, and also Bay-berries, roots of Fennell, Parsley, Calamint, Origan, Penny-royall, Rosemary, *Artemisia*, Berries of Juniper. A suffumigation of *Artemisia*, *Aristolochia*, Bay-berries, Juniper, Cinnamon, Cloves, *Cassia lignea*, Origan, Nepite, Frankincense, Storax, *Galbanum*. An oyntment for the lower part of the belly, of the mucilage of Lin-seed, Fengreek, fresh Butter, Marrow of the bone of a Hart, Oyle of sweet Almonds, Lillies, Rue, Savine. An oyntment of *Arthanite*, Oyle of Lillies, Bricks, Pepper. An emplaster of Southernwood, Savine, roots of *Cyclamen*, *Sagapenum*, Myrrhe, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponax*, *Storax*. A pessary ex oleo muscelino, Oyl of Tites, Harts-marrow, roots of Breome, dip Muske Cotton in these. Another pessary may be made with the herb Mercury bruised, Triacle, Mithridate, *Gentiana*, Beaver-stone, Myrrhe, Berries of Juniper, *Tryphera magna*, or else it may be made with Gumme Ammoniack, *Galbanum*, *Oppoponax*, *Sagapenum*, seeds of *Melanthium*, roots of *Cyclamen*, *rubia tinctorum*, *Nigella*, Savine, Harts-marrow. An emplayster may be made of the same: and the pessary must be then used, when the plaister is laid on. Such medicines as do provoke the terms, shall not be prescribed unto such as are newly recovered of a disease, nor unto such as feel no pain by the suppression; neither may they be brought down in those that are fat or under 14 years of age, or above 45, or in them that are with child, or that do give suck: also in them that have an ill juiced body, if it may be discerned that they have small store of blood, or that they be weakened by dayly diseases: also if they have lost great store of blood by bleeding at the nose or some other part: for then the blood shall rather be kept in: and if there be any humours that doe corrupt the blood, they shall be amended, if any of the former accidents hap-



happen, the months shall not be caused to flow, by any of the former medicines: but if there be plenty of humors, and that they are suppressed because of the thicknes thereof, or a slimynesse, or stopping of the wombs vessel, or parts round about it, or else by the thicknesse of the womb, the months shall then be provoked.

Correctors of accidents.

Milke, the white of an Egge well beaten; Oyle of Violets, and Roses, Rosewater. These assuage the scalding heat of the womb, if any such be caused by Pessaries or such like medicines; a linnen cloth must be dipped in them, and so laid to the neck of the womb when occasion shall require.

A more particular method serving for the cure  
of the suppression of the  
MONETHS.

A draught.

R *Diacath.* ʒvj. *Manna Calabrin.* ʒj. *syr. Artemisia.* ʒj. β, water of *Artemisia.* ʒiij.

A Julep.

R *syr. Artemisia.* ʒij. *syrup. de duabus radicibus.* *Byzantinus.* ana ʒj. water of Fennell, Parsley, Mother-wort, ana ʒiij.

A Potion.

R roots of *Asarum.* ʒβ, Fennell, Parsley, ana ʒj. β, Savine, M β, Nepite, Mij. β, of Mayden-haire, p. j. boyl these in water, q. s. unto ʒj. adde to the straining *syr. de quinq; radicibus.* ʒiij. This doth loosen the obstruction, and prepares the matter.

A Potion.

R roots of Fennell, Parsley, ana ʒj. *Aristol. rot.* ʒij. seeds of Annise, red Ciches, ana ʒij. β, Ray sins, the stones being taken out, ʒj. β, Savine, ʒj. β, Flowers of Borage, Buglosse, leaves of Nepite, *Artemisia.* ana Mj. Flowers of Elder, M β, Licorice, ʒβ, *Polypadii quercini.* ʒj. white and light Agarick, ʒiij. β. Ginger, ʒij. boyl these in water, q. s. unto ʒj. β, adde to the straining *Elect. elefcopi.* ʒj. *syr. Artemisia.* *Byzantini.* ana ʒj. β.

R *Elect.*

Rx *Elect. elefco*, ʒvj. *Benedictæ laxative*, ʒij. syr. *Artemisia*, ʒj. water of Nepite, ʒiij.

A draught.

Rx *Pillul. de Sagapeno*, *Masticinorum* *Fatidarum*, ana ʒj. of the best Cinnamon, ʒʒ. Beaver-stone, Savine, ana gr. xij. syr. *Artemisia*, q. l. made hereof 7. or 8. pills.

Pills.

Rx *Trochisc. de Myrrha*, ʒij. Cinnamon, Beaver-stone, ana ʒj. syr. *Artemisia*, of sweet wine. ana ʒii.

A draught.

Rx *Boracis*, *Coriicum* *Cassie* *Fistula*, ana ʒij. ʒ. roots of *Cyclamen*, Cinnamon, ana ʒʒ. Myrrhe, ʒj. Give ʒj. hereof with white wine.

A Powder.

Rx *Tripbera magna* without *Opium*, *Troch. de Myrrha*, ana ʒij. old Triacle, ʒj. Beaver-stone, ʒj. ʒ. wild Mints, roots of Dittany, Savine, Cinnamon, *Cassie lignee*, ana ʒi. conserve of Buglosse, ʒii. ʒ.

A mixture.

Rx *Troch. de Myrrha*, ʒiiii. roots of Dittany, ʒii. ʒ. Savine, ʒʒ. Beaver-stone, ʒii. Give ʒj. hereof with the water of *Artemisia*.

A Powder.

Rx roots of *Asarum*, ʒi. *Cyclamen*, ʒiij. leaves of Nepite, Mj. ʒ. Savine, ʒii. seeds of Parsley, *Milii solis*, ana ʒʒ. Carrowaies, ʒii. Licorice, ʒv. boyl these in a little white wine: adde to thj. of this straying syr. *Artemisia*, *de quinq; radicibus*, ana ʒi. ʒ.

A Potion.

Rx roots of Fennell, Smallage, Sparage, Broome, *Rubia tinctorum*, ana ʒi. the flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Elder, ana Mij. ʒ. leaves of Rosemary, *Artemisia*, Savine, Nepite, Bayes, ana Mij. ʒ. Baulm, Origan, ana Mj. seeds of *Linus*, Fengreek, ana ʒj. ʒ. seeds of Carrots, *Ammi*, ana ʒʒ. boyl these in an equal portion of wine and water untill the third part be consumed. The patient shall sit herein up to the navell, without provocation of sweat, because it doth hinder the purgation of the months. A Quilt shall be filled with *Artemisia*, and applyed to the privy part. And after she comes out of the bath, she may take the following medicine.

A Bath.



An Electu-  
ary.

Rx of Beaver-stone, ʒ i. Cinnamon, ʒ i. Michridate, ʒ i. ʒ, decoction of Cinnamon with Hypocras, ʒ iii. or else give it with the conserve of Rosemary-flowers.

A Fomentati-  
on.

Rx roots of Danewort, lb i. Elder ʒ v. roots of *Rubia tinctorum*, Flower-de-luce, ana ʒ ii. leaves of Sage, *Artemisia* ana M iii. boyle these in an equall quantity of wine and water, untill the third part be consumed, the hips shall be washed herewith morning and evening: the continuall use hereof is very good.

An Oyntment

Rx Oyl of white lillies, ʒ i. ʒ, of sweet Almonds, ʒ ii. Camomile, Hens-grease, ana ʒ ʒ, roots of *Asarum*, *aristol.* ana ʒ i. ʒ, anoynt the lower region of the belly, and that part of the side where the reynes lye.

An Injection.

Rx roots of Dittany, *Cyclamen*, ana ʒ iii. Fennell, Smallage, *Rubia tinctorum*, ana ʒ i. leaves of Sage, Nepite, *Artemisia* ana M j. boyl these in water q. f. untill the third part be consumed. Give ʒ iii. hereof with ʒ i. ʒ, of Beaver-stone; and gr. i. of Muske.

Another.

Rx Triacle, ʒ ʒ, Saffron, ʒ ʒ, juice of Savine, Dane-wort, with the water of *Artemisia*, ana ʒ iii.

A Pessary.

Rx Harts-marrow, ʒ i. ʒ, roots of *Rubia tinctorum*, *Nigella*, Bay-berries, ana ʒ i. Myrrhe, Beaver-stone, ana ʒ ii. *Cyclamen*, Savine ana ʒ i. ʒ, Oyle of Lillies. q. f.

Another.

Rx *Colocynth*, *Cyclaminis*, ana ʒ ʒ, *Nigella Gentiana*, ana ʒ ii, Triacle, ʒ ʒ, make hereof a Pessary with the juice of Savine, and tie a thred unto it to pull it out lest it stay too long.

A Suffumi-  
gation.

Rx *Trech. gallia muscata*, roots of *Rubia tinctorum*, *aristol.* ana ʒ i. Cinnamon, Cloves, ana ʒ ʒ, *Artemisia*, Nepit, Baulm, ana ʒ ii. Frankincense, Storax, *Galbanum*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, The vapor hereof must be received into the wombe by a pipe.

An

An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
too much suppression of the  
months.

**I**F the months be stayd, and the health is thereby impaired, we will go about the cure, otherwise not. If it bee caused by slimy and cold humors ( as commonly it happens ) such medicines as do heat & dry, shall be prescribed, but first of all, the superfluous humours shall be asswaged with lenitive medicines, and then made obedient unto nature, and expelled by a purge. Then such as provoke the terms, and open the mouth of the veins, shall bee prescribed. After all this is done, the blood shall be brought downward by opening of the *Saphena* vein, or by Cupping-glasses, which shall be fastned to the hams with scarification: the like may be also done with Baths, Lotions, and Pessaries, whereto such medicines shall be added as do asswage the pain, and allay the heat, if the Patient doe complaine thereof. And that the Pessarie doe not make an ulcer in the wombe, it must not remaine long in the body. After the Pessary is taken out, the place shall be washed with white wine, wherein Baulme and Penny-royall have been boyled. The cure must be begunne with gentle medicines, and then stronger by degrees shall be administred; if an obstruction be caused by too much fatnesse about the womb, she must eat sparingly, and use violent exercise; if the termes be suppressed because of sicknesse, or too much evacuation, or too long fasting, or spare dyet, they shall not be provoked except the former diseases be first cured. The best medicines for the provoking of the months, are ʒ i. of Beaverstone, drunk with strong wine, after she comes out of the Bath: *Dia calamintbes Ferneta*, troock *de myrrba*, *tryphera magna* without *Opim*.



*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
**MOTHER.**

**T**He stopping or choaking of the womb, or Mother, is a running back of the womb, or of malign vapors bred in the wombe, unto the higher parts, whereby the bowels, midriffe, and stomach, are sometimes so cruked, that they cannot be widened by breathing: for it seems in this disease, that the wombe is lifted up so high, that it drives the other members above it, unto the higher part; sometimes also the wombe is drawn toward one side. This disease hath some affinity with the falling sicknesse, swoounding, and apoplexy, because the speech is often taken away, and the party falls to the ground, or at least cannot indure to stand long: yet herein they differ, for in this disease there is no foaming at the mouth, neither are the eyes turned, or the sinewes stretched, which is never perceived in the Mother. And as in this disease they have the sense of hearing, so they do in like manner understand, & feel the least pain that doth touch them, though but very dully: yet in the falling sicknesse, they are destitute of all these. This disease also differs from the *Syncope* or swoounding, herein, because the pulse holds out, though it be but little, thin and faint; but in the *Syncope* the pulse beates not, and besides she that is in a swoound, lookes paler then they do that are troubled with the Mother, and a colder sweat over-spreads their bodies. If sweet odours be put unto her nose, they do much annoy the patient, but if they be laid to the wombe, they are present remedy.

*The part affected*  
 The womb is chiefly affected, through monstrous blood, or some other humor, oftentimes the seed it selfe is corrupted; and then draws a corrupt quality to the place, sometimes

sometimes it is affected by the consent which the wombe hath with the principall parts of the body, as with the brain, by the films of the back-bone, and sinews: with the liver, by the means of the middle veins; but with the heart, by means of the arteries: neither may it seem strange that the whole body is ill affected, when as the principall parts are affected.

*Signes.*

For the most part queasines of stomach and loathing of meat followeth, and yet without vomiting, because an evil vapor is conveyed from the wombe unto the bowels and stomach, which causeth all this; from hence also comes thick breathing, and if the vapor be carried to the Midriff, or if the wombe be very much swelled, it doth crush the Midriff and guts, by which crushing the parts are straitned, and there is danger of suffocation; in conclusion her heart doth fail her, her looks are heavy, although the pulse be nothing altered: if the pain get up into her head, sometimes she is disquieted with anger, sometimes with fear, and sometimes a deep sleep doth concur; the patient is on a sudden dumbe, her face looks pale, and she presently falls to the ground with her eyes shut. And although they have sense and motion, yet neither of them can be easily discerned, for they lie on the ground speechlesse, and move not at all. The extreame parts of the body are cold, which seems to be caused by the head, from whence it falls down into the shoulders, neck, arms, legs, and feet. Difficulty of motion comes withall, and a kind of resolution, yet it is soon shaken of when the disease declines; and their eyes after much heaviness are opened, their cheeks grown red, and the body waxeth strong, the wombe by little and little is loosned, and some moisture runnes out of the privy parts, their guts rumble, their mind, sense and motion is as perfect as ever they were when the fit is comming, a febleness of the legs takes

C c

her,



her, drowzinesse, lazinesse and palenesse of the face, and by degrees greater accidents come upon them. And when these symptoms do appear, then it can easiest be discerned what the disease is. For the milder symptoms have some affinity with the cardiacall passion, and melancholy, and therefore cannot be rightly discerned what the disease is: both these kinds of symptoms accompany this disease.

*The Causes.*

The cause of the Mother is menstruous blood corrupted, and an evill vapor breaking out from the womb, or else some impostume in the the womb. For the most part it is caused by the seed that is sent to the wombe, and therein detayned and corrupted. Sometimes it is caused by corrupt humors which remain there, for when these do putrefie in the womb, they do breed a noysome, and venomous quality. And it happens that from whence life ariseth, from thence also the deadliest bane of venome springs, and then is it an easy matter for venomous matter to be carried not only by veins and arteries, but also by secret breathing holes into the upper parts, and so disturbe their functions.

*Prognostiques.*

If the affect be long, and often comes upon the patient by fits like to the falling sicknes, although there be no apparent danger, yet every fit brings no small danger with it. It is confessed that many have recovered of this disease: yet most die either in the fit, or presently after the fit. Then the fit did last long, the sense and motion was taken away, the pulse did beate swift and disorderly, and at the length it ceased: lastly, a cold sweat is spread over the whole body, the breath failes: then a swoounding  
and

and death follows. The danger is not so great, if the spirits be not hurt; and there is lesse danger to be feared, if with their breath they have motion and sense. Even as the falling sicknesse comes by fits, so doth the Mother.

*A method serving for the cure of the stopping of*  
the MATRIX or MO-  
THER.

**T**He ayre must be temperate, not cold or very windy, they must abstain from such meats as do much increase the blood and seed, also they must eat sparingly. In like manner such meats as do breed windinesse, maligne and melancholy humors must be avoyded. They may not drink wine, except it bee allayed with water. And yet if there be danger of swoounding, they may drink wine. Moderate exercises are good, their sleep must be shorter then ordinary, the excrements must be voyded by art or nature, sadnesse must be avoyded.

*Syr. de quinq; radicibus, Oxymel squilliticum. decoction of petasites, Briony, Mugwort, Aristol. rot. Syrupus of Mugwort, water of Nepite, Mugwort, Dittany, Petasites.*

*Preparers.*

*Benedicta laxativa, Electuarium eleuscopi, Agaricus troch. Hierapicra, Diacoloc. Pillul. de Agarico, Fetida. Likewise a Clyster is good.*

*Empiers.*

Painfull ligatures of the lower parts, chiefly of the legs and hips, even untill they be nummed. The sides must be crushed hard with the hand downward, for by this meanes the wombe cannot get up. Also she shall be bound about with scarfs, frictions of the same part, and of the soales of the Feet, that the Spirits which are stirred up, might expell the obnoxious humors. Cupping-glasses shall be fastned to the share, and hips, but not to the

*Averters.*



upper parts of the belly, for then the womb would either be detained there or else drawn thither. Bagges and fomentations of Wormewood, Mugwort, Camomile, Penny-royal. Suffumigations of the feathers of Partridges, the soales of shoes, Goats-horne, Beaverstone, Pitch, the wick of a candle newly put out: for these stirre up the expelling faculty, which doth shorten the fit by expelling the hurtfull matter. Odours shall be put under the nose, being made of *Assa fetida*, Beaverstone, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*. These drive the wombe downward, because the womb cannot indure any stinking smell, when sweet favours refresheth it, as if it had the sense of smelling: and therefore *Lignum aloes*, Civet, *Gallia moschata*, *Alipta moschata*, Cloves, Oyle of white Lillies, wherein some Muske is put, do comfort the wombe: therefore the fume of these lastly mentioned, shall be received into the wombe by a tunnell. Sneezing medicines of Hellebore, and Beaverstone, doe suddenly break off the fit: for the womb returns to its proper seat, because the upper parts are too much stirred up & down: the patient may hold her breath, or else some body should blow up into her nostrils; in the suppression of the courses, the inward vein of the arm shall be opened, and then her ankle veine, or at the least Horse-leaches shall be used, or scarification: frictions of the inward part of the womb, as wel in the time of the fit, as when it is quite over, with a midwifes finger anoynted with the Oyle of white Lillies, wherein some Civet and Muske is dissolved; for hereby the obnoxious matter is expelled, and the matrice is drawn down to the lower parts.

Strengtheners,  
and correctors  
the malignant  
quality.

*Diacuminum*, seeds of Carrots, Beaver-stone, with the decoction of Mugwort in thinne wine, shall be given at distance of time. Sometimes her nose shall be stopped, and the breath kept in: for hereby the naturall heate being gathered together, doth comfort the part affected, and scatters the malign humor. A pessary of Cummin, Agarick,

Agarick, *Hiera picra*, Triacle, Mithridate, Pepper, Ginger, Ammoniack, Goose-grease, Storax, is very usefull and necessary. A Suffumigation of Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, *Lignum aloes*, *Ladanum*, *Trech. alipta*, *Gallia moschata*: this must be conveyed to the wombe, as the former was. Oyles of Spike, and Flower-de-luce shall be injected into the privy parts. An oyntment for the belly and loyns, of the oyl of Lillies, Nard, *Gallia moschata*, Cinnamon, oyl of Amber. A Pessary of *Ladatum*, *Alipta moschata*, Muske, Storax, Amber, Cinnamon, Cloves, *Lignum aloes*, oyle of Spike, Rose-water. An Emplayster of *Ladanum*, *Gallia alipta*, *moschata*, whereto a little Musk shall be added.

A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the MOTHER.

Rx roots of Angelica, Bryony, ana ʒvj. *Aristol. rot.* ʒiiij. leaves of Mercury, Mugwort, ana M i. ʒ. flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, ana M i. boyl these in water q. s. unto ʒi. ʒ. adde to the strayingning *Hiera logod.* ʒii. *Electuarii elefcopi*, ʒj. oyl of white Lillies, *Keirini*, ana ʒi. ʒ. of strong wine ʒiii.

A Clyster.

Rx syrup of Mugwort, *syr. de quinq; radicibus*, *Oxy-mellis simplicis*, ana ʒi. ʒ. the water of Mugwort, Nepite, ana ʒv.

A Julep.

Rx roots of Angelica, ʒʒ, Bryony, ʒv. Fennell, Parsley, ana ʒi. the seeds of Annise, Piony, ana ʒʒ. Nepite, Mugwort, ana M ʒ. Rayfins the stones being taken out, ʒi. Licoras, ʒiii. Damaske Prunes, *Sebesten* ana no. vj. *Polypodii quercini*, *sene Alex.* ana ʒi. white and light Agarick, ʒʒ, flowers of Borage, Buglosse, ana M i. Ginger, ʒi. ʒ. Cinnamon, ʒii. boyl these in water q. s. unto ʒj. adde to the strayingning *Benedictæ laxative*, *Elect. elefcopi*, ana ʒʒ, Give the Patient ʒiiij. hereof in the morning.

A Potion.

Ccc 3

Rx Elect.



A draught.

Rx *Electuarii telescopi*, ʒ iii. *Agarici troch.* ʒ i. water of Dittany, Nepite, Petasites, Syrup of Mugwort, ana ʒ i.

Pills.

Rx *Pillul. fatidarum*, *Hieræ diocoloc.* ana ʒ i. ʒ, Syrup of Mugwort, q. s.

Pills.

Rx *Pillul. de Sagapeno*, *fatidarum*, ana ʒ i. ʒ, of Beaverstone, ʒ ʒ, with the syr. of Mugwort, q. s. make hereof 8. pills.

Pills.

Rx *Hieræ diacoloc. pillul. aggregativarum*, ʒ i. *Assæ fetide* ʒ ʒ, of Beaverstone, gr. vj. make hereof 8 Pills, and give them to the Patient once in every week.

A draught.

Rx Triacle, Mithridate, ana ʒ i. ʒ, *Assæ fetide*, ʒ ʒ, the decoction of the seeds of Carrots, ʒ iii. Also the decoction of Petasites, Bryony, Licorice, roots of Angelica with Sugar may be drunk very often, because it is an especiall remedy against this disease.

A Vomit.

Rx oyle of white Lillies, ʒ ii. the decoction of cleansed Barley, ʒ ii. *Oxymellis squillitici*, ʒ i. ʒ. Give this lukewarm in the morning.

An Electuary.

Rx *Diamusci dulcis*, *Diambre*, *Aromatici rosati*, ana ʒ ii. Mithridate, ʒ i. Beaver-stone, ʒ ii. ʒ, roots of Dittany, ʒ i. conserve of Buglosse, ʒ i. syr. of Mugwort q. s.

A Powder.

Rx white Pepper, white Hellebore, ana ʒ ii. Beaver-stone, ʒ i. seeds of Rew, ʒ i. ʒ, put a small quantity hereof into the Patients nose.

A Pessary.

Rx *Calami aromatici*, wood Aloes, ana ʒ i. *Salis gemme & nitri*, ana ʒ i ʒ, dry Storax, ʒ ʒ, Muske, gr. ii. Rosewater and Vinegar ana q. s.

Trochisks.

Rx *Troch. galliæ muscate*, ʒ i. *alipie muscate*, ʒ i. *Calami aromatici*, dry Storax, Cloves, Mace, wood Aloes, ana ʒ iii. Muske, Civet, ana gr. vj. Rosewater q. s. make hereof Trochisks for a perfume. When necessity requires, one of these shall be cast into the fire, and the fume shall be received into the wombe by some convenient instrument for that purpose.

A Liniment.

Rx oyle of Lillies, Spikenard, ana ʒ i. ʒ, *Keirini*, ʒ i. Muske,

Muske, gr. v. *Gallia muscata*, Storax, ana ʒ β, mixe these, and use them about the privy parts and inward parts of the wombe.

℞ *Emplastrum ceronei*, ʒ ij. *Troch. gallie muscatae*, ʒ i. β, Cinnamon, leaves of Bayes, ʒ i. *Ladani*, ʒ i. β, Oyle of white Lillies q. s. apply this to the place about the privy parts. Also twice in every day, that the place and the womb it self shall be anoynted with the oyle of white Lillies, being first heat.

An Emplaster

An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
MOTHER.

IF there be any danger feared by the accidents, before the cause of the disease be opposed, they shall be taken away, the patient may be relieved partly by unfavory odours made with *Assa fetida*, Brim-stone, Pitch, Beaver-stone, snuffe of Candles, Feathers, and Asses hooves burnt, and partly by Pessaries, for either of these remove the cause; like also may be effected by sweet perfumes received into the wombe: for although evill savours are good against the disease, if they be received in at the nose, in like manner they are hurtfull, if they passe into the wombe. For some of these cause the womb so to swell, and lift it self upward, that it lies to the Midriffe for succour: and so by crushing the Midriffe doth hinder breathing. Also the chiefest part of the cure doth consist in hindering the malignant vapors that they ascend not to the heart; for this purpose frictions, and Ligatures of the lower parts are good. When the fit is over, then the cause of the disease shall be enquired after: for if it be caused by the suppression of the courses, they shall flow in their due season: If it be caused by being detained in the womb, and therein corrupted, such things shall be prescribed as will hinder the generation of the seed; or  
she



the may enjoy the company of man, or else the neck of the womb shall betickled with a womans finger, which must first be dipped in the Oyle of Lillies. If it be caused by other corrupt humors in the wombe, they shall first be digested, then made obedient unto nature, and at the first expelled by a purge, and the body strengthened. And for the better preservation of women from this disease, they must fast often, and exercise themselves in serious labors; they may likewise use Cummin-seed, Saffron, Cinnamon, seeds of Carrots and such like, with their meats.

*A method serving for the knowledge of*  
**THRITIS, or Joynt-**  
**GOWTE.**

**T**He Joynt-gout is a feebleness of the Joynts, and pain comming upon them at certain distances of time; for the most part it is caused by a Flux, which winds it self between the ligaments, films, and tendons of the Joynts: for in this disease the joints doe first receive the humor, which at the length doth insinuate into the filmes adjoyning. If the Gowt happen in the wrist, the Joynts of the fingers, or else in the Ligaments and brawn, it is called *Chiragra* or finger-Gowt; if it doth stick in the knee, then it is termed *Genogra*, or knee-Gowt: but it is called the Gowt of the hips, if the patient be pained above the hips, from whence it doth spread it selfe to the thigh, calves of the Leggs, and unto the end of the feet; yet this Gowt sticks not in the hip, but it is fastned above the hip, at the top of the buttock. If the Gowt doth stick in the feet, it is called *Podagra* or the feet Gowt, whether it bee in the ankles, soles of the feet, or the great Toes Joynt, wherefore every pain of the Joynts shall not be called the Joynt-Gowt, but only that which is caused by the feebleness of the joints, by  
reason

reason of their loosenesse, or widenesse of the passages, or de-  
flux of the humours: sometimes seizeth on the shoulder  
joynts, and turning joynts of the backbone, or chine.  
Sometimes not any knitting of the bones is free from this  
paine. Every other paine of the joynts hath one generall  
name, *Athritis*, or the joynt gout, and from hence may be  
gathered, that the affects of the joynts differ not in their  
whole kind, but onely in diversity of places affected.

*The part affected.*

The joynts, tendons, ligaments, and filmes of the parts of  
the body, which either knit or else environ the bones, are  
here affected, and sometimes the membranes are filled and  
stretched.

*The Signes.*

The patient is extremely tormented for a long space,  
when the disease doth first surprize the patient, yet the paine  
is but little, and the four kinds formerly specified doe arise:  
and then by the use of the evill dyet, almost all the Joynts,  
of the body doe suffer alike, sometimes not one part of the  
body is free from this disease. In the feet-gout, or hip-gout,  
for the most part no swelling doth appeare; but in the  
hand-gout, and knee-gout, a swelling, rednesse, and heate by  
extream paines are easily to bee perceived. Sometimes an  
inflammation is caused, and the appetite is overthrowne,  
and the patient is troubled with watchings, and a Fever.

*The Causes.*

The cause of every Joynt-gout is for the most part  
great store of phlegmatick humours, or some other humors  
overflowing in the greater veines, the Liver, and Head,  
so that the parts are therewith surcharged; and that these  
parts may likewise bee freed of this burthen, they doe  
cast these excrements upon the Joynts, ligaments, and

D d

tendons



tendons, and filmes, whereby they are filled, stretched and weakened. Sometimes these humours grow thick, and by the reason of the heat that is about those places, or by the force of medicines, they are as it were baked, & resume the nature of a sand-stone or gravell; and then a knotted gout is caused, wherein the joynts are wrested, and grow so crooked, that they cannot move. There be foure causes of this superfluity of humors, the immoderate use of strong wine, Venery, crudities, and feebleness of the parts. To these may bee added the relinquishing of accustomed exercises, and the suppression of usuall evacuation. This disease is an hereditary disease.

*Prognosticus.*

The pains of the feet-gout trouble the patient at the spring time, and Autumme. If this disease be not cured before the Patient comes unto his perfect growth, it will not be perfectly cured; yet in the younger sort there is some hope, if they doe use a moderate dyet, and keep their bellies loose, and doe keep themselves in action, but then the knotty gout must not be grown, because it will not admit of any cure. In this disease if a dysenterie, or laske doth happen to the Patient, he is presently eased. In the hip-gout the pain is greater then it is in any other kind of the joynt-gout, and it will last so much the longer, by how much the numbness, cold in the hips, legs and loynes is; also if they bee costive, and well grown in years, the disease will hardly leave them. It is a good signe in this kind of joynt-gout, if the paine fall into the lower parts from the loynes and hips. These two kindes of gouts bring with them the dropsey, and *Asthma*; and then these disease are incurable. Also both these kinds of gouts will return againe, although the Patient may imagine himself to be altogether freed of them.

A method serving for the cure of ARTHRITIS,  
or Joynt-GOWT.

**T**He aire must be temperate, and rather incline to heat and drynesse. Such meats as doe moderately nourish are good, and of these they must eat but sparingly. They may drink the water of Hony, or water wherein Cinnamon, or seeds of Annise have been boyled; they must avoid wine, especially strong wine. When the disease hath left them, they must use exercises, otherwise not. Their sleep must be moderate, for too long sleep doth cherish the disease. Their bellies must alwaies be kept loose. The use of Venery is hurtfull, and in conclusion, let them avoid all perturbations of the mind.

*Oxymell simplex, Mel. rosatum. Syr. Stachados. Syrup* of the juyce of Borage. Waters of Betony, Wormwood, Borage. Wee must here abstaine from all things that open and have Vineger in them, for vineger is an enemy to the Sinewes. If there be too much blood, and at the first time of the diseases seazing on the patient, the veine of the shoulder, on that side the paine is resident shall be opened; but if it bee in the lower parts, then the hamme or ankle veine shall bee opened, for this takes away the paine of the hips. Also that veine that goes to the ring finger or little finger, shall bee opened. Yet if the hands and armes be pained, the hamme veine on the same side shall bee opened. An electuary of the juyce of Roses, *Benedicta laxativa*, *Elect. Eleoscopi*, *Diambiyh.* with *Rhab.* *Diacath.* *Pillula coccia.* *Petida.* *Aurea.* *de Sagapeno.* *de hermodactylis majores.* *Aribetice.* *de oppopznace.* *Arabic.* *Hiera picra.* *Agarico.* *Troch. Rhab. myroball. Kebuli.* *Turbith.* Conserve of the manifold infusion of Roses, a decoction of the roots of *Ajaram.* *Stachas.* *Herba paralytica.* Ivy, Sene, Polypody, Agarick, *Myrobal. Citrini Kebuli.* Centory the lesse, seeds of Annise, Fennill, to these *Benedicta laxativa* & *Elect. eleoscopi*, shall

Preparers.

Emptiers.



shall be added. Clysters are effectually in the pain of the hips, and of the upper parts, because they doe draw back the humors, and do refresh the part that is faint, by gentle oyles communicated to the members. And seeing this disease is not onely caused by one humor, therefore the cure ought to be answerable to the humors.

*Averters.*

A vomit with the decoction of Radish-roots, Orange, seeds of *Asarum*, Broome-flowers, Syrup *Acetosi simplicis*, *Oxymelle simplicis*, *Squillitico*, and luke-warme water. Cupping-glasses are good for the pain in the hips, if they be first applyed to the upper parts, from whence the humours did fall into the hips, after that the Cupping-glasses shall be removed to the part affected, Frictions, Ligatures, provokers, of Urine and sweat, potentiall cauteries of unslaked lime, *Mel anacardinum*, Sope, Niter, *Euphorbium*. Or else of *Cantharides*, the heads and wings being cut off, Staves-acre, leaven, *Mel anacardinum*; or else a plaister made with the roots, and leaves of *Iberis*, and grease. All which are effectually for the cure of this disease. Repelling medicines must bee avoided, because they strike the humorus inward, and here detaine them, whereby the disease is caused.

*Affwagers of pain.*

Oyle of Elders, Almonds, Cammomile, Mulleyn flowers, and mans grease are very good in the hip-gowr. Or else the roots and flowers of Mulleyn macerated in red wine for the space of 24 houres and then distilled; after this a wet cloth shall be dipped in the liquor, and shall be applied hot to the part affected. Also the part may bee anoynted with the aforesaid Oyle, likewise the Oyle of Spike is very much commended. An unguent of the former Oyles, the fat of a Fox, Swine-grease, Butter, Oyle of Turpentine. Cataplasmes may be made with the roots of *Althea*, Barley flowers, and Swines-grease or else with the roots of *Althea*, meale of Linseed, Fengreeke, Barley, flowers of Mellilote, Cammiomile, Wormewood, Ivy, crummes of Bread, Oxes-dung, seeds of Poppy, a small quantity of

*Opium*

*Opium*, Oyles of Cammomile, Foxes, Roses, with Goats Milke. Or else Linseed and Fengreeke may be boyled in water and Vineger, and a small quantity of the Mucilage shall be extracted, which if it be mixed with Hony, shall be applied to the part affected. A cerot of Frankincense, *Gallbanum*, Saffron, Ammoniack, Vineger, Rosin, Waxe and Oyl of Roses. The medicines that assuage the paine must bee stupefiers, unlesse the pain be very great. And after the use of stupefactive medicines, moderate heaters shall bee used; otherwise the member would be too much weakned by the distemper that is left behind.

Strengtheners.

Treacle, Mithridate, *Diacorallum*, the decoction of Broome, roots of *Cyna*, *Guajacum*. An oyntment of the oyle of Foxes, Spikenard, Cammomile, Lillies, Bayes, Roses, Tiles, *de euphorbia*. An unguent of the decoction of earth-wormes, Sage, Nepite, Tormentary, Broome, *Aristol.* Fox, *Unguentum Agrippæ*. *Marratium*, Aragon, Goose-grease, Swines-grease, oyls of Foxes, Cammomile. A bath of the Berries of Iuniper, flowers of Cammomile, Mellilote, roots of Dane-wort, leaves of Bayes, Sage, Rosemary, Origan, Wormewood, Betony, Roses, Dane-wort. The part affected shall be washed with a sponge dipped in this liquor, and afterwards it shall be anoynted with mans-grease and *Petroleum*. A cerot may be made with the Oyls of Cammomile, Dill, Worms, Praverstone, whereto some Brimstone shall be added. Cataplasmes also may be made of the flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot, leaves and roots of Marshmallowes, Fengreek, Cummin, and Linseed, and the aforesaid Oyles. An Emplaister of the flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot, Sage, Penny-royall, flower of Fengreek, Gumme Ammoniack, *Oppoponax*, *Sagapenum*, Oyles of Elder, Rue, Foxes, Cammomile, Bayes, Turpentine, Pitch and Wax, *Emplastrum Johannis de Vigo*. Such medicines as doe resolve too much, must be avoyded; lest the thin humors being scattered, and the thick left behind, it be turned into a hard substance.



A more particular method serving for the cure of

ARTHRITIS, or Joint-  
GOWTE.

A Clyster.

Rx Radicum acori, Polypodii quercini, ana ʒ i. Agarici, ʒ β; leaves of Sage, Bayes, Mallows, Rew, Centory the lesse, St. Johns wort, ana M i. β, flowers of Cammomile, Mellilot, ana M i. seeds of Annise, ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. unto lb i. β, adde to the straying *Electu. elefcopei*, *Diaturbith* with *Rhab.* ana ʒ v i. oyle of Rew, Cammomile, Elder, ana ʒ i.

A Vomit.

Rx *Oxymellis simp.* et *squillit.* ana ʒ ij. lukewarm water, ʒ ij. common Oyle, ʒ i.

A Julep.

Rx *Oxymellis simplicis*, Syr. *Stachados*, *Mellis rosati*, ana ʒ i. waters of Fennill, Parsly, Betony, ana ʒ iiij.

A Potion.

Rx roots of *Asarum*, ʒ iiij. Smallage, ʒ ij. *Chamaepitys*, Endive, St. Johns-wort, Sage, ana M i. seeds of Annise, ʒ vi. seeds of Melons, ʒ v. *Hermadactylorum*, ʒ i. β, leaves of Sene, bastard Saffron bruised, *Polypodii quercini*, ana ʒ v. of white Ginger, ʒ ij. boyle these in water q. s. unto lb i. β, adde to the straying of fine Sugar, ʒ ij.

Pills.

Rx *Pillul. Fetidarum*, de *Sagapeno*, *Cochiarum*, ana ʒ i. *Rhabal. Eti*, *Mirobal. Indorum*, ana ʒ β, make hereof 7. or 8. Pills.

A Vomit.

Rx roots of *Asarum*, ʒ β, seeds of Orange, Water-creffes ana ʒ iiij. seeds of *Asarum*, Rocket, ana ʒ ij. roots of Radish, ʒ i. boyle these in water q. s. untill halfe bee consumed, adde unto ʒ v. of this decoction *Oxymellis squillitici*, ʒ i. Oyle of Cammomile, ʒ vi. Give it lukewarme.

An electuary.

Rx of preserved bastard Pellitory, ʒ iiij. preserved Ginger, ʒ i. β, *Diatriion-piperis*, ʒ iiij.

Bolus.

Rx *Elect. elefcopei*, *Diaturbith* with *Rhab.* ana ʒ iiij. β, Electuary of the juyce of Roses, ʒ i. of fine Sugar. q. s.

Rx roots

Rx roots of *Ruscus*, Sperage, ana 3 i. *Strachados Arabice*, *Herba paralytica*, of Iva, and M i. seeds of Annise ; Smallage, ana 3 β, scraped Licorice, 3 iij. β, *sene Alex. Polypodii quercini*, bastard Saffron bruised, 3 v. boyle these in water q. f. unto 1 β i. β, adde to the straying *Elect. elescopi*, *Benedicta laxativa*, ana 3 v. Electuary of the joyce of Roses, 3 i. β.

A Potion.

Rx roots of Danewort, 1 β i, Sage, M iij. Hyssop, Pennyroyall, Wormewood, ana M ij. one or two roots of Rape, flowers of Cammomile, M ij. Linseed, 3 ij. fruit of Juniper, 1 β, boyl these in water wherein a Fox hath been boyled : adde hereto Brimstone, Allome, ana 3 vi. after the Patient comes out, he must sweat.

A Bath.

Rx of Mithridate, Triacle, 9 ij. water of Cinnamon, q. f. the Patient must drinke hereof before, hee comes out of the bath.

A draught.

Rx the oyle of Tiles, *Petrolei*, ana 3 ij. oyle of Cammomile, Foxes, Turpentine, Elder, ana 3 iij. *Unguenti Agrippe* ; fat of a Cat of the Mountane, ana 3 β. fat of a Dog, 3 i. β.

An Ointment.

Rx oyle of Wormes, 3 i. *Galbani*, 3 i. Beaver-stone, 9 ij. β, Nutmeg, Sage, ana 9 ij. β, Mans fat, dyle of Turpentine, ana 3 β.

Another.

Rx oyle of Elder, 1 β, herein boyle of the roots of Danewort, bruised 3 iij, add to the straying of Mans-fat, 3 ij. oyl of Foxes, *Petrolei*, ana 3 β, *Galbani*, *Ammoniacki*, ana 3 vi. Hens-grease 3 i. β, Waxe and Vineger q. f.

Another.

Rx roots of Dane-wort, 3 iij. three roots of Rape, seeds of Fengreek, 3 i. β, boyle these in water q. f. untill they be soft ; then adde hereto Cow-dung, 3 iij. Honey q. f.

A Cataplasme

Rx of Pitch 3 iij. Brimstone, 3 i. β. oyle of Roses q. f. spread this upon a Hot sheeps-skinne.

An Emplaster.

Rx roots of *Althea*, 3 ij. flowers of Cammomile, M ij. red Roses, leaves of Wormewood, Majoram, Coleworts, ana M i. two sorts of Rape of an equal bignesse, boyle these in good Beere or Ale q. f. adde of wheat and barley meale, Linseed,

A Cataplasme.



seed, Fengreek, ana ʒ β, oyle of Tiles, ʒ iij, oyles of Foxes, Cammomile, wherein Wormes have been boyled, ana q. s. the yolke of one Egge, Saffron, ʒ β. This doth assuage the paine.

*An appendix serving for the cure of A R-  
THRITIS, or Ioynt-  
GOWT.*

**F**irst, the ill humors shall be evacuated by a Clyster, and they that remaine behind, shall bee made obedient to nature, and then sent downward with a purge: but they must bee hindred from running to the part affected; for which purpose a vomit given two or three dayes together is good; but before they doe take these, they shall use sundry kindes of nutriment, especially such as are liquid and fat. Then if the paine continue, it shall be asswaged, but stupefactive shall not be used, unlessse great necessity doe require, when as too much heat and paine afflict the patient, and then an oyntment shall be made with the oyle of Roses and Cammomill, ʒ i. *Opii*, gr. ij, Waxe and Vineger q. s. after that the stupefactive medicine is taken off, the grieved part shall be washed with hot beere, and hee shall drinke the syrup of Roses and Quinces with Plantane water: for these doe hinder the humors running to the part affected. At the length the brain and part affected shall be strengthened, and the distemper that is left behinde amended.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the  
FRENCH-POX.*

**T**He French pox is a contagious disease, which for the most part comes by the immoderate use of Venery. In  
for.

former times it was not known, but now it rageth and raigneth in most parts of the world. The beginnings of this disease are small, but in time it doth increase, and doth not only vitiate the humors and spirits, but also the sinews, membranes, tendons, flesh, and bones. In brief, it doth pervert the temperature and substance of the whole body; whereby diversitie of excrements are generated. This disease hath taken its name from the efficient cause thereof.

*The part affected.*

The Liver is chiefly affected, as may appear by the naturall actions that are hurt; for the concoction of the stomach is evill, the braine and other parts are corrupted, whereby the colour of the body is changed, and the whole body is made unable for any exercise. And besides, they have not that propension to Venery as they formerly had. This disease doth assault rather the naturall spirits then the vitall or animall: and these being corrupted, the Liver must needs be corrupted. In this disease, the haire do fall from the head, although the patient have no scabs about the privy parts, or ulcers, or running of the reins.

*Signes.*

In the beginning of the disease botches do grow in the groins: in the privie members, and passages of the urine, there be little pushes, which in time doe send out clammy corrupt blood, and do cause heat of the urine, and strangury. Also the seed doth shed of its own accord. Sometimes very small spots, sometimes yellow, another while red and wanne, like unto a lindle, doth appear in the upper part of the body, which will stick as close to the Patient as the disease doth. A pain in the sinews, heaviness of the head, a loading pain in the shoulders and neck, doth accompany this disease. Sometimes the aforesaid spots go

Ecc

away



away for a time, but return againe, bringing with it such virulent matter, as doth eat into the flesh, whereby foule and poysonous matter runs over the whole body. Likewise these kinds of stinking pusshes do grow in the mouth, throat, nose, and jawes, and in time these parts are exulcerated, because they are tenderer then the rest: afterwards the head, arms, and thighes are extreemly pained and exulcerated; the haire of the head and beard do shed, and they take no rest in the night. These pains are rather felt in the limbs, then in the joynts; in the aforesaid places likewise hard swellings arise, which cannot easily be dissolved, especially they doe appeare in the forehead, the head, the middle part of the shoulder, and forepart of the leg, which at the length become great ulcers, which do corrupt the bones, and trouble the Patient in the night season, because the sinews, membranes, ligatures and bones are diminished; the bones also are sometimes in like manner eaten up as the flesh is, and the membranes are plucked from the bones, and are pricked by the sharpnesse of the humors. All these signs do not meet in every one.

*The Causes.*

The cause of this disease is a malign and filthy quality, which is communicated to other parties, only by a touching; but for the most part, it is communicated to the Patient in the act of Venery, because the privy parts have a thinne and rare substance. Also this quality is communicated to the mouth and skinn by the clothes. And by how much the liver is weaker, by so much is this disease more vehement; whereby it happens, that when as many doe couple with an infected person, all are not alike tainted, they that have their naturall strength perfect, are not so suddenly corrupted with this contagion. For even as it is in the Plague, every man sucks in the infected aire, yet al are not alike infected, because the vitall spirits are stronger in some then in others.

Prognostiques.

At the first the disease will admit of cure, but afterward it is incurable. This disease is contagious, and may be gotten only by touching an infected person. They that are troubled with this disease, are at the length consumed with too frequent watchings, continuall cresses and Feavers. This disease is hereditary, and doth bring with it a consumption, dropie, and *Asthma*, if the Liver be very much affected.

A method serving for the cure of the  
FRENCH-POX.

THE ayr must be moderately hot, for cold doth hinder the operation of the medicines. The Patients must eat sparingly, and their bread must be twice baked, or else the crust of bread. They may eat the flesh of Hens, Pullets, Larks, Pheasants, and they are better roasted then sod. But when they take a purge, sod is best. Such meats as do breed cold and grosse humours, winds, or that do inflame the blood, are forbidden. They must exercise themselves untill they sweat, for hereby the moist matter is expelled, their sleep must be moderate, the belly must be purged once in every week, especially if the offending humours be grosse; for thinner humors will be avoyded by sweat. They must shun all perturbations of the mind, and also abstain from Venery.

*Oxymel simplex*, *Syr. Acetosum*, *Syr. of Fumitory*, Endive, Violets, Buglosse, Hops. Waters of Succory, Violets, Borage, Endive, Buglosse. *Syr. Stachadus*. *Oxymel simplex* and *Squilliticum*, a syr. compounded of Fumitory. The former shall be used, if the abounding humors be cholerick, which doth happen unto those that have virulent ulcers. If the humors be phlegmy, the latter shall be used.

Preparers.



## Empiers.

Pillul. aggregativæ, Arithetica, de hermodactylis, Caccia, de Fumaria, de agarico, de colocynth. Fetida, sine quibus esse nolo, Aurea, assuaret, de Rhab. de quinque generibus myrobal. Hiera paccii, Elect. eleuscopi, Lapis lazuli, Diasena. Confect. hamech, Electuarium de psyllio. Electuarium Indum majus. Diaprunum simplex. A decoction of Sena. A Potion of the roots of Asarum, Flower-de-luce, Sperage, Fennell, Dittany, Tormentill, Aristolochia, Succory, Betony, Fumitory, Agrimony, Scabious, Scolopendria, Dodder, rinds of Dane-wort, Thyme, Epithymon, seeds of Anise, Fennell, flowers of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, Sene, Agarick, Polypodium, black Hellebore, Rhab. Hermodactylis, Myrobal. Citrinis, Kebulis, Licorice, Rayns, Cinnamon, Cloves, Ginger, Syr. of Fumitory, de Epithymo, Oxymelle simplici. Hermodactyli, Colocynthis, Agarick, Sene, Epithymon. A Clyster of the decoction of Nettles, Buglosse, Alibea, Malloves, Fumitory, Hops, Camomile, Mercury. If the body be full, and the disease is newly come upon the patient, the Liver-vein shall be opened, especially if the patient be very much pained. Purging medicines must be often reiterated, because there is great plenty of vicious humors. Give this potion for the space of four dayes in every week, and that for the space of seven weeks. The other dayes they may use the electuary appointed in the potion.

Expellers of  
the contagious  
humors.

A potion to provoke sweating, of the wood Guaiacum, is a soveraine remedy against the French-pox. A decoction of the roots of Cyna, Sarsaparilla, Apior, is good. Anoynt the ulcer with the froth of the decoction of Sarsaparilla, Guaiacum, and Cyna. Triacle water, or Triacle distilled with Aqua-vine. An Electuary of Triacle, Michridate, roots of Angelica, Tormentill, Pimpernell, Wormseed, rinds of the wood Guaiacum, seeds of Juniper, Piony, Carduus Benedictus, Scabious, St. John's-wort, Dittany, Gentiana, Orange-pils, Tamariscus, juice of Scordium, Cinnamon, Myrrhe, Frankincense, Conserve of Buglosse, Saceba-

*rum rosatum*, syr. of Orange-pils. An unguent to cause sweat, may be made of Myrrh, Mastick, Frankincense, roots of Elecampane, Triacle, Mithridate, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, Gumme Ammoniack, *Unguentum martiatum*, oyl of Bayes, Lillies, Camomile, Almonds, Turpentine, Butter, Hens, and Swines-grease. A Cerote of the former matter, where-with the body shall be clothed if occasions draw the Patient forth of the dores. An oyntment of the former ingredients, with Quicksilver, oyle of Turpentine, Philosophers, Petroleum, and *Aqua-vite*. *Unguentum Johannis de Vigo*, is very good against this disease. A perfume of *Ladanum*, *Olibanum*, Mastick, Frankincense, Aloes, Storax, *Sandaracha*, *Cynabrio sublimato*, roots of Dittany, Wormseed, Mace, Cloves, *Calamus aromaticus*, *Guaiacum*, Bay-berries, Triacle. This may be applyed unto certaine parts of the body, namely, the legs and arms, if they be pained, or ulcers arise into those parts.

*Letificans Galeni*, Triacle, Mithridate with the conserve of Buglosse, *Diatrion sandali*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Diarrhod.abbatis*, Orange pils preserved, *Myrobal. conditi*, Conserve of Buglosse, flowers of Sage, roots of Elecampane, *Acorus*, flowers of Rosemary. An Epitheme for the heart, *Ex speciebus Diamargariti, Sandalis, Baulme*.

Strengtheners.

A more particular method serving for the cure  
of the FRENCH-POX.

Rx of common roots, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , seeds of Parsley, *Alisander*,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{iii}$ , Calamint, M ij. Licorice,  $\mathfrak{z}\beta$ , boyl these in water, q. s. unto  $\text{lb j.}\beta$ , adde to the strayingning *Oxymellis compositi*,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{iiij}$ . Give this before the Patient doth enter into the Bath.

A Potion.

Rx syr. of Fumitory,  $\mathfrak{z}\text{iiij}$ . of Hops, *Oxymellis simplicis*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\text{i}$ . water of Fumitory, Hops, lowre Sorrell, ana  $\mathfrak{z}\text{iiij}$ .

A Julep.



*A draught.*

R leaves of Sene, *Polypodii quercini*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.  $\beta$ , *Myrobal. Indorum*,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij, Raylins,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. boyl these in  $\mathfrak{z}$  xvj. of Buglosse water, untill the third part be consumed.

*A Potion.*

R of sowre Sorrell, Elecampane, Danewort, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. Wormewood, p i. Succory, Buglosse, Borage, Fumitary, Scabious, Dodder, Mayden-hair, Betony, Sage, Agrimony, ana M  $\beta$ , Majoram, Rosemary, ana p i. *Epithymi*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , *Stachados*, *Arabici*, bastard Saffron bruised, leaves of Sene, Licorice, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  vj. Agarick,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i.  $\beta$ , seeds of Melons, Annise, Fennell, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, boyl these in posset-drink, unto  $\mathfrak{fbi}$ .  $\beta$ , add to the straying *Oxymellis simp.*  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. of fine Sugar q. s. the passages shall be opened by this potion, before they take any stronger medicines.

*Another.*

R roots of sowre Sorrell,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. roots of Elecampane,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. Betony, Dodder, Scabious, Agrimony, Borage, Buglosse, *Scelopendria*, Cetrach, ana M  $\beta$ , seeds of Annise, Fennell, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. *Polypodii quercini*, leaves of Sene, bastard Saffron bruised, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. of black Hellebore,  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii.  $\beta$ , Thyme, *Epithymi*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Raylins the stones being taken out,  $\mathfrak{z}$  i. Licorice  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , boyl these in water q. s. unto  $\mathfrak{fbi}$  j.  $\beta$ , adde to the straying fine Sugar q. s.

*A draught.*

R *Electuarii elefcopti*, *Cassia*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Electuary of the juice of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , water of Fumitary,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

R *Diacath. Confect. hamech*, ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij. *Sp. Diacarbami*,  $\mathfrak{z}$   $\beta$ , Electuary of the juice of Roses,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. syr. of Fumitary,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j. water of Hops,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

*Pills.*

R *Pillul. Indorum*, de *Rhab. aggregativarum*, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  i. *Diagridii*, gr. iij. syrup of Fumitary, q. s. make 8. pills hereof.

*Pills.*

R *Agarici troch.* *Pillul. aggregativarum*, de *Hermodylitis*, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  j. *Diagridii*, gr. v. syrup of Fumitary, q. s.

*A draught.*

R of Triacle, Mithridate, ana  $\mathfrak{D}$  j.  $\beta$ , syr. of Orange-pils,  $\mathfrak{z}$  j, the decoction of water-Germander,  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij.

*A Barb.*

R flowers of Camomile, Mellilot, Majoram, Pellitory of the wall, Fetherfew, Mugwort, Fennell, Calamint, leaves of

of Bayes, Ivy, Agrimony, Horehound, Rosemary, ana  $\text{pi}$ . roots of Sorrell, Dane-wort, Fennell, ana  $\text{z}$   $\text{iiij}$ . fruits of Juniper,  $\text{lb}$   $\text{j}$ . Fengreeke,  $\text{lb}$   $\beta$ , seeds of Annise, Fennell, ana  $\text{z}$   $\text{i}$ . the seeds and roots must be bruised, and the hearbs chopped small.

Rk scrapings of the wood *Guaiacum*,  $\text{lb}$   $\text{j}$ . water  $\text{lb}$   $\text{xii}$ . after the wood is macerated herein for the space of 24 hours, it must be boyled and then strayned, this must be their drink at dinner and supper.

Rk of the former decoction, whereto  $\text{z}$   $\text{iiij}$ . of fresh scrapings shall be added, boyl these in  $\text{lb}$   $\text{xij}$ . of water, unto  $\text{lb}$   $\text{ix}$ . This drink they may use for the space of 20, 40, or 60, days: sometimes in this space they shall be purged; and the wood *Guaiacum*, *Colocynthis*, and *Hermodyli*, shall be mixed with it.

Rk of Swines greafe, *Unguenti martiati*, Hens-greafe, ana  $\text{z}$   $\text{i}$ . oyle of Lillies, Bayes, ana  $\text{z}$   $\text{ii}$ . Quicksilver,  $\text{z}$   $\text{vj}$ . *Olibani*, Mastick, Sage, *Stachar*, Lithargie, ana  $\text{z}$   $\text{j}$ .  $\beta$ , *Aqua-vita*,  $\text{z}$   $\text{ij}$ . oyl of Bayes,  $\text{z}$   $\text{iiij}$ . the Quicksilver shall be beaten in a mortar with the greafe, and the rest shall then be added to them.

Rk oyl of Cammomile, Spike, Lillie, ana  $\text{z}$   $\beta$ , oyl of Saffron,  $\text{z}$   $\text{ii}$ . Swines greafe not salted,  $\text{z}$   $\text{ii}$ . *Euphorbia*,  $\text{z}$   $\text{i}$ . Frankincense,  $\text{z}$   $\text{iiij}$ . oyl of Bayes,  $\text{z}$   $\beta$ , wormes washed in wine,  $\text{z}$   $\text{i}$ . juice of the roots of Danewort, sowre Sorrell, Elecampane, ana  $\text{z}$   $\beta$ , Squinancy, *Stachar*, Fetherfew, ana  $\text{pi}$ . of the best wine,  $\text{lb}$   $\text{i}$ . boyl these over a gentle fire, untill the wine be consumed: adde to the straying of the Lithargy of Gold  $\text{z}$   $\text{ij}$ . Turpentine,  $\text{z}$   $\text{j}$ . Wax,  $\text{q}$ .  $\text{f}$ . make hereof a Cerote, adde at the length to this Cerote, of the decoction of Storax,  $\text{z}$   $\text{iii}$ . then take it from the fire, and stirre it with a stick, untill it be luke-warme, then adde hereto Quicksilver  $\text{z}$   $\text{ij}$ . and stirre them untill they be all very well incorporated.

Rk oyle of Bayes,  $\text{z}$   $\text{ij}$ , *Petroki*,  $\text{z}$   $\beta$ , Quicksilver,  $\text{z}$   $\text{ij}$ . *Cinabarii*,  $\text{z}$   $\text{ij}$ . Swines-greafe neither salted nor melted,  $\text{lb}$   $\beta$ , dis-

A Potion.

Another.

An Unguent.

A Cerote.

An Unguent.



dissolve first the grease, and then *Cinabrium*, and the rest.

*An Appendix serving for the cure of the  
FRENCH-POX.*

**I**F the Patient were never troubled with this disease before, the cure is with more ease performed: First therefore a veine shall be opened, and the grosse humors made thinne by preparers, and the pores of the body shall be closed up, and afterwards expelled by a purge. And then they shall go into the Bath, and there sweat continually, wiping off the sweat as it doth come out of the body; but before they enter into the Bath, they must drink a Potion which doth open the pores wherein the matter of this disease doth lye; the decoction of the roots of Fennell, Elecampane, Lintels, Rayfins, and Figs: adde unto  $\text{ʒiij.}$  of this decoction, of Triacle or Mithridate,  $\text{ʒij.}$  they must sit in the Bath for the space of three hours, sweating continually, and wiping it off as fast: at the prescribed time they must go to bed and there sweat. And if no good can be done on the Patient this way, because the disease hath taken too deep root, a vein shall then be opened, and after they be purged, the decoction of the wood *Guaiacum*, or *Sarsaparilla*, or roots of *Cyna*, shall be given unto them, this decoction must be given unto them hot. After the receiving of this, they must lay them down to sweat, & be covered very warm with cloths. After they have wel sweat, they may walk in a chamber, but must not eat any thing for the space of five houres after. If by reason of poverty they cannot buy this decoction, or because of urgent occasions that may call them abroad they cannot use them, unctions with Mercury shall be used: sometimes this disease goes away in a fume, being opposed by perfumes; yet they shall not be

u sed.

sed, unlesse the other will not prevaile. If there be any that cannot stay at home, because of some urgent occasion, an oyntment shal be laid upon a linnen cloth, and so laid to the joynts, which shall bee renewed twice in every weeke. For this purpose therefore, *R. Emplastri de melliloto* ℥ss, quicksilver ʒij. oyle of Bayes, *Petrolei*, Turpentine, ana q.s. make hereof a Cerate. If the tumors that be swelled are hard, roots of *Alibea*, Figs, Fenegreek, boyled in wine, and a small quantity of Hens grease added thereto, will make a good playster for to soften it, and assuage the swelling.

*A method serving for the knowledge of the*  
**PLAGUE.**

**T**He Plague is a disease which doth seize upon many, and is caused by an unusuall, and pernicious putrefaction; sometimes the constitution of our bodies is so different from the naturall temperature, that it is changed altogether into a pernicious & poysonous quality. Sometimes the disease is caused outwardly by some cause, viz. by corrupt and putrid exhalations, sometimes by dead carcases unburied, or by standing pooles, which stink above measure. Sometimes it is caused by the influence of the starres, and then it is the immediate hand of God, and then it is properly called the Pestilence: when it is caused by outward causes, it is called a pestilent Feaver, or Plague. Those Feavers which are caused by venome, are mortall, but not Pestilent, because they are not infectious.

*The part affected.*

The infectious ayre first gets into the heart, sucked in thither by the breath, because the ayre is subtile and thinne, and apt to get into the pores. First this ayre doth infect the vitall spirits, and then the radicall moysture, and at the length the whole substance of the body.



*Signes.*

When these corrupt humours doe disturbe the Patient, they doe tosse themselves very unquietly up and downe, and will not abide long in one place: Their appetite is taken away, and the members are very dull and heavy: also the head akes, for the most part head and stomach are both pained; and in brieft their strength failes them, and the spirits are decayed, especially the vitall spirits. The extreame parts are cold, but the inward parts, namely the heart, stomach, and lungs are very hot; they are for the most part very dry, and watchfull; yet they have a great inclination to sleepe: they loath all kindes of meate, and vomit up cholerick matter, and divers kinds of humors; their tongue is very foule, and their mouth bitter; their countenance is like theirs that are drunk, the urin for the most part is thick and smells not well; a hicket likewise doth disturbe the Patient, the pulse doth beat swift and faint, madnesse also and talking idley with amazednesse doth follow, and the fore-part of the belly is stretched: but the most assured signe of the Plague is contagion, which because it cannot at the first be perceived, the other signes must bee observed, especially it will bee worth the observation whether there be any botches in the groine, behinde the eares, or under the arme-holes. In some, purple-colour spots, or else little wheelks arise, sometimes they bee black, sometimes skie-coloured, especially when the disease is growne ripe; all these signes seldome or never meet in one and the same body. If the diseases cause be supernatural, these signes are so gentle, that a man can scarce perceive himself to be sick: for their appetite remaines perfit, they are not thirsty, no Feaver seizeth upon them, and yet their strength doth faile them on a sudden. The pulse is swift, little, and faint. They vomit much, and by too frequent vomiting death ensues.

*The Causes.*

The ayre tainted with a corrupt ayre, and conveyed to the

the heart by drawing of breath is the cause of this disease. For the infected ayre doth not onely weaken the humours and spirits of the body, but also the solid substance of the heart, because we are compelled to suck it in, and to entertain it in the inward closet of the heart, where first the spirits, then the humors; and lastly the solid substance of the heart, by the corruption of the venome is destroyed, and at the length the whole body. This corruption of the air is also caused by the stench of dead carcases, or by the excrements of men and beasts, or by standing stinking pools, or ill vapours, which arise out of the earth. Sometimes the disease it selfe is caused by some venemous quality bred in us, by corrupt, cholerick, melancholy, and phlegmy humors; and then the disease is somewhat like a tertian, or quartane, sometimes a quotidian Feaver; and then beside the corrupt humor of the body, they have a venemous and pestilentiall humor lurking in some parts & of the body: this is the cause that one man amongst a thousand, who lives in a clear ayre, is seldome or never sick of the Plague.

*Prognostiques.*

The Plague of all other diseases is most dangerous: for although the signes be good, yet suddenly the patient dies. The danger is the greater, if no pushes or carbuncles breake out in the body. And though they doe break out, yet if the patient be not thereby eased, nothing but death can be expected. It is also as dangerous, if the pushes having broke out, doe runne in againe. This disease is consummated and brought to its full ripenesse in 24. houres, but is not so soon cured; if a cold sweate arise on the body, and the face and eyes doe looke back, and the spirits are cast downe, and the Patient vomits extraordinarily, and the excrements that are voided be diversly coloured, it is a signe of death. They which talke idly with an amazednesse, a kind of convulsion and phrensie, for the most part die.



A method serving for the cure of the  
PLAGUE.

**T**He ayre must be rectified by sweet perfumes every day. They must eat sparingly in the beginning of the disease, besides that which they eat must bee cooling. The Broath of Hens and Pullets are good; the congealed Broth of Capons, Veal, with Raisins, and *Saccharum rosarum*. They may drinke water wherein Iuyce of Lemmons, and *Vinum granatorum* is dissolved. They must not by any means drink wine. In their Broaths, Borage, Buglosse, *Cardus benedictus*, flowers of Violets, Roses, seeds of Sorrell must be boyled. They must sleep with moderation, for by sleeping long, the corrupt matter and venome returnes againe unto the heart; the belly must be kept loose, and they must abstaine from Venery. Lastly, all perturbations of the minde must be avoyded.

Emptiers.

Rx *Syr. Rosarum solutivum*, syr. of Succory, with *Rhab. Diacath.* Eleatuary of the Iuyce of Roses, *Diaprunum solutivum*, *Pillule pestilenciales*. *Tripbera persica* *Rhab.* infused in the water of Endive, and the creame of Milk. Agarick, *Diasena*, *Confectio hamech*. A decoction of Thyme, *Epithymi*, leaves of Sene. Polypody, flowers of Violets, Borage, Buglosse, Angelica, with the sy. of manifold infusion of Roses. A Clyster of the broath of Hens, Capons, Veale, with Mercury, common Mallowses, and Marsh Mallowses, flowers of Violets, leaves of Lettuce. *Cassia fistula*, *Mel rosaceum*, and Oyle of Violets. Open a veine in the beginning of the disease, or when there is any suspition of it. If the blood doe offend in quantity or quality: it may the better be permitted, if the corrupt matter be not settled, or if the Patient bee tormented with such a pain & inflammation of the sides, as if the breathing were hindered, or the breast much stopped, but if the venom have corrupted the blood, and so it is spread through

through the whole body, a veine shall not be opened. But if it be lawfull to open a veine, as in some cases it may be permitted, a veine on that side where the paine is, shall be opened. If the paine be about the head, face, or neck, then the *Cephalica* veine shall be opened. If under the arme pits a heaue paine be felt, the *Basilica* veine: or if that appeare not, the *Median* veine shall be opened: if a heavinesse and loading paine be felt in the share, and thighs, the ankle veine shall be opened. At one time  $\frac{3}{4}$  iij of blood shall be taken from the Patient, if the humors are yet free from venom. Neither is there any danger of the exagitation of the humors, because this onely happens, when greater store of blood is taken out. If the disease begin with a scowring, or with vomiting, a veine shall not be opened. The body shall be emptied by a gentle Clyster, if the disease be not caused by plenty of blood: for it is then better to open a veine. And because the greater part of the humors are corrupted, as was formerly declared, therefore such purging medicines as are fit for the expelling of those humors, shall be prescribed. But loosing Medicines that are strong, shall in no wise be administred, because it would too much disturbe them.

A vomit is good in the beginning of the disease, especially if the stomack be too full, and corrupt humors are there in great abundance. Cupping-glasses and Horfleaches shall be layd to the thighs, privy parts, shoulders, and backbone, and unto those places where the pushes doe breake forth; and then especially shall this be prescribed, if a veine may not be opened; by this meanes there is some hope of drawing the pushes unto those places, where for the most part they doe breake forth; also unto the places that swell more then ordinary, great Cupping-glasses shall be fastned, that the force of the venome may be turned from the heart, and that it runne not in againe, as sometimes it doth. After a veine is opened, the Patient shall bee caused to sweat; and this may bee effected with the Decoction of *Petasites*,

*Averters.*



Expellers of  
the Venome.

sites, *Cardus benedictus*, Scabious.

*Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diamargaritum frigidum*, *Diatrion Sansalon*, *Confectio alchermes*. Triacle and Mithridate are good to prevent the danger. They that are affected, may drink the water of Sorrell and *Cardus benedictus*. Conserve of Borage, Buglosse, Roses, Sorrell, Water-lillies, Syr. of Violets, Lemmons, the juyce of Goose-berries, Sorrell, Buglosse. Pestilentiall pills. *Electuarium de gemmis*, *Lentiscans Gal.* *Diascordium Fracastorii*, *Tryphera saracenica*. *Electuarium de ovo*. A Potion of Scabious water, Pimpernell, Borage, Dragon, Mithridate, Triacle, Saffron. They that are infected, may drink the juyce of *Cardus benedictus*; in like manner the juyce and seeds of Oranges, and the rinds preserved are very good. If they be newly infected, a medicine to cause sweat, may be given them, of Triacle, Mithridate, Beaver-stone, Bay-berries, water of Tormentill, Scabious, Dragon, Pimpernell: this must be given after Phlebotomie. A Potion of the decoction of Lentills, Saffron in Honeyed water, with a small quantity of *Oxymel* is good. A Potion of the water of Endive, Fennell, Sorrell, Parsley, wherein the seeds of Parsley, dry Figges, and Lentils have beene boyled: adde hereto the syrup of the juyce of a sowre Orange: this Potion drives the pushes outward. The waters of Angelica, Tormentill, Sorrell, Pimpernell, Dittany, *Serpentaria* doe effect the like. Wash Bole armoy with Vineger, the roots of Tormentill, Angelica, Dittany, Wormwood, Bitter-wort, Pimpernell, Betony. Mastike, Saffron, *Aloes*, Myrrhe, Scabious, Sorrell, Rue. Macerate these in Wine and Vinegar, and cast the Vinegar upon a hot stone. The party infected must be ready to receive the fume hereof. Vnicornes-horne, Hartshorne. An unguent of the Triacle of *Andromachus*, Oyle of Scorpions, St. Johns-wort for the pushes and swellings. A Cataplasme of Barley meale, Honey, Triacle, roots of Lillies, Tormentill, Dittany, Figs, Salt, Leaven, Pigeons-dung, and Oyle of lillies. An Emplaster of Triacle, mixed  
very

very well with the juyce of Rue. A causticke of unslaked Lyme, Sope, Leaven, Figges, Romane Vitriol, Turpentine, Wallnuts. An Epitheme of the water of Buglosse, Baulme, Sorrell, Roses, Rose Vineger, cold water, Lettuce, Gourd, Endive, Plantane, powder of Roses, the three Sanders, *Diamargariti frigidi*. An unguent for the heart of the Oyle of St. Johns-wort, Cinnamon, seeds of Oranges, Harts-horne, Roses. A quilt of the flowers of Roses, Violets, Buglosse, Keiri, Oranges, Harts-horne, Cinnamon. Many of these formerly recited, doe cause sweating, and when he hath laid himselfe in the bed, hot Tiles or brick, also may bee laid to the feet, a bottle with hot water may likewise bee laid unto his arme-holes of the infected, but the bottle must be wrapped in a linnen cloth, that it burne not: an Ox bladder with hot water will effect the same. This kind of sweating shall be used for the space of three dayes, but especiall care ought to be had, that they sweat not too much; for that is dangerous, and sweating too little, is no what available; whilst the patient is sweating, he must not sleep, or eate any thing. There bee many more remedies, that doe expell the tumors that doe not fully appear, but especiall care must be had, that medicines heating too much, be not administered, if the Patient be already hot: for at that time Triacle is prohibited.

*Confectio. Liberantis, Latificantis Gal. sp. Diamargariti calidi et frigidi, Diarrhed. Abbatis, Diamuscum dulce. Syr. of Endive, juyce of Orange, Sorrell, Lemmons, Pomegranates, water of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, wherein Bole Armony, red Corall, and Pearle have been infused for the space of one night. This doth moderate the heat of the bowels. Conserve of Roses, Violets, Buglosse, Saccharum rosatum, Manus Christi, perlisa, juyce of Lemmons, Acetosiatu citri, Barberries. Cinnamon water distilled.*

Strengikners.

An



An oyntment of red Corall, red Roses, juyce of Oranges and Lemmons, Triacle, Saffron, Camphire, oyle of Roses, Violets: this is for the region of the heart. An Epitheme *ex sp. de gemmis*, the rindes of Oranges, Rosen, the Sanders, wood Aloes, Wormseed, the bone of a Harts heart, red and white Corall, Saffron, Mace, Musk, Cloves, strong Wine, water of Sorrell, Roses, Baulme, *Actium rosaceum*, *Cardus benedictus*, Parsley, also a Quilt may be made with the same that the Epitheme is.

*A more particular method serving for the cure of  
the PLAGUE.*

*A draught.*

Rx syr. *Rosa um solutivus*. ʒ i. of the decoction of *Rhab.* *Myrobal. citrinorum*, *Cardus benedictus*, Angelica, ana ʒ iij.

*Another.*

Rx of the Triacle of *Andromachus*, ʒ ij. *Mithridate* ʒ i. Bole-Armony, ʒ β. water of Scabious ʒ iij.

*A mixture.*

Rx roots of Angelica, Tormentill, Dittany, ana ʒ i. *Petasites*, ʒ β. Orange pills, Cinnamon, Myrrhe, Saffron, ana ʒ ij. Aloes. ʒ β. give hereof ʒ i. with the decoction of Roses, Sorrell, *Cardus benedictus*.

*Another.*

Rx roots of Angelica, Dittany, ana ʒ i. β. powder of Unicorns horne, ana gr. v iij. the Treacle of *Andromachus*, *Mithridate*, Bole-Armony, ana ʒ i. β. *Sacchari rosati*, ʒ i. Give hereof ʒ ij.

*Another.*

Rx roots of Angelica, Dittany, Pimpernell, Tormentill, Galingale, Wormseed, ana ʒ ij. Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, ana ʒ i. β. Myrrhe, Frankincense, ana ʒ i. Triacle of *Andromachus*, ʒ iij. β. the seeds of *Cardus benedictus*, berries of Juniper, ana ʒ i. Macerate these for the space of 24 houres, in equall portions of Wine and Angelica water, and then distill them. Give ʒ iij. of this distillation with ʒ β. of Triacle.

*A draught.*

Rx Triacle of *Andromachus*, Ginger, ana ʒ ij. Sugar-candy, ʒ β. Dragon water ʒ iij. Bole Armony, ʒ i. of the former distilled water, two or three spoonefuls.

Rx Bole

R<sup>x</sup> Bole Armony prepared, roots of Tormentill, Diptamy ana ʒ ij. Wormseed, ʒ i. ʒ, seeds of Citrines, *Carduus benedictus*, ana ʒ i. shavings or scrapings of Ivory, Orange-pils, Galingale, Cloves, ana ʒ ij. Cinnamon, ʒ i. ʒ, *Sacchari rosati* q. s. Give ʒ i. hereof with the water of *Carduus benedictus*.

A Powder.

R<sup>x</sup> Triacle, ʒ i. ʒ, Mithridate, ʒ iiij. *Sp. liberantis*, ʒ i. ʒ, Beaverstone, gr. vi. Camphire, gr. ij. Bayberries, ʒ ʒ, Give ʒ i. hereof with the water of Tormentill, Pimpernell, Scabious, after that a veine is opened, for this will cause sweating.

A mixture.

R<sup>x</sup> roots of Angelica, ʒ i. ʒ, Triacle, ʒ i, water of Angelica, Dragon, Rew, ana ʒ i.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> Conserve of Buglosse, Roses, preserved Orange-pils, ana ʒ ʒ, *mannus Christi*, ʒ i. *Diamargariti frigidi*, ʒ i. ʒ, syr. of the juyce of Oranges q. s.

An Opiate.

R<sup>x</sup> Conserve of Roses, Violets, ana ʒ i. Orange-pils, preserved, ʒ ʒ, red Corall, Bole Armony, ana ʒ ij. syr. of Buglosse, Violets, ana q. s.

A mixture.

R<sup>x</sup> Conserve of Roses, ʒ i. syr. *Acetosi simp.* ʒ i. ʒ, Rose-water, ʒ iiij.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> syr. of the juyce of Lemmons, of the juyce of Sorrell, Succory, with *Rhab.* ana ʒ i. ʒ, water of Violets, Roses, Sorrell, ana ʒ iiij.

A Potion.

R<sup>x</sup> roots of Angelica, Tormentill, ana ʒ ij. white Diptamy, ʒ iiij. Triacle, ʒ vij. Give ʒ i. hererof with the water of Violets, Roses, Sorrell, this may be given to the Patient, either when they are infected or before.

A draught.

R<sup>x</sup> roots of Bitterwort, Angelica, Tormentill, ana ʒ ij. *Aristolochia rot.* Myrrhe, Beaver-stone, Bayberries, ana ʒ i. Saffron ʒ i. ʒ, as much Triacle as all these weigh together, Give ʒ i. hereof with *Acetum rosatum*, but before they bee infected, twice or thrice in every weeke is sufficient.

A mixture.

R<sup>x</sup> Water of Buglosse, Roses, Violets, Sorrell, ana ʒ iiij. *Sandalorum purpu.* *Sp. egemini* ʒ iiij. rinds of Oranges, ʒ ij.

An Epitheme

G g g

R Bole



*The Physicians Practice.*

Rx Bole Armony, *Terra sigillata* ana ʒ i. β, juyce of Lemmons, Pomegranates, ana ʒ i. β, of white wine ʒ iij, water of Borage, water Lillies, ana ʒ iij, Roses ʒ viij. apply this unto the heart.

*An appendix serving for the cure of the*  
**PLAGUE.**

**T**He best medicines ought to bee prescribed with all speed; because the disease doth infect the heart chiefly. Yet a veine should bee opened if time will permit; afterward that may be given that will expell the Poyson, for this purpose medicines that cause sweating may bee given. And because men doe so delay their comming unto the Physicians, until the Patients be dangerously sick, therefore the Physicians are compelled to begin the cure with sweating. The Patient may take the syrup of Lemmons, Violets, Oranges. At the last, such medicines shall be prescribed, as doe turne away the venom from the heart, and at length expell it. If the Patient bee weakned by the evacuation of blood, a gentle Clyster may bee given, which may expell the corrupt humors that remain, alwayes provided, that inward and outward medicines be given to strengthen the heart; also one especiall care ought bee had, that the ayre and place where the Patient abides, be wholesome, and if they be not naturally wholesome, they must be rectified by Art. *viz.* a perfume of Juniper wood, Rosemary, Sage, Cloves, Frankincense, Mastick, Myrrhe, Rhue: the Patients may carry a little Rue in his bosome, that the smell thereof may get into their nostrils. Rose-water and Vineger is good for the smelling, and they may wash their eyes, face, and hands in them. They must eat such meates as nourish well. But as they are forbidden to glut themselves, or eat overmuch, so againe they must not bee altogether fasting. Twice or thrice in every weeke; they may eat the Pills  
of

of *Rhus*. They may also chew *Angelica*, *Zedoaria*, and  
*Elecampane* roots, when they goe abroad, or when they  
doe intend to visit the visited. For this purpose also R  
*Aloes* ʒi.β, Gumme Ammoniack ʒi, Myrrhe ʒβ. *Pillul.*  
*de agarico* ʒij. Syr. of Orange Pills q. s. make hereof Pills,  
and they may take 3 β, hereof in the morning. Or else R  
of Orange Pills preserved ʒvi. Conserve of Rosemary  
flowers ʒi, Mithridate ʒi β Triacle ʒij. *Aristol.*

*Longe*, *Zedoaria*, *Dittamy* ana ʒi. roots  
of *Angelica* ʒij, *Aromatici rosati*  
3 β, syr. of Orange Pills q. s.

This is an approved  
remedy.

\*\*

\*

FINIS.

G g g 2





